

ED010346

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE
Office of Education

This document has been reproduced exactly as received from the person or organization originating it. Points of view or opinions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

A D I C T I O N A R Y O F S A N G O

Contract No. OE-4-14-003

Author: Charles R. Taber, M.A.

Project Director: William J. Samarin, Ph.D.

Hartford Seminary Foundation

Hartford, Connecticut

January, 1965

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	iii
General Considerations	iii
Purpose of the Dictionary	iv
Sources	v
Procedure in Compilation	vii
Acknowledgements	xiv
Symbolization	xvi
Bibliography	xviii
FRENCH LEXICAL SETS	xxi
SANGO-ENGLISH DICTIONARY	1
-A-	1
-B-	5
-B'-	23
-C-	24
-D-	31
-E-	40
-F-	43
-G-	51
-H-	66
-I-	73
-J-	75
-K-	76
-L-	99
-M-	110
-N-	129
-O-	148
-P-	150
-Q-	160

-R-	161
-S-	163
-T-	176
-U-	189
-V-	190
-W-	194
-Y-	199
-Z-	207
-	213

ENGLISH-SANGO DICTIONARY

-A-	215
-B-	225
-C-	235
-D-	246
-E-	252
-F-	256
-G-	263
-H-	268
-I-	273
-J-	276
-K-	277
-L-	278
-M-	283
-N-	289
-O-	294
-P-	294
-Q-	302
-R-	303
-S-	309
-T-	322
-U-	329
-V-	331
-W-	332
-X, Y-	337

INTRODUCTION

General considerations

This dictionary is intended to be a companion volume to the one entitled A Grammar of Sango,* which was written in 1963 by William J. Samarin. Since the Sango language and its use are described at some length in the Grammar (i-iii), nothing further will be said in this volume.

Prior to the compilation of the present dictionary, several bilingual or polylingual word lists and glossaries were in existence at various times, as the result of the efforts of administrators, such as Eboué, of Protestant missionaries, especially the Inter-Missions Language Committee, and of Catholic missionaries, notably Tisserant. But for several reasons none of these can be considered a fully satisfactory dictionary.

The oldest lexicographical effort available is that of Félix Eboué (1918) entitled Langues sango, banda, baya, mandia. After a brief grammatical sketch and semantically-grouped word list for each language, and a section of parallel columns of "phrases usuelles," there are 48 pages of parallel columns of single words in French glossed in each of the other languages. The deficiencies of this approach from the point of view of lexicography are evident.

A much more voluminous list was compiled a number of years ago (but never published) by the Inter-Missions Language Committee. In the two parts, Sango-English and English-Sango, an effort was made to distinguish various senses of certain words, and in a few cases illustrative examples were given. But, apart from the practical disadvantage that this glossary was never made generally available, it suffered greatly from lack of rigor

* Full bibliographical references for all works cited in the Introduction are given in the Bibliography at the end of the Introduction

in selection and definition. Many terms are included which are used only in Protestant missions literature, but which are not in general use among native speakers of standard Sango. Many of these neologisms are either ad hoc creations by the missionaries or borrowings from various African languages, notably Yakoma and Ngbandi, which are related to Sango. Thus the lack of rigorous selectivity impaired the usefulness of this work. These remarks are based on the writer's memory, since no copy of the dictionary was available to him.

By all odds the best existing list is that included in Tisserant's (1950) Sango, langue véhiculaire de l'Oubangui-Chari. This consists of 42 pages of Sango-French lists and 179 pages of French-Sango lists. Most words are defined by a gloss followed by an illustrative example. The orthography is fair, in that it provides for the most functional phonemic contrasts. The most serious flaw is the absence of any indication of tone. Contrasts for which the functional load is relatively small are ignored, such as that between /e/ and /ɛ/, /o/ and /ɔ/, and in some words /mb/ is transcribed /b/ initially. Double vowels are not noted, and the distinctions between /l/ and /r/ seem in places arbitrary, though this may be a matter of what informant was used. On the other hand, a non-existent distinction is created between /z/ and [ʒ], spelled j. Various adaptations are evident in the direction of conformity to standard French orthography: ou for /u/, gu for /g/ before i and ɛ, double g between vowels, and so forth. But even in this work, the attestation is insufficient, different senses are not discriminated with enough care, and there are not nearly enough phrases defined.

It follows from above remarks that the present effort, preliminary though it is, is much needed.

Purpose of the dictionary

Since this work is being done under a contract with the United States Government, it is aimed primarily for use by speakers of English wishing to learn Sango. Consequently, both halves of the dictionary have been prepared with this audience in mind. Thus, Sango terms are glossed rather

fully in the Sango-English half, illustrative examples are used freely, and a good many notes are added to make understanding and use clearer. It is assumed that the user, knowing English, will come to this part of the dictionary with the question, "What does this term, seen or heard in Sango, mean?" The English-Sango half, on the other hand, is intended to answer the correlative question, "How does one say X in Sango?" Here, the illustrative examples are given in English and glossed in Sango.

Thus, the speaker of English is consciously favored. But this by no means makes the dictionary useless to a speaker of Sango wishing to learn English. He can consult the Sango-English part to find out how to say in English what he knows in Sango, and the English-Sango part to find out the meaning of English words that he runs across. Thus, it is hoped that both speakers of English and speakers of Sango will find this work useful in their efforts at mutual understanding.

Sources

A dictionary can be no better than its sources. That is to say that the lexicographer is not an author nor an authority, not a legislator nor an innovator, but simply a compiler of what he finds in actual use among people who speak the language. If he consults the speech of persons who use a language well, he will at least have a basis on which to construct a sound dictionary. But if his sources are suspect, no amount of ability or diligent effort on his part can make a good dictionary. A lexicographer, since he is not an inventor, is at the mercy of the real experts: those individuals who, by the fact that they are accepted as such by their language community, give evidence that they speak the language correctly. It thus becomes a matter of paramount importance to establish a reliable corpus from which to work, by exercising informed discrimination. The sources of this dictionary are described in the following paragraphs.

The bulk of the corpus used for this dictionary is the same on which was described by Samarin (1963 p. iv-vii, xi-xiii) as constituting the basis of the grammar. Nothing further will be said here except to state that this corpus consisted of approximately 37,000 citation slips representing

490 Sango and 508 French terms taken from 63 texts by almost as many speakers.

This corpus was inadequate for our purposes in two different ways. First, a good many words were insufficiently attested in the file. That is, either there were only one or two slips, or the slips available did not furnish a sufficient basis for determining accurately the sense or senses of the word. Second, a number of other sources had to be consulted in an attempt to supplement the lexicon. The discussion which follows concerns especially Sango terms, since the French list presented its own problems which will be discussed in the next section.

The first effort was to listen carefully to a number of tapes which had not been included in the original corpus, culling citations to meet the two requirements outlined above. But the law of diminishing returns quickly made this endeavor inefficient. Very few new terms were discovered by this means.

Second, in the course of working through the material, either Dr. Samarin or I from time to time remembered words which we had heard previously, and listed them to be checked for currency and correctness. For the most part, these words were checked by mail with Mr. Nambozouina, who had worked with us on the grammar and had been given some instruction as to what was desired of him. A number of words were added in this way.

Third, Mr. Nambozouina, in addition to answering questions about words which were insufficiently attested in the corpus or which we submitted to him, furnished a fair number of words which were not previously in the file. These came in the course of conversation, or phonological or lexical checking while working on the grammar, or in the process of explaining words which were submitted to him, or especially in response to a list of basic French words which he was asked to gloss in Sango. In addition to making additions to the list, it must be said that Mr. Nambozouina's testimony helped to eliminate a number of words which were in the list but were found not to conform to current Sango usage. These included a number of nonce borrowings from various local languages.

Finally, a serious effort was made to sample the literature, both

Protestant and Catholic. A good number of pages of both kinds of written texts were read at random, and new words were listed. Time did not permit checking these with Mr. Nambozouina, but a spot check with two native speakers of Sango who were available, Mme Gallin and Mme Soni, produced results which on the whole must be considered negative. That is, in very few cases did they accept as standard Sango words submitted to them from these sources. In many cases they registered a complete lack of recognition, even though they are native speakers of Yakoma. This is not, of course, conclusive proof that these words are not valid. But at least it precluded their inclusion in the dictionary. Should a careful investigation on the field reveal that these words, or some of them, are currently used, they should of course be incorporated in any future revisions.

The points just mentioned underline the fact that it is ultimately not satisfactory to compile a dictionary away from the field. Especially on a short-term project such as this one, the amount of time consumed by an exchange of correspondence made it impractical to use the abilities of Mr. Nambozouina to the extent which had been hoped. At a great many points, a moment's spot check with a good informant or two would have answered questions which must here remain unanswered. It is of course illegitimate for me to attempt to answer them ex cathedra or on the basis of personal memory of usage previously heard. Only unimpeachable data from a native source would do. As a result, this dictionary is distinctly a preliminary effort. Every effort has been made to make accurate and reliable what has been included, but there are gaps which should be filled by further work.

Procedure in compilation

The procedure followed may be conveniently discussed under the rubrics of (a) selection, (b) determination of what was to constitute an entry, (c) discrimination of senses, (d) formulation of definitions, and (e) construction of the English-Sango section.

In making a selection of items to be included, the first step was to make a careful inventory of all the items which were available, whether

from the corpus or one of the auxiliary sources mentioned above, Sango and French. All citations of every candidate word were included in a single alphabetical file, under a set of colored head slips which specified how many citations came from which source. As new citations of old words and new words turned up, they were included.

The next step was to make the actual selection of those items which would ultimately be included. For Sango terms, all that was required was evidence that the term was in current use, and enough illustrative examples of the right kind to permit a determination of the meaning and range of usage. As was mentioned above, Mr. Nambozouina served as informant and arbiter in most cases, though in a few cases the help of Mme Gallin and Mme Soni was crucial. As a result, a certain number of terms were eliminated as not constituting good usage.

This procedure worked with a minimum of trouble for Sango words. But the selection of the French words which were to be included presented a much greater difficulty. In an effort to establish sound criteria of selection, a study was made of the statistical incidence of the French loan words in the corpus in relation to a number of variables: the kind of text involved, the nature of the topic under consideration, and the sex, age, religion, and degree of acculturation and bilingualism of the speaker (Taber 1964). As a result of this study, a number of approaches were successively tried and discarded.

First, it was tentatively decided to include all French words which appeared in four or more of the seven kinds of texts. Then there were added those words which appeared in any of the three kinds of texts (ethnographic, conversations, and fables) which had shown the lowest frequency of French words. Also to be included were the entire set of numerals (up to mille), days of the week, and months of the year. But the result appeared quite arbitrary: a number of words appeared which by no stretch of the imagination could be considered as currently in use, while a number of words which we knew to be in use were omitted. Thus, the purely random approach through statistical incidence was discarded.

Next, it was decided to put apart in separate lists all words which fitted into readily described semantic sets (the taxonomies of various sorts, numerals, days of the week, months of the year, tools, names of human occupations, etc.), and to include in the general listing only those terms which (a) appeared from the corpus to be in general use, and (b) could not fit into a neat category. But this in turn proved unsatisfactory, as a number of words which would have been relegated to the glossary were found to require, for cultural reasons, fairly extensive treatment.

The final decisions, which was adopted and is embodied in this dictionary, was a compromise between the two previously mentioned approaches. The following categories are included:

(a) All words appearing in four or more kinds of texts. This includes 9 nouns, 12 verbs, 4 adjunctives, and 9 connectives and particles.

(b) Of those additional words appearing in one or more of the ethnographic, conversation, or fable texts, the majority were included: 31 nouns out of 46, 13 verbs out of 16, 3 adjunctives out of 7, and 5 connectives and particles out of 7. The ones which were eliminated were either picked up in the special lists mentioned below, or dropped as not sufficiently current.

(c) Of additional words appearing in the corpus, those were included which in my judgment required, for cultural or other valid reasons, a more extended treatment than would be possible in a simple glossary. These included 83 nouns, 15 verbs, and 2 adjunctives.

There are, then, 123 nouns, 40 verbs, 9 adjunctives, and 14 connectives and particles which are included in the general listing, for a total of 186 items. Because in a few cases phrases are defined separately, the number of entries is slightly higher than this. In some of the complex entries, morphemes appear which are not separately defined, since they do not appear to be used alone. Such items are à coudre and à écrire, which are appended to machine, législative which appears in assemblée législative, d'identité which forms a phrase with carte as the head, and so forth.

In separate lists appear: numerals, days of the week, and months of the year. These are listed so as to permit giving a phonetic transcription of the way they are usually pronounced.

No other French words appear in any list. But for the benefit of the user of this dictionary, it will be said here that speakers of Sango use the appropriate French term, in approximately the French pronunciation, when they have occasion to refer to any activity or social, economic, political, or cultural domain which is basically of European origin: tools, instruments, occupations, modern medicine, education, government, and so forth. Many of the terms are quite generally known, while others are known only to bilinguals or to individuals who specialize in a given activity. It should be said that French words appear in illustrative examples and as glosses to English words in the English-Sango portion of the dictionary which are not entered in the Sango-English portion. It was judged that the way in which they are cited gives sufficient indication of their sense.

The compromise solution outlined above is in some senses arbitrary, but, especially in the absence of the possibility of a field investigation, it seemed pragmatically to work out better than any alternative.

In describing the procedure followed in determining what was to constitute an entry, two factors must be mentioned. First, once the selection had been completed, French terms were treated in every way exactly as were the Sango ones. That is, they were considered to be full-fledged members of the Sango lexicon. Second, since Sango has no morphological processes corresponding to the Indo-European ones of derivation and compounding (Samarin 1963 p. 127-8, 169), the next level above the morpheme is the phrase. Thus, the determination of what was to constitute an entry, beyond the simple basic list of morphemes, was simply a determination of which phrases could be said to function lexically as single items. Three criteria were applied: (1) phrases were required to have an invariable form with a constant meaning, (2) in general they were required to exhibit some semantic qualities which could not be deduced from a simple addition of their constituents, and (3) in some cases they exhibited a sort of ellipsis by the omission of an internal connective, as when *kóá li* 'hair'

appears without an expected *ti* between the nouns. As a result, a good many phrases have been defined as entries separate from their constituent morphemes. In cases where phrases customarily begin with a connective, the connective does not appear in the entry but is shown in the illustrative examples.

The orthography used for Sango terms is the phonemic one established by Samarin (1963). Where divergent pronunciations are known to us through the data, they are indicated immediately after the entry in phonetic transcription enclosed in square brackets []. In a number of cases, terms are entered for which the meaning could be checked by correspondence but for which no phonological verification was possible. These are spelled as in the sources, though some symbols are normalized: *ou* becomes [u] or [w], etc. Such items are marked by a single following asterisk (*), as in *gengi**. No attempt is made to mark tone, since the sources do not mark it. French entries are spelled in standard orthography, and followed by two asterisks (**), then by a phonetic transcription of pronunciations found in the corpus or from Mr. Nambozouina, the transcription being enclosed in square brackets [].

Alphabetization follows the system outlined below: (1) segmental phonemes and letters are assimilated, as between Sango and French items; (2) the order is a, b, c, d, e, *e*, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, *o*, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, y, z, *ɣ*; (3) the symbols *ɣ* and *ʔ* are used to represent the phonetic entities usually so symbolized, i.e. alveopalatal affricate and glottal stop, which appear only in ideophones; (4) all entries are alphabetized ignoring intervening spaces, so that *mɔa* comes between *mɔ* and *mɔ ɛkɛ*; (5) a nasalized vowel follows an oral vowel, segmentals being the same; (6) as a secondary criterion, high tone precedes low tone, all letters being equal, i.e. *mɛ* precedes *mɛ* and *gondá* precedes *gonda*.

The discrimination of the sense or senses of each word proceeded by a series of inductive approximations. The citation slips for the term under investigation were spread out on a table and sorted into as many piles as possible on an impressionistic basis of the shades of meaning

displayed. Then the piles were combined, resorted, and recombined, until each pile could be said to exhibit a fairly uniform semantic content. In general, an effort was made to avoid over-discriminating, so that closely related senses are usually considered to be a single sense. Incidentally, it is not always easy, in the absence of either historical evidence or the reactions of native speakers, to determine which cases represented divergent meanings of a single term, and which ones represented homonyms. For example, are hú 'to breathe' and hú 'to spread, to prosper' the same verb with different meanings, or two different verbs? On the whole, the tendency was to split rather than to join, in the interest of clarity. As a result of this tendency to split and of the one mentioned above to avoid discrimination of senses, the number of words with many different senses under a single entry is relatively small.

In writing the definitions, each one was typed first on a colored slip or set of slips and entered into the file at the head of the appropriate examples. These definition slips were then put together to constitute the basis for the final manuscript of the dictionary.

A very important feature of the defining procedure was that words were grouped and defined at the same time as often as possible. Thus, sets of synonyms were compared and contrasted, and this study was used to find any valid basis for discrimination. An example of this was the set finóo, mawa, pási, ponó, sáná, vundú, which covers in various ways the semantic field of suffering. A somewhat similar situation existed when there were sets which, while not strictly synonymous, shared a major semantic element, as for example bíríbiri, bière, duma, háragé, ngbágo, samba, and vin, which are all alcoholic beverages. Likewise báságbó, béta, dengbe, kángá, lekpa, tágba, woga, and zaranga are all antelopes. In some cases, taxonomic sets could be treated together: terms of kinship, for example, as well as the terminology of political and administrative divisions. This study of groups of words led to a finer discrimination, and, through cross-references, to making the dictionary more useful for a study of the semantic structure of the language as well as of the structure of culture and society. In most cases, a fairly full description of the set is given under one particular

term, and cross-references are included under the other members of the set.

The style of the definitions is deliberately flexible, though in most cases the form of a (theoretically) substitutable phrase is used. Where, in a few cases, a single word is adequate, it is given. Where a series of near synonyms better defines the range of usage of an entry, the definition takes this form. Where the required information would transcend the limits of a single manageable phrase, a first approach is made through a phrase, which is then followed by further phrases or even sentences. The definition proper is followed, in most cases, by illustrative sentences, glossed. Where both literal and free glosses seem to be required to make the example intelligible, both are included. It will be noted that in many instances, a simple verb is glossed in the past tense, even when no auxiliary is present. This is in keeping with the finding (Samarin 1963 p. 156) that the unmarked verb often expresses completed action. The purpose of the examples is to show in what kinds of semantic, syntactic, and socio-cultural contexts the entry term is used. Caution should be exercised in using a term in a situation widely different from those shown in the examples. It should be noted that the indication "used only in ..." in a definition means that this limitation holds true in the corpus and/or in the explanations and illustrations furnished by Mr. Nambozoui. No personal judgment is involved.

Following the examples, in a number of instances, is further information. In some cases, as was mentioned above, an entire set is discussed at some length under a representative term. In other cases, notes are added to situate the word culturally or otherwise. This is most often done when the term under study is of great cultural importance, especially when the simple denotation given in the definition proper would not reveal its importance. In a few instances, notably in the discussion of kinship under *famille*, these notes become brief ethnographic essays in an encyclopaedic style.

Finally come the cross-references pointing either to synonyms or to related words under which further pertinent information is given.

A rigorous attempt was made to exclude all subjective or normative judgments. The definitions were required to arise out of the usage actually found on the slips, which represented ordinary speech.

No status labels of any sort are used in this dictionary. Since Sango is a pidginized language in a somewhat unstable state, (though this judgment must be interpreted with caution), and a lingua franca lacking the cultural and social connotations present in more developed languages, it is at present impossible to make valid statements such as are found in dictionaries of larger languages: colloquial, substandard, local dialect, etc. Such judgments as are expressed by the speakers themselves are inconsistent and often contradictory.

In some cases, e.g. connectives and pronouns, reference is made to the Grammar of Sango. Where more information is given than could be summarized in a dictionary. The form of the references is (Grammar p. 135).

Simultaneously with the writing of the definitions, a further step was taken: English-Sango index slips were made, using as head words the English glosses of the Sango words, to serve as the basis for the English-Sango half of the dictionary. After this process was completed, Eaton's English-French-German-Spanish Word Frequency Dictionary and Roget's Thesaurus were consulted so as to ensure both that all pertinent semantic categories were adequately represented and that the words which a speaker of English would be likely to look for were entered with at least a cross-reference. In the English-Sango portion, the information is more condensed. As much as possible, duplications are avoided by an extensive use of cross-references. Persons wishing to find more information may look under the appropriate Sango terms which are used to gloss English entries.

During the entire period of writing definitions, much experimenting was done to find out what would be the best format. Several pages were done in each of a number of formats, until the present one was developed.

Acknowledgements

This dictionary was made possible by a grant (No. OE-4-14-003) from

the United States Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, through its Bureau of Educational Assistance Programs, by the authority of Title VI, Section 602, Public Law 85-864 (otherwise known as the National Defense Education Act). But many others contributed in various ways to the successful completion of the project, and it is a pleasure to make the following acknowledgements.

First, appreciation is due to the Hartford Seminary Foundation, which provided office space, furniture and other equipment, and which also administered the funds. The constant close cooperation of the administration of the school was of valuable assistance throughout the duration of the project.

All those groups, organizations, and individuals who were mentioned in the grammar likewise contributed materially to the completion of the dictionary: those who provided funds and hospitality for Dr. Samarin in his field trip in 1962, when the corpus was collected, not only made the grammar possible, but also the present work. The ladies of the Bethel Baptist Church of Hartford underlined the 37,000 slips which were used for the dictionary as well as those used for the grammar, at a cost of much time and effort.

Dr. H. A. Gleason, Jr., both in a seminar on lexicography and in many casual conversations, provided many valuable ideas and tips which find expression in the form of this dictionary. To Dr. Martin Joos I owe the valuable suggestion concerning the use of Eaton's polylingual Word Frequency Dictionary and the Roget's Thesaurus for checking the coverage of the English-Sango section, as well as several useful procedural ideas. Thanks are also especially due to Mme Gallin-Douathe, wife of the Ambassador from the Central African Republic to the United States and the United Nations, and Mme Agnès Sori, niece of the Ambassador, who generously took time to answer questions about a number of terms and who contributed a number of their own.

Mr. Simon-Pierre Nambozouina, in spite of the great handicap of distance, made an absolutely invaluable contribution: it was he who, before his return to the Central African Republic and later by correspondence, responded

to my innumerable questions about meaning, usage, and so forth. He contributed many terms, explained many, gave illustrative examples where these were lacking, rejected some words, and otherwise served effectively as the sensitive and discriminating informant without which nothing of value could have been done.

Finally, special appreciation is due to Dr. William J. Samarin. His contribution as Principal Investigator in the project was much more than a nominal one. Out of his linguistic competence and personal knowledge of Sango, he generously gave many hours to discussions in which ideas were developed and procedures clarified. He ransacked his own files for information which was incorporated into the file. His constant alertness to new information, especially in the contacts with Mme Gallin and Mme Soni, was invaluable. It was indeed a privilege and a pleasure to work under his direction.

Symbolization

In addition to the orthographies and transcriptions which have already been mentioned (p. xi), the following expressions and symbols are used throughout the dictionary:

Abbreviations:

Adj	: an adjective (English)
Adv	: an adverb (English)
An	: an adjunctive usually used to modify a noun (Sango)
Au	: a universal adjunctive (Samarin 1963 p. 62)
Av	: an adjunctive usually used to modify a verb (Sango)
C	: a connective (Sango), a conjunction (English)
GP	: a connective phrase (Sango)
esp.	: especially
I	: an interjection
lit.	: literally
N	: a noun
opp.	: opposite, opposite of
P	: pronoun

Prep : a preposition (English)
 SP : a sentence particle (Sango)
 Syn. : synonym, synonymous with
 V : a verb

Symbols:

* : preceding a form, means that this is a hypothetical, artificial, or non-existent form
 * : following a form, means that the phonology has not been checked with an informant
 ** : following a form, means that it is French
 [] : enclose phonetic transcriptions
 { } : enclose illustrative examples
 () : in definitions, enclose parenthetical explanatory matter
 () : in forms or examples, enclose optional elements
 ... : between parts of a complex form, indicates the possibility of other elements intervening in a sentence
 : : separates explanation and gloss in a definition, and illustration and gloss in an example (within braces)
 - : separates the various phrases, clauses, and parts of a definition
 Numerals : with a period immediately following, mark the separate senses of an entry
 without a period, immediately after a cross-reference, mark which reference and sense is meant when there is possibility of confusion
 Underline : marks the specific form of the entry referred to; also used to mark Latin scientific nomenclature
 " " : indicate an analogic reference to familiar grammatical categories (i.e. Indo-European) which are not to be pressed in Sango grammar
 / : between forms, e.g. ti/ní indicates alternation of the forms

Bibliography

Note : In addition to the Bible books cited, many more have been translated by the Inter-Missions Language Committee. These are the books actually sampled, as mentioned in the discussion of selection (p.).

Diocèse de Bangui. Missel : Messes - Prières - Bia ti Nzapa, Issy-les-Moulineaux, Imprimerie Saint-Paul, 1957

Eaton, Helen S. An English-French-German-Spanish Word Frequency Dictionary, New York, Dover Books, 1940

Eboué, A. F. Langues sango, banda, baya, mandjia, Paris, Emile Larose, Librairie-Editeur, 1918

Mawson, C. O. Sylvester and Katharine Aldrich Whiting. Roget's Pocket Thesaurus, New York, Pocket Books, Inc., 1946

Mbeti ti Esaie, tr. by Inter-Missions Language Committee, experimental mimeographed edition, n.d.

Murdock, George P. et al. Outline of Cultural Materials, 4th ed. revised, New Haven, Human Relations Area Files, 1961

Samarin, William J. "The Vocabulary of Sango," Word, Vol. XVII, 1961, pp. 16-22.

_____. "Une lingua franca centrafricaine," Colloque sur le multilinguisme, Brazzaville, Commission de Coopération Technique en Afrique, 1962, pp. 257-65

_____. A Grammar of Sango, Hartford Seminary Foundation (in pursuance to a contract with the United States Office of Education), 1963

_____. "Self-annulling Prestige Factors among Speakers of a Creole Language," unpublished paper delivered at the Conference on Sociolinguistics, University of California at Los Angeles, May 11-13, 1964

Seligman, Brenda Z. (ed.). Notes and Queries on Anthropology, sixth ed. revised and rewritten by a Committee of the Royal Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland, London, 1951

- Taber, Charles R. French Loan Words in Sango : a Statistical Analysis of Incidence, Hartford, to appear in the Hartford Series in Linguistics
- Testament ti Fini, tr. by missionaries of the Baptist Mid-Missions, London, British and Foreign Bible Society, 1951
- Tisserant, P. Ch. Catalogue de la flore de l'Oubangui-Chari, Toulouse, Imprimerie P. Julia, 1951
- _____. Sango : langue véhiculaire de l'Oubangui-Chari, Issy-les-Moulineaux, Les Presses Missionnaires, 1950

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK-NOT FILMED

FRENCH LEXICAL SETS

Numerals

un, une [ɛ̃, ɛ̃, ɛ̃n, ɛ̃n-]
deux [dø, døz-]
trois [trwaa, turuwá, trwaz-]
quatre [kátre, kátère, katr-]
cinq [sɛ̃ŋke, sɛ̃ke, sɛ̃k-]
six [siis, siz-]
sept [sɛ̃ɛt, sɛ̃te, sɛ̃ti, set-]
huit [wíte, wit-]
neuf [nøfu, néfu, nəw-]
dix [diis, diz-]
onze [ɔ̃z, ɔ̃ze, ɔ̃z-]
douze [dúze, duz-]
treize [tréze, trézi, trez-]
quatorze [katórze]
quinze [kêze]
seize [séze]
vingt [vɛ̃ɛ, vɛ̃t-, vɛ̃]
trente [tráte, tránte]
quarante [karáte, karánte]
cinquante [sɛ̃kátte, sɛ̃nkánte]
soixante [swasáte, swasánte]
cent [sɛ̃a, sa, sat-]
mille, mil [miil, mile]

Days of the Week

lundi [lɛ̃di]
mardi [mardi]
mercredi [merkredi, merkredi]
jeudi [zedi]
vendredi [vɛ̃dredi, vandredi]
samedi [samedi]
dimanche [dimáas, dimási]

Months of the Year

janvier [zavyé]
février [fevriyé]
mars [marse]
avril [avriil]
mai [mé, mé]
juin [zwɛ̃ɛ, zwɛ̃ɛ, zwɛ̃]
juillet [zwyée, zwyée]
août [úte]
septembre [septámbre]
octobre [októbre]
novembre [novámbre]
décembre [desámbre]

In speaking Sango, French terms are constantly introduced with approximately the French pronunciation for such denotata as: tools, instruments, and machines; occupations; fruits and vegetables; and any kind of technical terminology whatsoever.

accident** [aksidáá] N : an accident, especially one resulting from work or a mishap with a vehicle

adorónu N : a coarse, impure rock salt consisting in part of sodium chloride and sodium carbonate, mined in the Sahara and imported into the Central African Republic by Muslim traders from the Chad {adorónu aske mbéni yingó só alíngbi tí wóko yí fadé, mais alíngbi tí tó na kása mais yama pepe : adorónu is a kind of salt which softens things fast, and can be used in cooking vegetables but not meat} - see yingó, which is the general term for salt

ádu ní, ádu títene C : correlated with ka, and introducing the protasis of a condition contrary to fact : if {ádu ní ála, ka í língbi títene í báa finóo míngi : if it were just them, then we would be able to say we had experienced much suffering} {ádu títene, wále tí mbi aske na kótíró, ka mbi na lo í causer : if my wife were at home, then she and I would chat} - probably based on du V 2 - see also tongana

aider** [edé] V : to render assistance, especially of a physical or material nature, to help {mbi dutí na hôpital, mais mbéni famille ade aaider mbi pepe : I was in the hospital, but no member of the family has yet given me help}

ála P : 1. third person plural pronoun : they, them, their, theirs {ála dutí na téré tí da : they sat beside the house} {mbi hunda na ála : I asked them} {da tí ála : their house} {só tí ála : that is theirs} - see mbi for the pronoun system (Grammar p. 135-138)
2. second person plural pronoun : you, your, yours {ála gá o : you all come on} {mbi eke éré ála : I'm calling you all} {éré tí ála : your names} {só tí ála : this is yours} - Protestant literature uses í, Catholic literature used *é - see mbi for the pronoun system

allez** [a] I : interjection expressing suddenness, rapid succession, or resolution {allez í ngbá tí continuer : well then, we still continue} {lo s' gígí, allez, lo gá pendere wále awe : she came out, and suddenly she had become a beautiful woman}

andáa [andáa, kandáa] C : 1. really, in reality, in effect, as a matter of fact {lo báa tongana yama ake da, andáa yama ake pepe : he looks to see if there is any meat in it, but as a matter of fact there is no meat} {andáa mo eke tongasó ? : so you are really like that?} {mo ké titene ála sùru lí tí mabóko tí mo, andáa mo yí titene kóá agá amú mo : if you refuse to let them vaccinate your shoulder, you are in reality saying that death can come and get you}

2. it turns out that {depuis só, andáa, oignon abe awe : in the meantime, it turns out that the onions have browned} - (Grammar p. 66)

ánde Av : later, at some future time - used with or without fadé before the verb {ake mú ánde méréngé tí kóli bale otá : later they'll take thirty boys} {fadé lo mú na mbi ánde : he'll give it to me at some future time} - distinguished from fadé in lacking the element of speed

ándo Av : formerly, a while ago, recently {mbi tene ándo na mo, wále tí mbi ake na hôpital : I told you a while ago that my wife is in the hospital} {ála sára ándo sianí yí míngí : formerly, they used to do very bad things} - distinguished from giriri and kózo ní in not being used pre-clausally - giriri is a more remote past, and kózo ní introduces an element of order or sequence

áni P : in the usage of Protestant missions and some persons who learned Sango from the Protestant missions, the first person plural pronoun : we, us, our, ours {áni bòngbí tí dó lengé : we gathered to dance the lengé} {Nzapá amú na áni : God gave (it) to us} {kótará tí áni : our ancestors} {í áni awe : ours is finished} - í is in more general use - see mbi for the pronoun system - (Grammar p. 135-138)

apprenti** [apɾatʲi] N : an apprentice learning a European trade - esp. a truck driver's flunky, also called bátá kóngbá

arabe** [aráb, arábu] N : 1. an Arab - most often, a Muslim from the Chad who, though a Negro, considers himself an Arab - Chad Muslims are usually businessmen, especially importers or transporters
2. the Arabic language

arrêter** [aratée] V : 1. to cease, to desist, to stop {lo arrêter lo : he stopped him} {mbi arrêter : I stopped} - when an action is specified which is stopped, zi is used
2. to arrest {tongana zo ake zɛ na bí, mbi arrêter lo : when someone steals at night, I arrest him} - when the subject of the verb is a noun, so that the subject marker a- would be required, the initial vowel of this verb is assimilated to the subject marker - in other words, there is no overt difference between the verb with or without the subject marker in some cases, while in others the verb without the subject marker appears without any initial vowel

ása V : to dig shallowly, to scratch with the hands {mbi ása lí tí mbi : I scratched my head} {lo ása dú tí lí kása : he dug the hole (with his hands) to plant vegetables} - koto is used only of scratching, kpaka means to scrape, and zi implies a much deeper penetration and the use of an implement

assemblée, assemblée législative** [asáblée lezislatiiv] N : the national legislature elected by universal adult suffrage - a member is called député - see république for the administrative organization of the country

áta N : 1. a grandmother on either side - tará 1 is a syn. - see famille for the kinship system
2. a grandchild, usually female - see famille for the kinship system
3. a term of affection used mutually by a young person and an older woman {gá, áta, kpaka téré tí mbi : come, child, scrape my body} {áta, mɔ yí mbi sára yɛ ? : grandmother, what do you want me to do?} syn. tará 2

attention-awe

4

attention [tasyɔɔ] I : watch out, take care! {attention mɔ zia mbéni vin
da pepe : take care not to put in any more wine}

attention** N : care, attention - used only in sára attention

aú N : 1. uncle, esp. one's mother's brother - syn. kóya 1 - see famille
for the kinship system

2. used as a term of respect in addressing a mature man {aú, nú na
mbi mbo tí mbi : uncle, give me my dog} - syn. kóya 2

aussi** [osii] Av : also, too {mbi aussi, mbi fatiguer : I also am
tired} {í wara nginza tí í aussi : we've received our money also} -
syn. ngá - both aussi and ngá can be used together in hybrid
reinforcement

auto** [otóo, wotóo] N : an automobile, most often a passenger car -
kutukutu is a general term applying to all automotive vehicles -
camion is a truck

autocar** [otokáar, káar] N : a bus, either urban or cross-country -
busses represent the principal means of long-distance public
transportation, though many people travel by truck - see camion -
see also kutukutu, the general term for automotive vehicles

awe : see we

bá N : an oath - usually in the verbal expression dé bá (fádé í dé bá da : we'll swear upon it) - more formal and solemnly binding than zé ndo

ba V : to bend, to be bent, to stoop, to be crooked (lo ba wé ní : he bent the iron) (pékó tí lo aba : his back is bent) (kéké aba : the stick is crooked) - ba suggests a single major bend, while kirikiri suggests a series of switches and zigzags - see also déngé and kuku

báa V : 1. to perceive visually : to see, to notice, to catch sight of, to glance, to stare, to look at, to examine (dole abáa mbirimbiri pepé : the elephant couldn't see straight) (même na gá na pópó tí dole tongasó, dole abáa na pepé : even if you go right in the midst of the elephants, they won't notice you) (lo kpé tí báa kamba : he ran to see the snares) (lo báa tongana yama ake na yá ní : he looked to see if there was an animal in it) (mais ita na báa bongó só : but sister, look at this cloth) (mbi wále mbi changer bongó pepé, ázò ake báa mbi : I, the woman, I don't change clothes, people stare at me) (tongana na goe na hôpital, ála báa kobóla tí na : when you go to a hospital, they examine your illness) - see also báa na lé, báa ná

2. to perceive in a more general way (tongana na sára tongasó, fádé na ake báa anare mîngi : if you do like this, you'll see that it tastes good) (tongana ála báa, ála gá tí sîru ndó tí mabóko só, il faut que ála kpé pepé : when you hear that they are coming to prick fingers, you must not run away) - see also ná, tara

3. to look for, to find (fádé mbi báa yí tí kîrí na question tí na : I'll look for and find something to answer your question) - see also áí, vara

4. to obtain in visible form {í eke báa nginza encore : we still get money} - see also wara

5. to meet someone socially, to enter into face-to-face relations with someone, to call upon {mais lo báa mbi óko pepe : but he didn't see, i.e. call upon me, at all} {gá í goe, mó báa aú tí mó : come, let's go, you'll meet your uncle} - see also báa lé tí, báa téré, té

6. to realize, to understand {tongana ála báa, mó eke na nginza mingi pepe, ála yí da pepe : when they realize you don't have much money, they won't agree} {mó báa awe? : do you understand?} - see also má

7. to think, to feel that, to consider as, to be of the opinion that {mbi báa, na lége tí ámbéni wále só Nzapá amú na ála tí dú mérengé, só aake kusára tí ála : I think, as far as women to whom God has given to bear children are concerned, that this is the work of women} {mbi báa yí só aake kótá yí : I consider that this is a big thing} - see also báa ... tene, báa tongana, penser

8. a device to get the attention of someone : look, look here, see here, hey! {báa, só lo : look, that's him} {báa kótá caisse só, mbi bi na sése : look, this big crate, I threw it on the ground}

9. in future form, with ominous sense : to see {fadé í báa na yá tí nze só : we'll see during this very month!}

báa finó V : to experience physical suffering or pain {í báa finó mingi, ngbangatí ála mú zaza, títene ála só í : we experienced much suffering, because they took whips to hurt us} - see also finó, báa pási, nú ponó

báa lé tí V : to encounter socially {íta, nzala tí mó asára mbi mingi, tí báa lé tí mó : brother, I have a great desire for you, to see you face to face} - see also báa 5, báa téré

báa li tí V : to have a dream, a vision {tongana babá tí mbi alángó na bí sí lo báa li tí lo, lo báa mma tí lo só akúí : when my father slept at night and dreamed, he saw his mother who had died} - see also mosúma, súma

báa mbadi V : to practise divination - syn. sára mbadí

báa na lé V : to see for oneself, to see first-hand (zía lo gá na ndo só, fadé í na lo í goe na yáká ní, fadé lo báa na lé tí lo : let him come here, he and I will go to the field, he'll see for himself) - see also báa 1

báa ndá V : to seek to ruin someone's reputation (lo báa ndáa mbi : he is seeking to ruin my reputation)

báa ndo V : to see, to be able to see (mbéni kóli óko aake, mais lo báa ndo pepe : there was a certain man, but he couldn't see) - see also báa 1

báa ndo tí kúí V : to aim at the vital spot (tongana lo wara dole, lo mú ngombe, lo báa ndo tí kúí, lo fáa lo : when he found an elephant, he took a gun, he aimed at the vital spot, and he killed it)

báa ndo, yí tí : see yí tí báa ndo

báa nze V : to have a menstrual period - see bángó nze

báa pási V : to suffer, especially as a result of burdensome toil (mbi báa pási alíngbí pepe : I experienced suffering beyond measure) - see also báa finóo, hú pónó, finóo, ponó, sáná, pási

báa ... tene V : to think, to conclude, to be of the opinion (mbi báa mbi tene, kóli kóé aake wara bilharzie : I was of the opinion that men also got the liver-fluke disease) - see also báa 7, báa tongana, penser - hinga ... tene is much more confident and sure

báa téré V : to meet socially, of two or more people (jusqu'à lá só, áni báa téré na lo pepe : to this very day he and I haven't met) - see also báa 5, báa lé tí

báa ... tongana V : to consider as (ála báa í tongana yama pepe : they don't consider us as animals) - see also báa 7, báa .. tene, penser

báa yí awe? V : an expression of astonishment (mo báa yí awe? : can you beat that!)

- babá N** : 1. father, in a biological and social sense - usually accompanied by a specifying complement {mbi eke babá tí méréngé fadesó : I'm the father of a child now} {só babá tí mbi laá : that's my father there} - without complement, used in direct address or in third person : one's own father {babá, mbi kúí : father, I'm dying} {babá asára kóá : father is working} - see mamá, see famille for the kinship system
2. usually plural : collectively, the members of the father's clan, including paternal ancestors {kózo ní, ábabá tí í ...: formerly, our ancestors ...} {lo goe na place tí ábabá tí lo : he went to the place of his father's clan} - kótará is a more general, less specific term for ancestors - see mamá 2.
3. usually with some specifying complement : a member of one's father's clan, especially one's father's brothers {mbéní babá tí mbi : a certain "father" of mine} {babá tí mbi tí kété : my father's younger brother} - see also kété babá, kótá babá, mamá 3
4. by extension, a man who has authority or influence over one, or whom one respects highly {fadesó mọ gá babá tí mbi awe : now you've become my father}
5. an exclamation of intense surprise, sometimes tinged with apprehension - in this case it is strongly articulated, with the pitch interval exaggerated {babá! : wow!} - syn. mon vieux

babá ókọ An : expression used to specify that someone is a sibling rather than a cousin - further specification can be added regarding the mother {íta, babá ókọ na mamá ókọ : a full sibling, a sibling with the same mother and father} {íta, babá ókọ na mamá ake ndé : a sibling of one father but a different mother} - see mamá ókọ, mamá ... ndé

baba N : vanity, conceit, pride {só babá sí mọ eke sára apẹ? : isn't that vanity you're doing, i.e. aren't you showing off?} - used in the expression fa baba - syn. fandara

bábolo N : a sweet potato, either white or orange

bac** [bák, báke] N : a ferry for crossing a river - this comprises a platform of boards fixed to a set of parallel metal barges or dugout canoes, and propelled either by paddle or pole or, in rare cases, by outboard motor

bágara N : 1. hump-backed domestic cattle or zebu, or other domestic cattle {ábóróró aske ázo tí bata bágara : the Bóróró, i.e. local Fulani, are the people who keep cattle} - the zebu is by far the most common kind of cattle- it may be kept only in the extreme northwest and northeast, in areas bordering on the Chad, because the tsetse fly carries sleeping sickness in the rest of the country
2. buffalo (rare) {ábágara ní agá tí kpé na gbé tí mbi : the buffalo came and ran right below me} - gógóá, ngbáa are more usual synonyms
3. beef {tongana na yí tí zia bágara da, só nzoní : if you want to put beef into it, that's good} - yana 2 is the more general term for meat

bakongo* N : a turtle, a tortoise

bákoyá N : a baboon {lá kóó na yáká tí kóli só, ábákoyá míngi aske foutu kóbe ní : always in this man's field, many baboons were destroying the crops} - see yana tí ngonda

bála N : an area within a village which is enclosed by a hedge or fence {tongana í fán yana awe, í gá na place tí bála ní, í kángbi yana só tenetí áfanille : when we had killed the animal, we came to the enclosure and divided the animal among the families} - ghágbá designates the fence or hedge

balai** [balé, balié] N : a broom - indigenous brooms are made of a bunch of grass, fibers, or analogous vegetable material, held, bound, or woven together, without a handle, so that the user must squat while sweeping

báláwá N : the shea tree or its nut - a solid fat called mafuta tí báláwá is made of the nuts and used in cooking in the northern parts of the country, especially among Muslims and those culturally influenced by them

bángá N : 1. a rubber tree - in most places rubber is taken from wild rather than cultivated trees, though plantations exist
2. raw latex or rubber (asára bángá na géré tí vélo : they make rubber into bicycle tires) - latex is also called ngú tí bángá - ndembú is cured rubber

bángó nze N : a menstrual period - see báa nze

bara V : to greet (mbi bara mo nzoní : I greet you cordially) (mbi bara ála kóé : I greet you all)

bara N : greetings (íta, bara mínga : brother, many greetings) (mbi tene bara tí mbi na ála kóé : I say my greetings to you all) (lo mú na mo bara tí lo na madame na áméréngé kóé : he gives you his greetings, and Madam and the children also) - this expression is the first greeting exchanged by two people upon meeting, and is conventionally followed by other formulas - see mo éké, mbi éké - dufí nzoní, goe nzoní are used at parting

báságbó N: Derby's eland, a large, rather scarce antelope much prized by hunters - see yama tí ngonda

basánze N : that which pertains to traditional customs or crafts - used in the phrases ta tí basánze, yíngó tí basánze - much less pejorative than sauvage - opp. civiliser, service

batá N : a squirrel

bata V : 1. to keep, preserve, protect, guard, sustain, retain (gi vin só mo bata na ní só vení mo ke tó na ní : just the wine in which you kept it you should boil it in) (mbi ke bata lo na kóbe tí mbi : I'm sustaining him with my food) (mais íta mbi má ála ke mú kóli gi na kété yoró tí bata téré ape? : but sister, haven't I heard that they catch husbands with a small charm for protecting the body?)
2. by extension, to adopt (áita tí lo, ála mú mérengé tí lo só, ála bata lo : his brothers, they took his child and adopted it) - syn. kanáta 2

bata kóngbá N : an apprentice and assistant to a truck driver who rides on top of the load to make sure of its safety and to warn the driver of vehicles from the rear - also called apprenti

bata me N : a brassière

bata yángá V : to keep still, especially under provocation or inducement, to exercise self-discipline so as not to speak

bé N : the middle or center of something - used in bé bí and ndó bé - syn. pópó, milieu - means in the middle of a surface, e.g. a table

be V 1 : to weary or discourage someone {téné tí lo abe ála awe : his saying discouraged them} - see nzé, mú yángá, kara

be V 2 : 1. to brown, as frying food {mbi sára yama na mafuta, na abe : I prepare meat in fat, and it browns}
2. to ripen, to be ripe {mángo ní abe nzoní, anzere míngi : the mango is quite ripe, it tastes very good}

bebé N : roofing grass, a special kind of tall grass (perhaps Imperata cylindrica L.) especially well adapted to making durable thatched roofs {tongana mo fáa péré na place tí bebé, mo mú géré ní kóé : when you cut grass in the place of roofing, take the roots as well} - péré is the general term for grass - see li tí da

bé bí N : midnight - bí, heure, - syn. midi tí bí

békpá N : thunder {békpá asungba, amú mo : may thunder burst and get you, i.e. a curse upon you} {békpá asungba mbéní lá, amú méréngé só anzí yí : the thunder burst one day and got the youth who stole the thing} - see yékpá

berá N : battle, war {tongasó lo ke goe na berá tí tiri na áíta tí lo na tí kamáta ála : so he went to war to fight with his brothers and to capture them} {ála goe tí tiri berá : they went to fight a war} - see also píka berá, tiri, tí na li

béta N : a waterbuck, a large, dark grey game antelope - see yama tí ngonda

bé N : 1. the liver, human or animal

2. in folk psychology, the seat of the human spirit (see yíngó), hence of the personality and all its functions : will, intellect, memory, emotions, consciousness, disposition, temperament, etc. - the process of perception begins with the senses (see lě, mě, bán, má) - next the head (see li) takes the information and either loses, i.e. forgets it (see gírísá 1), or transmits it to the liver, where all further dispositions are made - the information may be understood (see híngá na bé) - the liver can accept and believe the information and commit itself (see zía bé), or reject it (see kě) - it can reverse itself and receive truth formerly rejected, as in repentance (see láké bé) - it can cogitate, meditate, ponder, and wonder (see gí bé, b'andé, há, penser) - the liver experiences joy (see bé ... ngiá), sorrow and resentment (see bé ... sò, vundú), desire and love (see bé ... ~~lú~~) - it can be overwhelmed by an awesome thing (see bé ... dǒ), it can be broken (see bé ... fáa), amazed and astonished (see bé ... gbó) - anger is associated with a rise in the bile (see ngonzo, bé ... lóndó), and when the anger has abated it is said that the liver has cooled, is resting, or has returned to its place (see bé ... dé, bé ... lángó, bé ... kírí) - it can also be said that it has again become good, though this expression (see bé ... gá nzoní) applies equally to the cessation of sorrow and resentment as the result of consolation - the liver can be arrogant (see bé kótá), and it can become humble and amenable (see wóko bé) - it can become weary and discouraged (see bé ... nzé) and experience pleasure (see bé nzere) - it can be characterized as black or double (see bé ... vókó, bé ... ése) to indicate dishonesty or deceitfulness, or white (see bé ... vurú) to indicate integrity and guilelessness - when livers are one (see bé óko), there is good fellowship - kindness is described as a good liver (bé nzoní), and other qualities include right, evil, and so on (see mbírímbírí, sioní) - really knowing another person implies knowing his liver (see híngá bé tí) (lukundú ate bé tí lo : a witch spirit has eaten his liver, i.e. to explain sickness or death) (ngonzo akáí na bé tí lo : anger has

quieted in his liver} {bè tí ála ake tongana bè tí zo vokó : their liver is like that of a black man, i.e. their temperament, so that they are congenial and understanding} {téné ake na bè tí lo : there is a matter in his liver, i.e. something that needs to be settled before peace is restored} {lo tene na bè tí lo ... : he said within himself ...} {bè tí lo achanger : his disposition has changed} - see expressions including bè : bi bé, gbó bé, kánga bé, kpó bé, li bé, má ... bé, sára ... na bé, sioní bé, wa ... bé, zía bé

bè ... dé V : anger has abated {bè tí lo adé : he has calmed down} - see also bé ... lángó, bé ... kírí, bé ... ga nzoní - opposite, bé ... lónó

bè ... dó V : to be overwhelmed by something awesome, frightening - hence, dóngó bé : something terrible {tenetí politique, ála sára yí tí dóngó bé, mais ála sára gbá : as for politics, they did some terrible things, but without success}

bè ... ake na ngiá V : to rejoice greatly - the expression can be inverted {bè tí mbi ake na ngiá : my liver has joy} {ngiá ake na bè tí mbi : joy is in my liver} - not as strong as bé ... sí na ngiá

bè ... fáa V : to be heartbroken, to be overwhelmed by sorrow and despair - the inverted form is more common {bè tí lo afáa : his heart is broken} {yí só afáa bè tí lo : this thing is breaking his heart}

bè ... gá nzoni V : 1. to be morally ameliorated {bè tí lo agá nzoní : his liver became good, i.e. he became a better man}
2. to be pacified {bè tí lo agá nzoní : he calmed down} - see bé ... dé, bé ... kírí, bé ... lángó
3. to be comforted or consoled {bè tí lo agá nzoní : he was comforted} - see wa bé

bè ... gbó V : to be startled, amazed, astonished, to marvel {bè tí lo agbó ngbangatí finí yí só lo báa kózo ní pepe : he marvelled on account of the new things he had never seen before}

bè ... kírí V : to be pacified after violent anger {bè tí lo akírí na

place ní : his liver returned to its place, i.e. he calmed down) -
 also see bé : dé, bé ... lángó, bé gá nzoní 2 - opposite of bé ... lónḁḁ

bé ... kótá N : arrogance - see also baba, fandara

bé ... lángó V : to calm down after hot anger - syn. bé ... dé, bé ...

kírí, bé ... gá nzoní - opposite, bé ... lónḁḁ

béle V : to deny (mbi béle téné pape : I don't deny the matter) - see sára
téné

(bé ... lónḁḁ V : to be aroused, to become angry (bé tí lo alónḁḁ, ngonzo

agá na lé tí lo : his liver arose, bile came up into his face, i.e.

he became violently angry) - not as strong as ngonzo ... gbó bé -
 opposite of bé ... dé, bé ... kírí, etc.

(bé ... lónḁḁ V : to be wearied or discouraged (bé tí lo anzé bíaní : he was
 discouraged) - syn. bé ... wóko, fatiguer - opposite wa bé,

kánga bé

bé ... nzere : to take pleasure, to be pleased (fadé í díko éré tí ála,
 sí bé tí ála anzere : we'll read your names, so that you will be
 pleased) : - this expression is less specific in focussing on the source
 of the pleasure than nzere ná bé.

bé ... nzoní N : kindness, amiability, cordiality, mercy - also said as
gínawo nzoní bé - frequently found in the phrase sára bé nzoní (íta, mo sára
elqoeq bé nzoní na mbi mo diminuer ngéné ní ma : sister, show me kindness
 ... á and bring down the price, won't you) (ála tana na bé nzoní yí só

alíngbi na pópó tí ála pape (they don't talk kindly among themselves
 as they should)

bé ... óse : to be dishonest, deceitful, underhanded - the copula aka
 either appears or is understood before óse (mbi zia bé tí mbi na lo

óko pape, bé tí lo óse : I don't trust him at all, he is deceitful)

áké óko N : agreement (ála sára bé óko na ndó téné ní : they agreed on this
 matter)

2. fellowship {lo eke sára bé ókò na áyama tí ngangó tongana dole pepe : he didn't associate and have fellowship with strong animals like the elephant}

3. single-mindedness {lo sára na mabókò óse pepe, mais na bé ókò : she doesn't do it with two hands, i.e. halfheartedly, but with dedication} - see also ngiá, sára ngiá

bé ... sí na ngiá V : to be full of joy, to be overjoyed - the inverted expression is more common {lá só bé tí mbi así na ngiá : today I am full of joy} { lá só ngiá así bé tí mbi : today joy fills my heart}- this is a stronger expression than bé ... eke na ngiá

bé ... so V : to be offended, to experience resentment, to hold a grudge - the expression can also be inverted {bé tí mbi aso na patron tí mbi míngi : I'm very much put out and offended at my boss} {mbéni yí ake so bé tí mbi : something is offending me} - when the feeling expressed by bé ... so becomes settled it is called vundú

bé ... vəkó V : to be dishonest and deceitful - the result of a person's being and acting in this manner is a rupture of goodwill and fellowship with others {ámbeńi só bé tí ála avəkó ake da míngi : there are many who are dishonest} - syn. bé ... óse - opp. bé ... ókò, bé ... vurú

bé ... vurú V : to be guileless, honest, open - the result of a person's being and acting in this manner is to create goodwill and fellowship with others {zo só bé tí ála avurú na mbáge tí ázo vəkó ... : people who are open and above-board towards black people ...} - syn. bé ... ókò - opp. bé ... óse, bé ... vəkó

bé ... wókò V : to be or become humble, amenable - this expression can be inverted {bé tí lo awókò : he is humble} {wókò bé tí mɔ : relent, humble yourself} - opp. bé kótá

bé ... yí V : to want, desire, like, love {zo só bé tí lo ayí lo gá : the person whom he wants comes} {peut-être bé tí lo ayí mɔ pepe láá : perhaps it's because he doesn't love you} - a much weaker syn. is lé ... yí - opp. ké - see yí

bé ... yí da V : see yí ... da

bí N : night, nighttime {tongana zo aake nzí na bí, mbi arrêter lo : when someone steals at night, I arrest him} - see heure for the times of the day

bi V : to throw, to cast, to shove away {mo bi adorónu da : throw in some rock salt} {bi ngó tí mo na lé tí ngú, sí í bi gbánda : shove out your boat on the surface of the water, so that we can cast the nets}

biá N : a song {ála commencer tí hé biá, tí sára ngiá : they began to sing a song and to have fun} {mbi píka na ála mbéni pendere biá : I'll play for you a beautiful song} - see hé biá, píka biá

biakú Av : truly, in truth - can be reduplicated for emphasis {ála zía yí tí ála kóé biakú biakú : they left all their things in very truth} syn. bíani

bíani Av : truly, in truth, really, certainly - can be reduplicated for emphasis {fadé lo kúí bíani : he's really going to die} {na bíani, mbi hínga só, fadesó aake ámbunzú só agá na kusára só na ~~da~~ and truly, I know that it is now white men who bring this work to us} {taá téné tí mo bíani? : is what you're saying really true?} - syn. biakú

bianga N : a frog - syn. kóngba

bi bé V : to set one's heart on {mamá abi bé tí lo na lége tí sára kusára tí yá da : mother set her heart on doing the housework} - this is largely used by Protestants, while the more usual expression is zía bé

bien** [byɛ̃] Au : good, well {Sango tí Bangui aake bien : the Sango in Bangui is good} {mbi ake travailler bien bien : I work very well, i.e. under excellent conditions} - this is much less common, more sophisticated than nzoni

bière** [byɛ̃r] N : European-type beer - for a list of alcoholic beverages see samba

bima V : to complain, lament, moan {mbi bima ngbangatí yí tí vundú só ála sára na mbi : I'm complaining on account of the resentment-arousing things they are doing to me} - this is much more specific, and less loud a sound than that indicated by the more usual uses of toto and dé kóngó, and less active and reasoned than dé kité - see also sára téné

bi mbo V : to send a dog after something, to incite a dog to the chase {lo bi mbo tí lo tí tomba yama : he sent his dog to chase animals} - the expression used to address the dog for this purpose is ca?

bí ... na likongó V : to throw a spear at, to pierce with a spear {tongana zo ayí tí bi mo na likongó, mo mú válá só mo kanga na lé tí mo : when someone wants to pierce you with a spear, you take the shield and cover your face}

bi ... na ngonda V : to throw away, to abandon {i kángbi áyá ní kóé, i bi na ngonda : we cut out all the insides, i.e. intestines, and threw them away}

bi ... na sése V : to throw on the ground, to abandon {báa kótá caisse só, mbi bi na sése : look, this big crate, I just abandoned it}

bingbá An : a color term covering primarily red, orange, reddish brown, and the more intense, deeper shades of yellow - reduplicated, it means very red, bright red {lo ke bingbá yama : he's a reddish animal} {amú mbéní kótá bongó, bingbá bingbá, abi na sése, mbi tambéla na ndó ní : they took a great cloth, bright red, and put it on the ground, and I walked on it} - see couleur

bingbá kété An : lighter shades of yellow, orange, and pink - see couleur

bingbá mafuta N : palm oil - see mbúrú, mafuta

bingo N : nighttime, darkness {azia í na yá tí bingó, só aake sioní míngi : they abandoned us in the darkness, this is very bad} - the darkness can be moral or otherwise, figurative as well as physical - see bí

biś N : a bone - as opposed to mi, the flesh

biś li N : a skull

biri N : yesterday (biri si madame amú bongó na mbi : it was yesterday that Madam gave me the cloth) - see lă for the date system - see also mbéni biri

biribiri N : beer made from mil, soaked in water two days- the mash is drained and allowed to stand for a week, and then pounded, mixed with water and made into a drink - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

bi yángá V : to speak up, possibly out of turn, to put in one's oar, to express one's opinions freely (ála bi yángá tí ála na yá tí politique tí République Centrafricaine, i húnda na ála tí sárángó na ndo só pepe : they interfered vocally in the politics of the Central African Republic, we ask them not to do it here)

bobo N : termite - these insects are very destructive, coming out of their underground nests and their hills to destroy wood, paper, cloth, etc. - but they are also a significant source of protein at certain times of the year - after the first rains of the rainy season, they erupt from the ground in vast swarms on their nuptial flight - they are caught as they emerge in cans, pots, or sieves, their wings are shaken off, and they are eaten raw, roasted, or boiled

boite** [bwáte] N : 1. a tin can (nginza tí boite aake ngangó mingi : the price of a can (of food) is very high)
2. a small box or carton, as opposed to caisse or sandúku which are larger (mbi sára bon tí trois boite tí cartouche : I bought on credit three boxes of cartridges)

bólo V : to throw a stone with accuracy so as to hit something (abólo ndeke na témé : he hit a bird with a stone) - gena implies the throwing of several stones, as when someone is pelted with stones

bon** [bɔɔ] N : a debt, especially one incurred by buying on credit (mbi vo na bon : I bought it on credit) (kóli ní aobliger tí sára bon :

the man is obliged to go into debt) { fadesó bon tí Trompette aske pepe, ázo avo gi vóngó : now there is no more credit (for buying) the Trompette (a journal), people just buy it (for cash)) - various kinds of credit and debt are very common - kódá is a traditional term for various kinds of obligations, often arising out of social relationships

bon** [bɔ] I : 1. frequently an empty morpheme merely signalling the continuation of speech {bon, téné aske pepe : there's no trouble} 2. well then, now then {mbi tene, bon, fadesó mbi eke na kótóró tí mbi : I said, Now then, I'm in my village} 3. good, fine, all right {bon, merci : good, thanks}

bóndó N : mil (Sorghum guineense Stapf.), specifically the edible dried grains of the plant {tongana heure tí burú awe, ábóndó asára awe, alungúla lé ní azia na yá tí gogoro : when the dry season is over, and the mil grains have formed, we remove the grains and put them into a granary} - mil is the staple of most of the inhabitants of the northern half of the Central African Republic - syn. zuru

bóngbi [búngbi, bíngbi, búmbi] V : to gather together, to assemble, to collect, to put together {mo mú kéké tí wá mo bóngbi : you take firewood and gather it together} {í bóngbi, í na ála kóé, í sára ngiá : we gather together, we and they, and have fun} {áni bóngbi tí dó lengé : we assembled to dance the lengé} {ámérenge míngi abóngbi ná lí tí finí mérenge wále só tí pika lo : a lot of children ganged up on the new girl to beat her up} {mbi bóngbi ázo tí kótóró : I assembled the people of the village} - opp. kángbi 2 - see also tíngbi

bóngbi N : a gathering, a meeting {áinspecteur asára só na lá tí kótá bóngbi tí ála : the inspectors did this at the time of their great meeting}

bóngbi li tí V : to assemble for a meeting or other common undertaking, to get* heads together {il faut ála bóngbi li tí ála, sí ála sára kóe na ngiá : you must get together, so as to do the job with joy}

bóngbi téré V : to assemble for a common purpose {í bóngbi téré, í yó
samba lége óko : we got together and drank beer together}

bozó N : a pouch-shaped bag of leather or woven grass, slung under the
arm by a shoulder strap - used primarily by old men {lo píka lí tí
susu ní, sí lo zía na yá tí bozó : he hit the fish over the head
and then put it into his bag}

2. there is sometimes a confusion of form, then of meaning, with French
poche

3. by extension, any carrying bag or case, such as a brief case,
especially of leather, cloth, or woven-work

bozó íno N : the bladder - íno is urine

bozó tí ngonzo N : the gall bladder - ngonzo 1 is bile

bózo : see poche

bói N : a personal or domestic servant, especially in a European context
{préavis tí ábói na ácuissinier aake lángó miombe : notice for house
servants and cooks is eight days} - in a household of several servants,
the cook, cuisinier, has the most prestige, the highest pay, and the
most privileges, the bói comes next, and the kété bói or marmiton, is
at the bottom of the scale - ngbáá means a slave

bói coton N : a petty agricultural official who, in the days when the
cultivation of cotton was compulsory, supervised the work and enforced
the requirements - see coton

bongó N : 1. cloth, fabric {kóngbá só ála ke ká aake ápièce tí bongó :
the merchandise which they are selling is pieces of cloth}

2. any piece of clothing, the totality of one's clothing, clothing
in general {tongana mo lóndó na kpa, mo sukúla ngú, mo yú bongó tí
mo, mo píka kate tí mo, atene, mbi eke kóli : when you've come from
work, you wash up, put on your clothes, beat your chest and say, I'm
a man!}

3. a cloth, a rag

búbá An : 1. worthless {yáká só í sára só, ake yáká tí búbá pepe : this field which we're making is not a worthless field} (giriri mbi dutí na mawa, ála báa mbi tongana zo tí búbá : formerly I remained in a pitiable state, they considered me a worthless person)
 2. foolish, senseless, crazy {ála gí lége tí sára í na búbá zo tí ála pepe : they don't try to make us into their fools} {ázo só ake sára téné tí búbá : these people are talking nonsense} - see also sára búbá, li ... tourner

buba V : to ruin, to waste, to make or become worthless {kóli tí mọ amú nginza ake buba séngé séngé : your husband takes the money and wastes it for no reason} {mbi báa yí só anzere na mbi, sí mbi buba pémbé tí mbi : I considered that this thing would please me, so I ruined my teeth} {mbi yí mọ buba mbi pepe : I don't want you to make a fool of me} {yí ní abuba awe : the thing became worthless}-see foutu

búburú N : dumbness {lo eke wa búburú, lo sára téné gbá : he is a dumb person, he tries vainly to talk}

bulée N : sweet banana, widely used as a diet supplement, in contrast to fondo, which is used as a staple by some people

bureau** [biróo] N : 1. an office, especially an administrative office {ála eke na bureau na mbi : you are in the office with me} {ála éré kóli ní na bureau : they summoned the man to the (district) office} {lo sára marriage tí bureau na tí mission ngá : he had a civil marriage and a church wedding too}
 2. a desk

burú N : dry season {na yá tí burú, ála éré kóngó, sí ála eke mú susu ní : in the dry season, they dam up the Kongo stream and catch the fish} - see vurú ndo

buruma N : leprosy - this disease is endemic in the Central African Republic, though a persistent effort of public health and other medical forces has greatly improved the situation - traditional mores did not prescribe any ostracism or banishment for the victim - syn. ngiba - see kobéla

- B' -

b'anda V : to ponder, to meditate (lo b'anda téné na yá tí bé tí lo :
he pondered the problem in his mind, lit. his liver) - syn. gi bé,
há, paáor

b'ongó N : a hyena - in fables, the hyena is a stupid, ridiculous, nasty-
tempered character - see yama tí ngonda

- C -

café** [kafée] N : 1. coffee in a botanically generic sense (yáká tí
café tí mbi akánga kóé : my coffee plantation is completely choked
(with weeds)) - coffee is the second most important cash crop of the
Central African Republic, and is grown especially in the southern half
of the country
2. coffee plantation (mbi eke na yángá tí café tí mbi : I'm at the
edge of my coffee plantation)
3. coffee beans (má eke pika café : you pound the coffee beans)
4. coffee, a drink (áméni zo agá na galá, ála yó café : some people
come to the market to drink coffee)

caisse** [kése, kéas, kési] N : a wooden box or crate (caisse ní ané, mbi
yó caisse ní gbá : the crate was very heavy, I tried in vain to carry
it) (í eke voter gí na kété kété mbéti só, amú, agce zia na caisse tí
vote : you vote just with those little slips of paper, you take and go
put them into the ballot box) - caisse is more specific and modern than
sandúka, and larger than boite

camarade** [kamarád, kamaráde] N : a close friend, a buddy or pal, always
of the same sex (tongana mbéni camarade tí mọ agá, na lo í duti tí
causer : when a friend of yours comes along, you and she sit and chat) -
almost syn. ndeko, which can however be of either sex, and can refer
to a person whose companionship is so intimate as to warrant a sort
of honorary membership in the family - ndeko can also be a euphemism
for mistress or lover - fó refers specifically to a work companion,
mbá to a compatriot, ita to a relative, and ndoé to a person having
the same name as oneself

camion** [kamyó] N : a truck - any automotive vehicle larger than a
passenger car and used primarily to transport merchandise - trucks
are the only means of inland transportation of goods, and also carry
many passengers, in spite of the growth of bus service - see also auto,
autocar, kutukutu

canton** [kə́tɔ́ɔ] N : 1. an administrative territorial unit of colonial days, composed of a number of villages and, together with several parallel units, constituting a district (canton tí Bessao : the county of Bessao) - since independence, replaced by the collectivité - see republique for the administrative organization of the country
 2. the chief officer of the canton - an African selected by the colonial government in part by traditional or pseudo-traditional criteria of chieftainship, usually from a chiefly or pseudo-chiefly clan - often despised by the younger generation for their usual lack of education, their attachment to traditional customs and patterns of authority, and especially their identification with the colonial régime - this office has been superceded since independence by the elective position of président tí collectivité - see also makunzi, gbíá

capitaine** [kapit́ɛ́ɛn] N : the Nile perc. - a large fish, caught in the larger rivers, and considered a great delicacy - see susu, gí susu

carte** [ká́rte, ká́rate] N : a card, especially a membership or identifying card {ázo óke ayí títene ála mú carte tí lo? : how many people want to take away his membership card?} - used especially in Protestant churches - see also carte d'identité

carte d'identité** [dátit́ɛ́ɛ] N : an official identifying document intended to be carried on the person at all times {ngú tí mbi, tongana mo báa carte d'identité, ka mo hínga : as for my age, if you saw my identity card, then you would know}

catéchiste** [katesístɛ] N : a catechist or subordinate lay leader in a local congregation, as among Protestants - a person charged with teaching the catechism, as among Catholics - ordained leaders are called père among Catholics and pasteur among Protestants

causer** [kozée] V : to chat, to discuss, to talk cordially and informally {mbi na wále tí mbi í causer títene í eke sára mo téné só mbírimbírí : my wife and I discussed this so we could tell you this matter rightly} - see sára téné for a study of synonyms

ça va** [saváa] V : to recover from illness, to be in good health {fadesó mbi ça va awe : now I'm well} {í língbi tí ça va na lége tí kobéla só : we can recover from this illness} - syn. gá nzoní 1. guérir, kobéla ... kái

certificat** [sertifikáa] N : a certificate - especially, the certificat d'études primaires élémentaires, or elementary school certificate {alíngbi mọ wara certificat tí mọ sí, ngbangatí gángó moniteur só aake yí tí ngiá pepe : you must have your certificate, because becoming an instructor is not a joking matter} - the certificate is a prerequisite for many jobs, and hence is a very desirable attainment, though increasingly the better clerical jobs carry higher requirements

changer** [sazée, sanzé : 1. to change {fadé ála changer yángá tí ála : they will change their mouth, i.e. not do what they said} {mbi changer bngó pepe : I don't change clothes} {bé tí zo achanger : people's dispositions change}
2. to exchange, to change places {mọ changer mbi : change places with me}

chapeau** [sapóo] N : a hat - syn. kpoto

chapelle** [sapéel] N : a chapel, a church building - also called da tí Nzapá - église is sometimes used of a large, elaborate building, especially among Catholics - less acculturated individuals sometimes call a church edifice mission

charbon** [sarbó?, sarvó] N : charcoal - made locally by stacking sticks of certain kinds of wood, covering them with mud or clay, and burning - at the proper time, the fire is extinguished and the charcoal recovered - in traditional technology, charcoal was made by smiths and used by them to smelt and forge iron

charpentier** [sarpatyé, sarapandée, sarapánde] N : a carpenter, a cabinet-maker - many men acquire some skill at this craft, and work either as small contractors or manufacturers, making doors, shutters, and door and window frames, or furniture and wooden carrying boxes - for many, this is an important source of income supplementary to that derived from agriculture

chauffer** [sofée] V : to heat, especially food or water {tongana mafuta achauffer awe, mo zia oignon da : when the fat has heated, you put in onions}

chauffeur** [soféer] N : the professional driver of a truck, bus, or car - chauffeur, truck driver - this is a remunerative and prestigious occupation

chicotte** [sikóte] N : a whip, a scourge, often of leather - used formerly by slave drivers and other exploiters of the population - see also zaza

choisir** [swazii] V : to choose, to select {ála eke choisir gouvernement tí ála : they will choose their government} - syn. kamáta ... na pópó, mú ... na pópó

chrétien** [kretyěě] N : a Christian {chrétien alíngbi kánga lége na zo pepe : a Christian cannot close the way, i.e. create an obstacle, for a person} - in Protestant circles, used in a more general sense than membre, which indicates formal membership in good standing in the church - syn. mérengé tí Nzapá - Protestants sometimes use the artificial neologism wa má bé

civiliser** [sivilizée, sevilizé] V : to be civilized, in European sense, to be acculturated {mbení wále aciviliser : a certain woman has become civilized}

civiliser** N : acculturation, civilization {zo tí civiliser : a civilized person} - syn. service, opp. basánze, sauvage

clé** [klée, kérééré] N : 1. a lock - also called mamá tí clé
2. a key - also called mérengé tí clé

cochon** [kosóo, kosóo] N : 1. a domestic pig - pigs are not often raised, and when they are, they forage for themselves freely
2. a wild pig, especially a wart hog - syn. cochon tí gígí, cochon tí ngonda - a dark grey animal, while mbengé is a bush pig, a reddish animal

cochon tí gígí, cochon tí ngonda - commander

28

cochon tí gígí, cochon tí ngonda N : a wart hog - syn. cochon 2 - mbengé is a reddish bush pig

collectivité** [koléktivité] N : a township, an administrative unit composed of a cluster of villages having common economic interests - since independence, this unit has replaced the canton - its président is elected, and persons exercising power are usually better educated than the former chiefs {oui, collectivité na bac acommencer tí gá nzoní : yes, the township by the ferry is beginning to prosper} - see also district - see république for the administrative organization of the country

collège** [koléʒ] N : a secondary school - there are two kinds, a four-year school, and a six-year school leading to the baccalaureate - selection of entering students and elimination of failures are quite severe, so that few who begin school complete secondary school - école is the more general term for school

coller** [kolée] V : to thicken, as a sauce or paste, to congeal, to jell, to coagulate {kása ní acoller nzoní míngi : the sauce has thickened beautifully} - syn. gbó

coller** [kolée] N : a dance in the European style, with men and women dancing together and holding each other - syn. malínga, nylon - see also dódó

commandant** [komadãã] N : under colonial rule, a district or regional administrative officer {ála gá na lo na commandant, ála kánga lo : they brought him to the administrator and jailed him} - this term, whose use was popular rather than precise, was a carry-over from earlier days of military occupation and rule - see république for the administrative organization of the country

commander** [komandée, kumandé] V : to command, to order, to rule {lo commander na kótóró : he rules in the village} {lo commander kótóró : he rules the village} {lo commander li tí sárángó samba : he commands the head of, i.e. directs, the making of beer} {lo commander mbi : he commanded me}

commencer** [komasée, kumáse] V : to begin, to start, to commence, to initiate {aake commencer ánde híó áíng' : it will begin later on very soon} {kotéla acommencer tí kái : the illness has begun to get well} {mafuta acommencer sí gígí : the fat has begun to render out}

concours** [kəkúur] N : a competitive examination, as for entering secondary or technical school or obtaining a civil service position {ála sára concours, sí lo wara : they took an examination, and he succeeded} - a carry-over from French rule, competitive examinations are used extensively and loom large in the consciousness of the people, especially the younger generation

continuer** [kətinée] V : to continue, to persist {mó continuer tí sára kóa : continue to do your work} {allez, í ngbá tí continuer : well then, we persist in continuing} - since this refers to action begun in the past and continuing through the present, it is syn. ngbá, while de refers to action not yet begun

coton** [kotóp, kotóo] N : cotton {tongana avó coton, sí fadé í kóé í bóngbi nginza áí tí to na mó : when they buy cotton, we'll all get the money together and send it to you} - this is the principal cash crop of the Central African Republic, especially in the northern two-thirds of the country - the annual buying of cotton from individual planters is strictly supervised by the government, and for many people it represents the only time in the year when they are in possession of an appreciable amount of cash - hence, it is a time of paying debts and bills - syn. tende

couleur** [kuléer] N : color {couleur ní aake bingbá : its color is red} - the term is not very commonly used - the color system is as follows : bingbá includes red, orange, reddish brown, and the more intense, deeper shades of yellow - reduplicated, it means very red yókó means black, but also includes darker shades of blue, green, violet, and even brown as well as gray - reduplicated, it means pitch black vurú means white, as well as pale or pastel tints of almost any color - reduplicated, it means bright white

any of the three basic terms may be modified by placing kété after it, which attenuates the color : bingbá kété, a less intense red or yellow - vokó kété, gray or grayish shades of other colors - vurú kété, light gray or grayish tints of other colors

among more acculturated speakers, French terms are in use, especially jaune, bleu, and vert

comparitive expressions are often used to indicate color {aske tongana kugbé : it's like a leaf, i.e., green}

coup-de-poing** [kutubóo] N 1 : a fist {apíka kate tí lo na coup-de-poing : he hit his chest with his fist} - syn. ngobo

2. a blow with the fist {coup-de-poing óko, lo tí na sése : one punch, and he fell down}

coup-de-poing** [kutubóo] N 2 : a kind of manioc {coup-de-poing só mbi sára téné ní aske gozo tí ngú : the coup-de-poing of which I was speaking is the water manioc} - see gozo

coupe-coupe** [kupekúpe, kupkúup] N : a machete {lo mú coupe-coupe, lo commencer tí dé kéké : he took his machete and began to chop down a tree} - this is an imported tool with a flat steel blade about fifteen to eighteen inches long and from two to four inches wide, the tip frequently curved back, and with a grip-shaped handle of wood - syn. kpangbara, nzenze - see also zembe

croisement** [kurazemáa] N : a cross-roads - syn. sangbí fléce

cuisinier** [kwizinyée] N : a cook, almost invariably a man employed by Europeans or acculturated Africans - the cook is at the top of the pay and prestige rating among domestic employees, followed by the bói, while the kété bói is lowest

da N : 1. any kind of building, often with its use specified by a complement as in da tí kánga, da tí kóli, da tí lengé, da tí magasin, da tí ngbanga, da tí Nzapá - the parts of a house are géré tí da or koto the foundation, téré tí da the walls, li tí da the roof, yángá tí da the door

2. a house, a home {ágene ake gá na da tí mo míngi : many guests come to your house} {mbi eke na mérengé óko na da tí mbi : I have one child at home} - this last example may illustrate an extension of meaning to the sense of household

da Av : 1. there, in that place, into that place, on that place, from that place {í sára yáká, í lú yí da : we prepared a field, we planted things in it} {mo zía yíngó da : put salt into it} {place só babá asára kóda da, í sára ngú míngi ká : the place in which father worked, we spent many years there} {fadé í dé bá da : we'll swear on it} {mbi sí gígí da : I've come out from it} - differs from ká and ge in expressing an element of anaphora, and in being broader in its locative reference

2. about it {téné só mo húnda mbi da : the matter about which you asked me}

da bé V : 1. to remember {mbi da bé mbi, mbi da bé tí mbi : I remember} mbi da bé tí mbi na téné ní : I remember the matter}

2. to remind {lo da bé ála, lo da bé tí ála : he reminded them} {lo da bé tí ála na téné ní : he reminded them of that matter}

da gbí N : a fireman

dambá N : a tail, especially of an animal

dame-jeanne** [damzáan] N : a demi-john - a type of narrow-necked glass jug holding five to twenty quarts and covered with wicker-work - coming from Europe filled with wine, they are used extensively in the Central African Republic to carry and store oil, kerosene, and other liquids

dará V : to incite an animal, usually a dog, to pursuit - to sick on a dog {lo dará mbo tí lo, atene, ča? : he sicked on his dog, saying, ča?} - see ča?

da tí kánga N : a prison - syn. kánga N

da tí kóli N : a man's house - used in speaking of a girl making a marriage final by going to her husband's home {mo goe na da ti kóli awe pepe? : haven't you gone to a man's house, i.e. haven't you already got married?} - see marriage, goe na da tí kóli

da tí lengé N : a building used for the lengé dance ceremonials

da tí magasin N : a store, a storehouse, a warehouse - syn. magasin

da tí ngbanga N : a court house, a building where judgments are rendered

da tí Nzapá N : a church building - see chapelle, église

daveke N : syphilis - see kobéla

dé N : cold {dé asára mbi míngi : cold is bothering me greatly} {dé asára míngi : cold is doing, i.e. it's very cold} {só ngú tí dé : that's cold water} - opp. wá

dé V 1 : to be or become cold {fadesó acommencer tí dé : now it's beginning to get cold} {fadé ngú adé : the water will be cold} {yí só adé míngi : this thing is very cold} - syn. gá dé, mú dé, wara dé - opp. mú wá - used in ndá adé

dé V 2 : to chop, to break or cut up with a chopping motion {lo dé kéké : he's chopping wood, or chopping down a tree} {mo dé yáká ngangó : break ground for a field with your strength} {mo dé tomate na ndó tí banc : chop the tomatoes on the chopping board} - see also fáa

dé V 3 : 1. to spit, to vomit {lo yuru na lo dé ngá na deux heures tí bí jusqu'a sept heures tí ndápéréré : he had dysentery and vomited from two o'clock at night until seven in the morning} - syn. dé na sése
2. to utter, esp. to utter a name, to name {adé ngá mo zo yę aso mbi yę : if they call you 'Who's that?' how can that bother me?} - syn. dé éré - see also sára téné - used in dé bá, dé éré, dé kité, dé kóngó

de V : to remain for the future, to remain to be done {yáká tí nzó ade : the corn field remains (to be planted)} {mbi de mérengé : I remained a child} {ade na ngangó tí lo : he remained with his strength, i.e. it had not yet left him} {ade na lége : he is still on the road, i.e. he has not arrived} { mbi de mbi mú kóli pepe : I still haven't taken a husband} {mbi de tí mú kóli pepe : I still haven't taken a husband} {ngú tí mbi ade títene mbi mú wále : my years remain for me to take a wife, i.e. I'm not old enough to marry} - syn. ngbá, but while the time reference of de is primarily future, that of ngbá is primarily past - the contrast is illustrated by the following examples {mbi de tí mú kóli pepe : I still haven't taken a husband} {mbi ngbá tí hú ponó : I'm still suffering} - the difference is not always clearly maintained, however

dé bá V : to swear, to utter an oath {í eke dé bá da : we'll swear on it} - this is more formal and solemnly binding than zé

dede N : horn of animal {ála mú dede tí yama só aake na ngonda, aúlu : they took the horn of a wild animal and blew on it} - syn. nzá

dé éré V : to name, to utter a name {mbení yama aake só adé éré ní, atene woga : there is an animal who is called woga} {adé éré tí lo, lo yí da pepe : they said his name, but he didn't respond} - syn. dé V 3, éré V

dé kité V : to object, to demur, to express doubt, to expostulate {mbi dé kité na ála gbá : I expostulated with them in vain} {mais só Jésus atene téné awe, ála dé kité ní pepe : but since Jesus had said it, they didn't object to it} - see also ké, sára téné, papa V

deko N : a rat or mouse - any animal of the genera Rattus and Mus {ángása na ádeko na kóndo só ála tene áwále ate fadesó pepe só, í te tí í fadesó kóé : goats and rats and chicken which they say women do not eat, we now eat them also}

dé kóngó V : to shout, to yell, to bark (as a dog) {mo eke dé kóngó na li tí lo ngangó míngi, mo tene lo fáa yáká pepe : you yell at him very loud, you tell him not to cut down the garden} - see also toto, sára téné, éré ndo

déma, déma tééré-descendre

34

déma, dém- tééré V : to carry on, to act in an agitated manner, to lose self-control {zia toto, déma míngi tongasó pepe : stop crying, don't carry on so} {lo eke déma tééré, lo eke toto : he was carrying on, he was crying}

démerder** [demerdée, demerdáa] V : to manceuvre, to make out, to get along, to overcome obstacles by a display of ingenuity {fadé mbi kóé mbi démerder na lége tí yí tongasó, mbi wara bongó mbi yú ma : I'll make out also in this matter, I'll find clothes to wear}

dé na sése V : to vomit - syn. dé V 3

dengbe N : a small antelope (Cephalophus maxwellii) - see yama tí ngonda

déngé V : to lean to one side {mo déngé na gó tí m^o tongasó : you bend your neck to one side like that} - ba often suggests a more permanent and involuntary curvature, while kuku means to kneel

dépendre ** [depáa] V : to depend {tongana m^o yí tí te na gozo mo te, tongana mo tí tí te na fondo mo te, só adépendre mo : if you want to eat it with manioc you do, if you want to eat it with plantains you do, that depends on you}

depuis** [depwii, depíi, dipíi] C : 1. since, ever since {mbi kpé téné tí tiri pepe, depuis dúngó tí mbi : I haven't run away from a fight ever since I was born} - both this usage and 2. below reflect the grammatical influence of French, and so can be called Gallicisms
2. in the meantime {depuis só, andáa, oignon abe awe : in the meantime, it turns out, that the onions have browned}

depuis** Av: for quite a while {mbi hinga lo depuis : I've known him for quite a while} - the orientation is perfective, in contrast to ngbii and jusqu'á Av, which are neutral or imperfective - that is, depuis relates a past event to the present

député** [depitée] N : a member of the assemblée législative, elected by universal adult suffrage from his constituency

descendre** [desáa] V : to go down, to descend {wé ní aake descendre na sése : the (molten) iron goes down to the ground (from inside the

furnace)) {yama tí ndúzú adescendre tí yó ngú na sése : aerial animals come down to drink at ground level} - opp. monter

deux heures** [dezéer] N : early afternoon, specifically the time to return to work after the noon break - see heure 5 for the divisions of the day

devant** [deváa, daváa] N : the front of something - used in the expression na devant tí, meaning in front of, ahead of {í goe fáa ngú na devant : we crossed the river out ahead} {tongana mbi goe na devant ... : if I go in front ...} {mbi zía na devant tí lo : I put if in front of him}

diki* V : to winnow grain, termites, etc. - syn. pé 2

diko V : to count, to enumerate, to reckon {mo diko na mbi, fadé mbi fúta na lo : tell me how much, I'll pay him} {mbi língbi tí diko ahúnzi pepe : I could enumerate them but they wouldn't be exhausted}
 2. to read {mbi yí mbéni mbéti só mo leke tí diko : I want a certain paper which you prepared for reading} {mbi eke diko éré tí ála : I'll read your names} - syn. diko mbéti
 3. to pray to, to consult worshipfully {mbi diko Nzapá da : I prayed to God about it} - syn. sambéla

diko mbéti V : to read {mbi diko mbéti na Sango : I read in Sango} - syn. diko 2 - see sára mbéti means to write, pika mbéti means to type or print

dimanche** [dimáas, dimáse, dimási] N : 1. Sunday

2. a week {mo hú téré tí mo dimanche otá : rest for three weeks} - less frequently, semaine is used - see lá for the dating system

diminuer** [diminée, deminée] V : to diminish, to decrease {yá tí mbi a~~ci~~nuer awe : my stomach (swelling) has gone down} {yí tí kótóró tí í aske diminuer awe : the things of our village have diminished} {mo diminuer na mbi ngéré ní ma : why don't you decrease the price for me!}

district** [distríkte] N : before independence, an administrative unit intermediary between the canton and the région, and governed by an

administrator called chef de district or commandant - since independence, the district has been renamed sous-préfecture, and the administrative officers are African - see république for the administrative organization of the country

dole N : the African elephant {ábambinga akpé dole pépe, ála eke na yoró tí dole : the Pygmies don't run away from elephants, they have charms for elephants} - see pémbé tí dole, yama tí ngonda

dondo N : the vagina

doucement** [dusumáa, dusumá] Av : 1. softly, gently {mo sára doucement : do it gently}
2. quietly {mo goe ká doucement doucement, mo wara lo na kéké : if you go over there very quietly, you'll find it in the tree}
3. slowly {faé kobéla ní akái doucement : the sickness will get well slowly} - syn. yeke yeke

dó N : an ax, a hatchet - the indigenous tool has a triangular iron blade about six to eight inches long and one and a half inches wide across the cutting edge, set into a club-like handle about eighteen inches long - see zembe for a list of cutting tools

dó V : 1. to kick - used in dó géré
2. to dance - used with either dódó or the name of a particular dance {ála eke dó ganzá : they're dancing the circumcision dance}
3. to shake, to tremble - especially in bé ... dó, téré ... dó
4. to tread, to mix with the feet, as the mud for making sun-dried brick {mo dó potopoto ní : tread, mix the mud} - see tourner

dódó N : a dance {mará tí dódó ndé ndé aake na kótóró tí mbi : there are various dances in my village} {ála dó dódó ní : they danced the dance} - the names of specific dances include : malinga or coller N or nylon, a dance in the European style, with men and women holding each other, ganzá, the circumcision dance, lengé, an initiation dance, and sumári, a dance associated with a male secret society

dodoro* N : a partridge

- dó géré V : 1. to stamp on someone's foot {lo gá lo dó géré tí m'érangé só : he came and stamped on the child's foot}
 2. to stub the toe, to stumble {lo dó géré tí lo : he stubbed his toe, he stumbled}
 3. by extension, to err, to make a mistake

dola N : any kind of moth

lónké ké : see bé ... dó

- dongó, dongó yóngóro N : 1. prob. a generic term for mucilaginous foods, e.g. the seed of an uncultivated tree (Bailechmidia nariki A. Chev.) which is made into a mucilaginous condiment
 2. by extension, slimy, viscous, mucilaginous {aake dongó yóngóro tongana téré tí susu : it's slimy like the body of a fish} {gúsá só seke kugbé, aake dongó dongó : gúsá is a kind of leaf, (cooked) it's very mucilaginous}

doroko V : to butcher an animal, specifically to cut it into pieces {ála doroko yama ní : they butchered the animal} - see fáa

dú V : to give birth - used equally of both parents {wálo tí mo aóú : your wife has given birth} {mbi dú m'érangé : I have born a child} {adú mti na Carnot : (they) bore me in Carnot, i.e. I was born in Carnot} {depuis dúngó tí mbi ... : since my birth ...}

dú N : a hole, a gap {mbi zí dú ní : I dug the hole} - used in dú h́, dú ngú

du V 1 : to tie {adu kamba na zó tí woga : he tied a cord around the neck of the antelope} - see kanga V, tingbi

du V 2 : to be, to exist, to be present, to sit, to dwell {lukundé ake du tongana directeur tí mo : the witchcraft spirit exists as you hear it} {tongana mbi na babá tí mbi í du na téré tí wá, lo che sáre b́́ : when my father and I were sitting by the fire, he used to talk} {fáwé, í du na lí tí kótóró tí í : now, we are at the head of our country} - du is not a simple corula like ake, but is much more static than ke and ngbá, which are specifically time-oriented - see also du 1 and 3

- used in ádu ní - syn. lángó 3

dú hẹ N : nostril

duma N : beer made from honey and water {mọ hinga malin, sí mọ sára
samba, tongana duma : you have the know-how to make beer, like duma}-
see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

dúngó N : birth - see dú V

dú ngú N : a well - wells are used only rarely in a land where most areas
are abundantly watered by streams and rivers that flow all year -
the Kẹrẹ of Bozoum are noted for their well-digging skills

dú sambé N : a deep dish - see sambé

duti V : 1. to sit, to sit up, to sit down {mọ baa lo duti na li tí kẹkẹ,
mọ kpo lo : if you see it sitting in the top of a tree, you shoot it}
{mẹrẹngẹ aluti tongana só ká : the child sits up like that one there}
{lo duti na sẹsẹ : he sat down} {mọ duti, mọ kú lo : sit down and wait
for him}

2. to stay, to remain, to live, to dwell {kóli só ayí tí duti, manière
aake pepe : this man wanted to stay, but there was no way} {mbi duti
na lo : I stayed with him} {aduti na téré tí mọ : he stayed with you}
{tere aduti na pekó tí gángó tí lo lángó ókọ : Tere stayed away after
he (left) only one day} {í duti na ndo só : we stayed here} {téné ní
aduti na bé tí í : the matter remains in our livers, i.e. it has
not been cleared up} - see ngbá, du 2, lángó 3

3. to be, to exist, in a stative rather than a copulative sense {mọ
duti missionary na ála ? : are you their missionary?} - see du 2

4. to be idle {mbi duti, mbi sára kusára pepe : I'm idle, I don't
work} {mọ duti sẹngẹ tongasó, aake nzoní pepe : for you to remain
idle like this is not good} - in general, there is no particular
stigma attached to being out of work or idle

5. to co-exist harmoniously {fadé í duti kóé lége ókọ na yá tí kótóró :
we'll all live together in the village} {ála duti tongana íta : they
live together like brothers}

6. to experience {mamá tí mbi aduti na vundú : my mother is experiencing

bitterness} - see báa finóo

duti ... kpó V : to be quiet, to be tranquil, to be at peace {ála duti fadesó kpó, ála má téné : now all of you be quiet and listen to the matter}

dú tí mé N : earhole - see mé N

duti nzoni V : 1. to prosper, in a passive or negative sense, to be in a state of contentment, peace, and sufficiency {í duti nzoni na lé tí ámbá tí í : we are all right in the presence of our compatriots}
2. this phrase is used as a parting greeting by the person leaving to the person staying {duti nzoni o : so long, good luck!} - the person staying behind says goe nzoni - see bara V, bara N

- E -

école ** [ekóol, lekóol, lekór] N : a school, of whatever kind or level {mbi sára école, mbi goe na école : I go to school} - most frequently refers to elementary schools, which have a six-year curriculum in French leading to the certificat d'études primaires élémentaires - other schools include école tí catéchisme, or religious catechetical schools conducted in vernacular languages by Christian missions, école coranique or Muslim religious schools, and the collège, or secondary school

église** [eglíiz] N : 1. the church, in the sense of an organization or congregation of members {lo eke membre tí église : he is a member of the church}
2. a church building {gá í goe na église : come on, let's go to church} this usage is more prevalent among Catholics, and is used to refer to a large, permanent structure - a more general term is da tí Nzapá, while chapelle frequently refers to a small, subsidiary meeting place or building - less acculturated individuals also refer to such a building as mission

eh bien** [ebyé, ábe, ápe] C : well then, so then {eh bien akporo na ní fadesó ngbii : so then you boil it now for a while} {tongana lo sí ká awe, eh bien áwále só kóé agá así : when he had arrived there, then all those women arrived}

emmerder** [mardée] V : to annoy greatly, to bother, to pester {kobéla tí wále sí aemmerder lo míngi : the illness of a woman bothers her a lot} {méréngé aake emmerder mo na lége tí sára kusára : the child pesters you while you work} - be, mú yángá and nzé, imply an idea of discouragement and defeat consequent on the annoyance which is absent from emmerder

encore** [akóor, ankóro, angóro] Av : 1. again {mbi goe na ngonda encore tí gí yí tí mbi : I went again to the bush to hunt for my things} -

syn. mbéni

2. still, yet {angbá encore yí míngi : there remain still many things}

3. next {encore, ita tí mbi akúí : next, my brother died} - syn. pekó ní

4. in correlation with mbéni : still more {tongana mɔ zía mbéni vin da encore ... : if you put in still more wine ...}

5. in negative sentences : any more {mbi yí tí goe na place tí lo encore pepe : I don't want to go to his place any more} - syn. mbéni

éré N : a name {ála kú tí má éré tí ála : wait to hear your names} {tongana zo só adé éré tí mbi, fadé mbi te kóbe tí lo : if someone can say my name, I'll eat her food} {éré ní lengé : its name is lengé} - used in dé éré

éré V : 1. to call, to summon, to invite {mɔ éré ázo kóé, títene ála gá : call everyone, so that they'll come} {ála éré kóli ní na bureau : they summoned the man to the office}

2. to name, to call (a name) {ála éré lo gí Serekunga : they just called him Serekunga} {í éré tí í, í tene, rongo : we call it, saying, rongo} - syn. dé éré

3. demand, request, call for {babá tí mbi akúí awe, na lége yɛ sí lo éré kóbe na mbi : my father is dead, how can he demand food of me?} - syn. húnda

éré na mabóko V : to beckon with the hand to summon someone - the gesture is usually made with the entire hand, palm down or out, in a quick grasping motion not involving the thumb - pé 1 is a more general term for signalling with the hand or waving

éré ndo V : to call out {tongasó kóli só aére ndo na pekó tí lo gbá : so the man called out after him in vain} - toto and dé kóngó lack the specific element of summoning someone which is present in éré ndo - see also sára téné

éré ngú V : to dam up a stream and bail out the enclosed area with gourds so as to catch fish - the name of a specific stream may be substituted for the word ngú {mɔ goe éré ngú sí mɔ fáa susu : you go and dam up

the stream so as to kill fish} {ála eke éré Kongo sí ála mú susu :
they dammed up the Kongo stream so as to catch fish} - see gi susu,
ngbingbi

éré téné nzoní na ndó V : to bless {aéré téné nzoní na ndó lo : he blessed
him}

et** [e] C : and - used most often in French numeral phrases, where it
is the only connective (see éko), and also in other borrowed phrases - syn.
na, et puis, mais

et puis** [epwí, epíi] C : and then, next - a sequential connective used
to join two sentences - syn. na and mais are both more frequent, while
et in this usage is much less frequent

- e -

- eke [ake, ke] V : 1. to be - the simple copula of equation or attribution
{lo eke zo : he is a person} {lo eke kótá míngi : he is very big} {aake
dé míngi : it's very cold} du implies the idea of existence or presence,
while eke approaches being a purely grammatical word
2. used with other verbs, usually to imply a sort of progressive action
{mbi eke te kóbe : I'm eating} {í eke kpé lóró : we're running} - but
in this usage eke seems often to be completely empty
3. used in the greeting formula : mo eke - see bara N

eke nzoní V : to be good - used in an "impersonal" sense in making
suggestions, with a sentence following {aake nzoní mo sára só : it
is good for you to do this}

fa V : to show, to demonstrate, to explain, to reveal, to teach {amú nginza, afa na lo : he took the money and showed it to him} {mo fa na mbi manière tí kɔa : demonstrate to me the knack of this work} {mbi eke fa na mo nouvelle : I'm telling you the news} {mbi fa yángá tí Sango na mo : I'm teaching you the Sango language} {mbi fa na lo tí goe da : I taught him how to go there} {fadé mbi fa na ála kɔa tí ndao : I'll explain to you the work of a smith} {lo fa na ála éré tí lo : he revealed to them his name} - where the idea of verbal communication is uppermost, tene is syn. - see also sára téné - used in fa lége, fa mbétí, fa na gígí, fa ndá tí, fa téné

fáa [fáa, fá] V : 1. to cut, to cut off, to cut down, to cut up {mo fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you cut greens in the bush} {lo fáa kámba na gó tí mbo : he cut the cord off the neck of the dog} {ála fáa péré : they cut the grass} {mo fáa yá tí oignon : you cut up the onions} {lo fáa yama ní : he cut up the meat} - fáa is opposed to kpo, which means to pierce, puncture, or stab - ɔrɔkɔ means to butcher an animal - súru means to split, to cut lengthwise, as along the grain, while fáa suggests cutting across the grain - dé V 2 means to chop, as a tree - three of the above terms are found in the example which follows {i commencer tí ɔrɔkɔ yama ní, tí fáa, tí súru yá tí lo : we began to butcher the animal, to cut it up, to split the abdomen}

2. to cross, as a river, a road, etc. {i fáa ngú encore : we crossed the river again} {ála fáa lége ní : they crossed the road}

3. to break, as a pot, a rope, etc. {géré tí lo afáa : his leg is broken} {lo fáa kóngbá tí yá tí da kíríkiri : he broke up the furnishings of the house every which way} {ressort tí kutukutu só afáa : this car spring broke} - kúngbi means to break by bending, as a stick

4. to kill {kobéla só aninga tí fáa zo pepe : this sickness does not delay in killing people} {i fáa dole ní : we killed the elephant} {ála

commencer tí tiri, ála fáa téré : they began to fight, they killed each other - or, they cut their bodies, see sense 1) - syn. fáa méné 5. used in nzala ... fáa

fáa ganzá V : to circumcise, to excise {ála fáa ganzá ngú na ngú : they circumcise every year} - the physical operation is performed on both sexes at the time of the rites of passage, as an essential part of these rites - see also ganzá, dódó

fáa méné V : to kill {tongana mo fáa méné tí zo mo wara ngbanga : if you shed human blood you will be judged} - see fáa

fáa ngbanga V : to judge, to adjudicate, to condemn, to sentence {ála fáa ngbanga na lí tí lo awe : they have already judged him} {mbi fáa ngbanga ní na ála pepe : I will not adjudicate the matter for you} - see ngbanga

fáángó ngbanga N : judgment, act of judging - from fáa ngbanga

fáángó yáká N : act of making a garden - from fáa yáká

fáa yáká V : to make a garden or field, to be a farmer {giriri, kóli afáa yáká, mais wále afáa yáká óko pepe, mais fadesó, wále afáa yáká kóé : formerly, men made gardens, but women didn't at all, but now women make gardens also} - see also dé V 2

fáa yá tí V : to cut up into parts or portions - kángbi yá tí means to divide into parts without specifying the manner

fa baba V : to show off - syn. fa téré - see baba, fandara

fadé Av : 1. after the verb : soon, quickly, fast {mo sára réponse na mbi fadé pepe : you didn't send me an answer soon} {ahó fadé na pekó tí midi : he left quickly right after noon} - distinguished from ánde by expressing the idea of speed, and from híó by expressing the idea of a time lapse

2. before the verb : future time marker {fadé mbi gbó mabóko tí lo : I'll take his hand} {fadé mbi kírí ánde : I'll come soon}

3. partially reduplicated : immediately, right away {fafadé awe : it'll be done right away} - see fadesó 2

fadesó [fadisó, faesó, faasó, fasó] Av : 1. now, just now, right now - used either pre-clausally or post-verbally {í má húngó ní fadesó míngi pepe : we don't hear of the fame of it now very much} {fadesó, mbi eke mú na lo ánde congé : I'll give him a vacation soon}

2. partially reduplicated [fafadesó, faefaesó, fafasó] : right away, right now, immediately {mbi eke díko éré tí ála fafadesó : I'll read your names immediately} {mo éré mbi, fafadesó mbi eke sí na mo : call me, immediately I'll come to you} - this expression relates rather to the present than to the immediate future, as does fadé 3

fa ... lége V : to explain, demonstrate how to do something {lo fa na mo lége tí fáa yáká : he demonstrated to you how to make a garden} {ake tí fa lége na mbi : he refused to show me how} - syn. fa 1, though this is more specific

fa mbétí V : to teach reading and writing

famille** [famii] N : 1. a family, either in the nuclear or extended sense

2. a member of one's family - can be used in the plural {mo húnda áfamille tí mo, mo yí tí mú wále : you ask the members of your family (saying), you want to get married} {mbéní famille ade, aaider mbi pepe : no member of my family has yet helped me} - this usage is much more common in Sango than 1 - the kinship system is as follows : among the members of one's generation, íta refers to one's siblings or to the children of parents' siblings - if it is necessary to distinguish between siblings and cousins, one specifies full siblings by the phrases babá óko, mamá óko, and half-siblings by the phrases babá óko, mamá ake ndé - if sex must be distinguished, íta tí kóli is brother, íta tí wále is sister - kótá ita is an older sibling, kótá zo 2 means one's older brother, while ngambe is one's younger sibling - in the preceding generation, babá is one's biological father, as well as his brothers - kótá babá is father's older brother, kété babá is his younger brother - the plural ábabá designates collectively the paternal clan - mamá is one's biological mother, as well as her sisters - kótá mamá is mother's older sister, kété mamá is her younger sister - the plural ámamá designates collectively the maternal clan - aú and kóya are syn. terms

for mother's brothers, but can also be applied as terms of respect to mature men - ómba is father's sister - in the next ascending generation, kaká refers to the grandfather on either side - tará and áta are syn. terms for the grandmother on either side, but áta is also used by the grandmother in speaking or referring to grandchildren - both terms are used to show respect to an older woman - kótará is an ancestor, and the plural is usually used in a collective sense - four affinal relationships are designated by special terms : wále is wife, kóli is husband - kógará is one's father-in-law or other male in-law, especially one's wife's brother - kógará can also refer to the reciprocal relationship, i.e. to one's son-in-law - wógara is used by a man in speaking or referring to his daughter-in-law - mérangé is used in speaking or referring to one's children and grandchildren, whose sex can be specified by tí kóli, tí wále

fa na gígí V : to publish, to reveal publicly - used of making public the news of a betrothal

fa ndá V : to explain thoroughly, to make clear the meaning (mo fa ndá tí téné ní na mbi : explain the point of the matter to me) - this is more specific than fa 1

fandara N : pride, vanity conceit - syn. baba

fángó baba N : showing off - from fa baba

fa téné V : to proclaim, to preach (lo fa téné tí Nzapá : he preached the word of God) - this is more specific than fa 1

fa téré V : to show off - syn. fa baba - see téré 3

fatiguer** [fatigée] V : to tire, to weary (mbi fatiguer, gbikí así gígí na téré tí mbi : I'm weary, sweat has come out on my body) (lo eke fatiguer na pekó tí mo : he is wearing you out (following) after you) - syn. wóko, nzé, though fatiguer suggests a physical weariness more than nzé

fête** [fêtet] N : a holiday, especially a legal or religious celebration (fête tí indépandance : independence day) - matंगा is a more general

term for any celebration

fê [fê, fêe] N : an odor, good or bad {fê tí kóbe só anzere : the odor of this food is pleasing}

finí N : life {lo mú yama ní na finí ní : he caught the animal alive}

finí An : new, fresh {aake tongana mbéní finí yí : it is like a new thing} {andáa mbéní da agbí na finí kótóró : it turned out that some houses burned in the new village} {Nzapá amú mbéní finí mérangé na mbi : God gave me a new child} {finí bongó : new clothes} {finí susu : fresh fish} - opp. ngbére, in speaking of things only - kúrú in speaking of dried fish

finóo N : pain, suffering, especially of a physical nature - used in báa finóo - pási can also refer to the same thing, though the emphasis is on the suffering of burdensome toil - mawa suggests pitiable misery or wretchedness - ponó can suggest an element of persecution, as can sáná - vundú refers primarily to the bitter and resentful reaction to suffering of any sort, as presumed to proceed from some malevolent personal source - ngangó can mean violence, or the suffering occasioned by violence

fó N : a co-worker, a work companion - hence, a friend {fóno na yángá da tí áfó mọ míngi shọ pepe : don't gad about to the houses of your friends too much} - see camarade for syn.

forcer** [forsée] V : 1. to compel, to oblige, to force

2. with attenuated meaning : to exert great moral pressure or persuasion, so as to make it difficult to refuse {zo aforcer mbi, sí mbi kẹ : a man exerted great pressure, but I refused} - see also pousser

foutu** [fúti] V : to ruin, to spoil, to destroy, to lay waste, to waste, to render useless, even momentarily, to be ruined {sése aake na mabóko tí mérangé, afoutu bongó tí zo só : there was dirt on the child's hands, he ruined this man's clothes} {ábákoyá afoutu kóbe ní : the baboons ruined the crop} {zo ahánda mọ tí foutu nginza tí mọ : people entice you to waste your money} {yí só afoutu mé tí mbi, aake camion :

the thing that made my ears useless, i.e. that obstructed my hearing, was a truck} {lé tí mbi agá tí foutu : my eyes are beginning to give out} {ápoint afoutu na sése tí Bangui ndé ndé : various bridges have been ruined in the area of Bangui} - syn. buba - fú suggests spoilage by decomposition resulting in a bad odor

fondo N : a plantain - a large, starchy, non-sweet banana used as a staple by many of the inhabitants of the forest zone of the Central African Republic (Musa paradisiaca sapientum) - the fruit is dried and pounded into a meal which is boiled, fried, or steamed - the sweet banana is bulée

fono V : to walk about, to stroll, to wander, to travel, to gad about {lége tí fono na camion aske ngangó : it's hard to travel by truck} {í fono encore, tí gí dole : we walked about again to hunt for elephants} {kobéla tí lo awe, lo fono nzoni : his illness is over, he gets around all right} {wále ayí kóli tí lo afono pepe : a woman doesn't want her husband to gad about} {ála kpo ámbéni kéké na li tí haricot tí mú kéké ní na ndúzú, sí afono na sése pepe : they plant sticks above the bean plants to keep the stems up so they don't wander or drag over the ground} - tambéla is a more general synonym

franc** [frá, fránka, faránga] N : a franc, the basic unit of money in the Central African Republic {lo vó tí vingt francs : she bought twenty francs' worth} - in counting francs, French numerals are usually used - in counting the páta, or unit of five francs, the Sango numerals are usually used - most prices in retail commerce are multiples of five francs, and the one- and two-franc pieces are rarely used - as a result, money is frequently counted in páta units - vingt francs is the same as páta osió, i.e. twenty francs is the same as four páta's - see nginza, bon N, payer, fúta, mosoro, ngéré, all expressing financial concepts

fú V : to sew {mo vó vurú bongó, mo fú, lá ní só mo kúi ála mú alú na mo : buy some white cloth and sew it, the day you die they will take and bury you in it}

fú V : 1. to smell - used of both good and bad odors, though unmodified it usually refers to a bad odor {lé ní afú fúngó : the seeds have a strong odor} {yambo afú nzoni : perfume smells good}
 2. by extension, to rot so as to smell bad, to decompose {kóá ní afú : the corpse was decomposed} {atúku makongó da ayóro nzoni, ngbangatí ála fú : you dump in the caterpillars and fry them well, so as to prevent their rotting} - syn. foutu 4

fúfú N : lung, lungs

fú kóbe : to break off a piece of food, specifically the staple mush or dough, and give it to someone {asára kóbe, afú tí í áméréngé : they made food, and broke off and gave us children ours}

fúku N : flour, meal, fine powder {fúku tí gozo : manioc flour} {mo píka fúku tí sindi ní : you pound the sesame meal} {mo píka kakó ní, mo sára fúku ní : you pound the pods, you make the meal} - the term applies to European wheat flour, corn meal, etc., as well as to granulated sugar, face powder, etc. - mbíó refers to a special red cosmetic powder made from the bark of a certain tree and used to adorn the body in connection with certain dances - mbúlú is used to refer to gunpowder, and also to powdered ash used for medicinal purposes - mbutu is sand - pupu sése is dust

fúlu N : froth, foam, especially that coming from the mouth {mbi báa fúlu así gígí na yángá tí lo : I saw froth coming out of his mouth}

fúngó N : smell, odor, process of producing an odor - from fú

fúru V : to mix or work in water with the hands so as to produce a homogeneous mass or liquid - for syn. see tourner - mé kóbe means to mix ingredients with an implement

fúta V : to pay, as wages, price, pay for {lo fúta mbi óko pepe : he didn't pay me at all} {fadé mbi fúta na lo : I'll pay him} {aéke kusára tí fútángó na nze : it's work to be paid by the month} {í mú kóngbá na France, France afúta ní : we give goods to France, France pays for them} - syn. payer - see also vo, ká, nginza, ngéré

fúta N : 1. wages, salary, pay - ngéré means price or value

2. by extension : recompense, retribution, consequences, results affecting the doer of something {tenetí sioni tí mɔ laá, sí fúta ní agá na mɔ : it's because of your wickedness that the retribution is coming to you}

fúta kulá V : to avenge, to retaliate - see kulá

fúti V : see foutu

- gá V : 1. to come {ála gá na tére tí mbi : come alongside me, on my side} {gá na ndo só : come here} {ála gá tí leke kótóró tí í : they have come to improve our country} - opp. goe 1 - used in gá na, gá na pekó
2. to arrive - often with awe following {tongana mo gá awe, mo sukúla ngú : when you have arrived, you wash up} - syn. sí V - opp. goe 3, londé
3. to be about to do something {tongana mo gá tí tóngó ní ... : when you are about to cook it ...} {lé tí mbi agá tí foutu : my eyes are about to go bad} {mamá tí mbi agá tí goe : my mother was about to go} - syn. gá ndurú
4. to begin to do something {yá tí mbi agá, adiminuer : my abdomen began to go down, i.e. after being swollen} - opp. zía tí
5. followed by a noun adjunctive or a noun designating a kind of person : to become {gá ngangó : become strong} {gá sioní : become bad} {gá kótá : become big, grow up} {gá kóli : become a man} {gá tongana kóli : become as a man} - cf. gá nzoní, gá ngú
6. with certain nouns denoting qualities or states, either gá, wara, or mú can be used {agá dé, awara dé, amú dé : it became cold} {agá wá, awara wá, amú wá : it became hot} - see gá dé, gá wá, mú dé, mú wá, wara dé, wara wá
7. there are three structural degrees of closeness in the relationship of gá to a following verb having the same subject : (a) the subject is repeated with each verb - (b) only the subject marker a- appears with the second verb - (c) the two verbs are immediately joined - these grammatical degrees, strongly modified by the semantic relationship of gá and the other verb, determine whether the two verbs denote distinct actions, closely-related actions, a single complex action, or even a single simple action {lo gá, lo báa mbi : he came and saw me} {mbi gá mbi tígbi na lo : I came and joined him} {í gá

í píkà lo : we up and hit him} {mamá agá amú mbi : mother came and
took me} {áwále só kóé agá así : those women came-arrived} {lo na zo
vókó agá bǒngbi ókó : he and the black man joined together} - see
also goe 5

gá dé V : to become cold - syn. mú dé, wara dé, dé V 1

gagner** [ganyée, gayée] V : to win, to conquer, to vanquish, to beat,
to defeat {lo gáner, lo ókó, lo wara réponse ní : he won, he alone,
he found the answer} {ála kpé lóró, sí lo gáner : they ran, and
he won} {lo eke gáner áíta tí lo : he defeated his brothers} - syn.
hó V 2

galá N : 1. a market, a market-place {mbi goe tí gí kóbe na galá : I'm
going to look for food at the market} - syn. marché
2. a market town, a commercial center {lo goe na galá na Bangui :
he went to the commercial center in Bangui, i.e. downtown} {Bossangoa
aake kótá galá : Bossangoa is a big commercial town} {Sango tí galá :
urban standard Sango}

gá na V : 1. with nouns denoting objects and sometimes persons : to bring
{gá na kóngbá ní : bring the merchandise} {lo gá na mbi na docteur :
he brought me to the doctor} - opp. goe na 1 - see also kírí na
2. with nouns denoting persons : to accompany {agá na mbéni camarade
tí lo : he accompanied one of his friends} - it is not always easy
to distinguish these two senses - the nature of the noun and the
rest of the context will distinguish this verb from gá 1 followed
by a locative complement introduced by na - see also goe na 2 - see
also kírí na

gana V : to stone someone or something, to pelt with stones {agana zo na
témé : they pelted a man with stones} - bólo implies the throwing of
a single accurately-aimed stone

gá na pekó V : to follow {mbi eke gá na pekó tí mǒ : I'm following you} -
gá na pekó emphasized the one being followed as the goal, while goe
na pekó emphasizes the point of departure - mú pekó suggests a close

relationship between leader and follower - tomba suggests the pursuit of someone or something that is fleeing, or something that has no knowledge of being followed, so as to catch up

gándá N : a wasp

gá ndurú V : 1. to approach, to come near {mó gá ndurú na ndo tí pont : you approach the place of the bridge}

2. to be about to do something {lo gá ndurú tí kúí : he was about to die} - syn. gá 3

gángará [gángará, kángalá] N : the framework of a thatched roof, or the various components of it {mbi fáa gángará, mbi kánga na ndó tí kéké tí da : I cut (the parts of the roof) and tied them on top of the house poles} {ála kánga sósongo na da, sí ála zía péré na ndó ní, ála úé éré ní gángará : they fasten a kind of reed on the house, before they put on the grass, and they call (the structure) gángará} - see li tí da

gángó N : 1. arrival, coming of, act of coming - from gá
2. used to reinforce gá {mbi gá gángó : I really came}

ganzá N : circumcision, excision - also, the entire set of customs surrounding the rites of passage for both sexes, including special camps, a special dance, the physical operation, instruction in adult roles, and many other practices - this complex of ceremonies constitutes one of the most durable and functional current survivals of traditional ways {ála eke dó ganzá : they dance the circumcision dance} - see also fáa ganzá, dódó

gá nzoní V : 1. to recover from illness {docteur azía yoró na téré tí lo, sí agá nzoní : the doctor put medicine on his body, so that he recovered} - syn. ga va, guérir, kobéla ... kái

2. of a community or institution : to prosper, in a dynamic sense {kótóró tí í agá nzoní awe : our village is prospering now} -

dutí nzoní 1 is more passive

3. see bé ... gá nzoní

gara V : to flow - said of blood flowing in the veins {mamá tí mérengé ní ayọ́ tongasó, sí méné agara lo míngi, téré tí lo awara ngangó, sí ngú tí mē agá míngi : the infant's mother drinks this, so that much blood flows in her (veins), her body becomes strong, and much milk comes} - sá means to pour, soa to flow as a river, and yuru to leak or seep

garde** [gárde] N : 1. the militia
2. a militiaman

gá sǒngó V : to make peace, to reconcile, to harmonize {ála gá sǒngó : they made peace} {téné tí ála agá sǒngó : their speech was harmonized} - see siriri, sǒngó, sára sǒngó

gati* N : the left hand - the left hand must not be used in giving or receiving gifts or in eating, but left-handed people manipulate tools in a left-handed manner without stigma - syh. mabóko tí wále - see also mabóko, koti

gá wé V : to become hot - see mú wá, wara wá

gbá N : a bunch, a bundle {gbá tí kókora : a bundle of arrows} {gbá tí pére : a bundle of grass (for roofing)} {gbá tí yoró tí dimanche óko : a week's supply of medicine}

gbá Av : in vain, futilely, without result {í bi gbánda gbá : we cast the nets in vain} {mbi gí kóga gbá : I've looked for work to no avail} {mbi penser téné ní gbá : I've thought over the matter without result}

gba V : to copulate, to have sexual relations - used only of humans, while for animals uru or monter is used {kóli agba wále : the man had intercourse with the woman} {wále agba kóli : the woman had intercourse with the man} - more often, the euphemism lángó na is used

gbágbá N : a hedge, a fence or other protective enclosure - hedges are often of sisal or other close-set or dense shrubbery - a common type of fence is made of coarse grass mats tied to upright poles {ála kánga téré tí kéké só na gbágbá : they enclosed this tree with a fence} - see bála

gbakó N : a gallery forest along a stream {dole ali na yá tí gbakó : the elephant entered into the gallery forest} mbi goe na gbakó tí sùru kéké tí da : I'm going into the gallery forest to cut lumber for a house} - these forests are the only places, in the savanna country, where trees are to be found large enough for use as lumber - opp. péré - see also lando, ngonda

gbándá Av : easily, naturally, without difficulty or inconvenience - used pre-clausally {gbándá fadé mbi wara mo : I'll find you easily} {tongasó gbándá France alíngbi títene, amú na í nginza mbéni pepe : so France can quite naturally no longer give us money} - this is much more specific than séngé, which can refer to lack or absence of almost anything

gbánda N : any large net {ála gbóto gbánda : they drew in the nets} {gbánda asúru : the net split} {akánga gbánda tí fáa yama : they fasten up nets to kill animals} - the peoples along the few large rivers use nets to fish, while in most of the country, which is savanna, nets are used for hunting - they are set up across an opening, and game is driven into them with fire or by beaters, and there killed with arrows or spears - see gí susu, gí yama

gba ngú V : to play a game consisting of standing hip or waist deep in water and rhythmically beating or drumming on the surface of the water with the open palm of the hands

gbánza [gbánza, gbanza] N : corn, maize - corn is an important auxiliary crop throughout the Central African Republic, but nowhere does it assume the importance as a staple of mil or bóndó - syn. nzó - see also lósó

gbánzi V : to prevent, to hinder, to withhold {kobéla agbánzi mbi, sí mbi gá pepe : sickness prevented me, so that I did not come} {mbi tara tí gá, mais lo gbánzi mbi : I tried to come, but he hindered me} {yí tí lo, alíngbi tí gbánzi na lo óko pepe : his things cannot be withheld from him at all} - syn. to prevent, kánga lége

gbara, gbara búba N : a frying pan - specifically, one made of the metal

from a gasoline drum, beaten into shape (gbara ake mbéni mará tí kopo laá ake nzoní na mabóko : the gbara is a kind of container made well with a handle) (gbara ake yí só ála yóro na kárákó só : the gbara is that thing in which they roast peanuts)

gbé N : the underpart of anything, the lower part (mbéni da na mbáge tí gbé ní ká ... : a certain house over on the lower side there ...) (mérengé ake na gbé tí babá : a child is under its father) (mbi dutí na gbé tí kéké : I sat under a tree) (ngú aole na gbé tí susu : water dried up from under the fish) na gbé tí means under, underneath, below

gbé dé N : shade (lo dutí na gbé dé tí kéké : he sat in the shade of a tree)

gbé lé N : the presence of someone, especially someone important (mbi gá na gbé lé mo : I come into your presence) (lo sára na gbé ála kóé : he did it in the presence of you all) - syn. devant can be used of inanimate objects also - see also lé N 1. 3

gbé ngú N : used with introductory na : in the rainy season - see ngú 5

gbé tí mabóko N : armpit - see mabóko

gbí V : to ignite, to catch fire, to burn (da agbí da ukú : five houses burned there) (kóá tí ála kóé kóé agbí : all their fuzz burns off) - zó adds an element of purpose of volition which is absent from gbí (wá agbí yí, zo azó yí : fire burns things, people burn things)

gbíá N : a king, an important ruler - specifically applied in former times to the ruler of the Zande, who were the only people in the area with a strongly centralized indigenous government - makunzi is the general term for chiefs of lesser rank, and kapita is a village headman

gbikí N : sweat, perspiration (gbikí así gígí na tére tí mbi : sweat appeared on my body)

gbíma ndoko N : a foot race, a competition - see kpé lóró

gbó V : 1. to take hold of, to grip, to grasp, to grab, to seize, to catch

{lo goe gbó kpóka tí yáká : she went and seized the garden hoe}
 {sentinelle agbó mbi da lá kóé : the watchman caught me there all the time}
 {ála gbó susu míngi : they caught many fish} {kíi ní agbó gó tí mọ : the prickles catch in your throat} - tomba means to pursue so as to catch, kamáta and mú in similar contexts mean simply to take

2. to be caught by a snare {yáma tí sése agbó kámba na ndúzú pepe : a terrestrial animal does not get caught in a snare in the air}

3. to carry in the hand {lo eke gbó kóngbá na ázo : he carries loads for people} - yí suggests carrying something on the shoulder or head

4. in figurative usage : to seize {mbito agbó lo : fear seized him}
 {finóo agbó lo : suffering seized him} {kóá atomba zo, sí agbó : death pursues people, and seizes them} {mawa agbó mérengé só : pity seized this youth}
 {Sango agbó yángá tí mbi mbírimbíré pepe : Sango has not seized my mouth properly, i.e. I don't speak it well}

5. to thicken, to set, to harden, to jell, to coagulate - syn. coller V

gbogbo N : 1. a mat, especially a sleeping mat about 30 x 60 inches made of a soft split reed {ála zía yoró na ndúzú na lí tí gbogbo tí ála : they put charms above the head of their sleeping mat}

2. by extension, a bed - syn. tangé - see bambou 2

gbó kéké V : said of a bird : to alight on a branch

gbó ... na ndúzú V : to raise up, to hold up - syn. mú ... na ndúzú

gbó ndá V : to imitate, to follow - see mú peko

gbó téré V : 1. to exercise self-control {mérengé tí mbi, mọ gbó téré tí mọ ngangó : my child, control yourself strongly}

2. to stick together, to cleave together {ála gbó téré : they cleaved together}

gbóto V : to pull up, to pull out, to pull along, to drag {mọ gbóto téré tí coton ní : you pull beside the cotton, i.e. you thin out the sprouts} {ála gbóto gbánda ní : they dragged in the net} {lo gbóto mérengé tí lo na yá tí géré tí lo : he dragged the child between his legs} - kóso means only to drag along

gbɔʔ gbɔʔ gbɔʔ-gengi* mé

58

gbɔʔ gbɔʔ gbɔʔ Av : an ideophone indicative of the sound of boiling mush
{gɔzɔ só akpɔrɔ gbɔʔ gbɔʔ gbɔʔ : the manioc (mush) was boiling gbɔʔ
gbɔʔ gbɔʔ}

gbugburu V : 1. to shake up {tongana mɔ píka gɔzɔ aye, mɔ eke gbugburu
yengere tí gɔzɔ na lo : when you have finished pounding the manioc,
you and she shake the manioc sieve} - yengere V is the specific
verb to sift

2. to stir about so as to create disorder {mɔ gbugburu yá ní : you
stir it up into a mess}

gbutu N : an edible wild leaf (Amarantus caudatus L.) - for a list of
edible leaves, see kugbé

ge Av : here, in or to this place {mbi sára ngú óse ge : I've spent
two years here} {mbi gá ge : I came here} {ála zía lo ge na hôpital :
they put her here in the hospital} - syn. na ndo só - opp. ká

gendarme** [zadám, zádréam] N : a military policeman, a member of the
national security police {gendarme agá na lége tí wa nzi : the
policeman comes on account of thieves}

gèner** [zenée] V : to bother {école agèner zo ngbangatí yángá tí Gbaya :
school bothers people because it is in the Gbaya language (which has
low prestige)} - see also be V 1, mú yángá

genou** [azenúu] N : knee of a person - syn. kuní is much less common

gérant** [zeráa, zeráa] N : a person employed as the manager of a business
owned by someone else - especially the manager of a small local branch
of a chain of stores

genc N : a visitor, especially one from a distant or foreign place, a
stranger or foreigner visiting or living temporarily away from home
{tongana ágene aake gá na da tí mɔ, alíngbi mɔ bata áméréngé tí mɔ :
when visitors come to your house, you must watch your children} - see
goe gene

gengi* mé V : to pay attention, to listen, to give heed {gengi mé tí mɔ
tí má : pay attention to hear} - see má 2

- géré N : 1. a leg, a foot, a paw {afáa géré tí lo : he broke his leg} {ála yú póró tí ála na géré tí ála : you should wear your shoes on your feet} {ála tí na géré tí lo : they fell at his feet} - kété géré is a toe, kótá géré a thigh
2. the leg of a piece of furniture
3. by extension : a wheel or a tire {géré tí vélo : the wheel of the bicycle}
4. by extension : a shoot for planting {goe lú géré tí café : go plant the coffee shoot} - this may be a result of the influence of French un pied de café

géré tí da N : the foundation of a house - see koto N

gí Au : only, just, merely {ayí gí ngú : it wants just water} {lo eke gí séngé zc : he is just an ordinary person} {mɔ́ píkagí na yá tí kpu : you pound it just in the mortar} {mɔ́ dutí gí tongasó : you sit there just like that} {babá afáa gí yáká : father just makes gardens} - (Grammar p. 62-63)

gí V : to hunt for, to look for, to search, to seek {mbi gá tí gí place tí lángó : I've come to look for a place to sleep} {mbi gí kóbe na galá : I'm looking for food in the market} {mbi gí gbá : I hunted in vain} - tomba suggests pursuing in order to catch - wara is to find - see also báa 3 - used in gí bé, gí lége, gí ngolo, gí susu, gí téné, gí yama, gí yángó

gí bé V : to search one's heart, to ponder, to meditate, to consider, to wonder about {só mbi wara mbétí pepe só, mbi bí bé tí mbi da míngi : because I did not receive a letter, I wondered a great deal about it} - see penser

gígí N : the outside {lo goe na gígí na pekó tí da : he went outside behind the house} - most often found in the expression sí gígí - na gígí is used "adverbially" to modify a verb, as above

gí lége V : to look for a way, to try, to attempt {fadé mɔ́ gí lége tí sí na kótóró : you will try to get to the village} {ámbení agí lége tí

buba í : some try to make fools of us} - see also tara, yí, lége 2

gindí N : a bow - usually about four feet long, with a string made of a very flexible vine stripped and smoothed to size, or of rawhide, or of sisal fiber - the draw is quite short and weak, prohibiting using the bow at any distance - used most often to shoot small animals, as rats and rabbits, as they scurry past in fleeing hunting fires - boys often do this part of the hunting - kakora is the arrow - see zembe for a list of weapons

gíngó N : 1. act of searching, search - from gí V

2. used to reinforce gí {mbi gí gíngó : I am searching intensively}

gí ngolo N : provocation, taunt {mbi yí tí mbi gí ngolo pepe : as for me, I don't like provocation}

gíó bé V : to sigh, gasp, or exhale audibly, especially in expiring

{Jésus agíó bé tí lo na kóá : Jesus sighed out unto death} - see hú mbóo

giriri Av : formerly, in the past, a long time ago {giriri ábabá tí í asára ngaragé : formerly, our fathers used to form the ngaragé society} {í sára tongasó giriri : we used to do it like that formerly} {lo commencer na ní kózo ní giriri : he began it first a long time ago} {áwále tí giriri : the women of the old days} - giriri denotes a more remote past than ándo, and lacks the ordinal element of kózo ní

girísa [grísa, glísa] V : 1. to lose, to mislay, to forget {mbi girísa nzoní yí só ála sára na mbi, óko pé : I will never forget the good things they did for me} {ála girísa lége tí wé : they lost the technique of iron} {lo girísa wále tí lo : he lost his wife} {mbi girísa kété franc kóé : I've lost all my small amount of money}

2. to be lost, mislaid, or forgotten {páta bale osió agirísa : two hundred francs was lost} {téné ní agirísa mbi : the matter has lost me, i.e. I've forgotten it} - this usage is more prevalent than 1 - that is, one more often says : It lost me, than : I lost it

gí susu V : to fish, to go fishing - this is not a major occupation or

source of food except along the Oubangui, Sangha, and Chari Rivers, where fishing is done with dugout canoes (ngó) and nets (gbánda) or hooks (yángó) - also used are weirs (ngólo), and in some cases a sort of ramp going up the shore, up which the water brings the fish which are caught when the water recedes - smaller streams are dammed (ngbingbi, éré ngú) and when the water recedes the fish are caught in scoops or baskets - see also kúru

gí téné V : to pick a quarrel, to provoke someone {mbi yí gíngó téné pepe : I don't like picking a quarrel} - see also gí ngolo - gí yángá suggests simple teasing or taunting, while gí téné implies actively and gratuitously seeking for a quarrel

gí yama V : to hunt, to go hunting {lo goe tí gí yama na ngonda : he went hunting in the bush} - the traditional hunting party involved large parties of men and boys going out during the height of the dry season with nets, spears, and bows and arrows - they set up the nets in a long line, then burned the grass in a semi-circle to drive game into the net - as animals fled, they were trapped and killed - this method is no longer productive, and is practised for social rather than economic reasons - hunting with a shotgun and balls, or with an old muzzle-loader, is coming into style, though the price of a gun is prohibitive for most individuals and game is more and more scarce

gí yángá V : to tease, to taunt, to provoke {ála gí yángá tí mbi : they teased me} - see also gí téné

góá ... te V : to begin to have labor pains {góá ate lo : she has begun to have labor pains}

goe V : 1. to go {í mú kpóka tí goe na yáká : we took hoes to go to the garden} {lo goe tí sára téné ní : he went to talk about it} - opp.

gá 1

2. to proceed, to continue going {í goe jusqu'à, mbunzú awara dole : we went on for a while, and the White Men found an elephant} - see also fono, tambéla

3. to leave, to depart {í na lo í goe : he and I left} {tongana ála goe awe ... : when they had left ...} - opp. gá 2

4. sometimes used in conjunction with other related verbs preceding goe {ála lóndó agoe : they arose and left, i.e. they left} - see lórdó, mú lége

5. there are three structural degrees of closeness between goe and a following verb having the same subject : (a) the subject is repeated with each verb - (b) only the subject marker a- appears with the second verb - (c) the two verbs are immediately joined - these grammatical degrees, strongly modified by the semantic relationship of goe and the other verb, determine whether the two verbs denote distinct actions, closely-related actions, a single complex action, or even a single simple action {mó goe mó vó makongó : go buy caterpillars} {ázo agoe, ála fáa yama : the people went, and killed an animal} {ála goe atiri ká ngbii : they went and fought there a while} {agoe dó géré tí lo : she up and stamped on her foot} {lo goe báa mbakóro wále só : she went and saw this old woman} {kóli agoe sí na kótóró : the man went arriving to the village} - see also gá 7

goe berá na li tí V : to attack, to make war against {ála goe berá na li tí zo só akamáta wále ní awe : they went and attacked the man who had taken the woman} - syn. níka berá, tiri, tí na ndó

goe gene V : to go visiting, especially to a foreign place - see goe kótóró

goe kótóró V : to go home - see goe gene

goe na V : 1. to take with, to take along {mamá agoe na mbi na docteur : mother took me to the doctor} {lo goe na nginza na wále tí lo : he took some money to his wife} - opp. gá na 1 - see also kin na

2. to accompany, to go with {mbi yí tí goe na mó na Bangui : I want to go with you to Bangui} - the context will distinguish this usage from those cases where goe na is followed by a locative or directional complement - see also gá na 2, kiri na

goe na da tí kóli V : said of a girl or woman : to get married {mbi de mbi goe na da tí kóli pepe : I haven't yet got married} - going to a

man's house signifies that all prerequisites to the marriage, including the bride price, have been cared for to the satisfaction of the bride's family - the marriage is thus made official - see mariage

goe (na) ngonda V : a euphemism for sára purú, to defecate, or sára ino, to urinate

goe na pekó V : to follow {lo goe na pekó tí Jésus : he followed Jesus} - the context will distinguish this expression from cases where na pekó is used in a locative sense - this expression, in opp. to gá na pekó, emphasizes the point of departure rather than the person followed, while mú pekó suggests a closer relationship between leader and follower - tomba implies a pursuit

góéngé N : 1. the act of going, departure - from goe
2. used to reinforce goe {mbi goe góé ngó : I definitely departed}

goe nzoní V : go well, good luck - this is the parting salutation of the person who stays to the person who leaves - the response is dutí nzoní - see bara N

goigói [goygóy, goygóy, gwégwé] N : idleness, laziness, inertia {mo sára goigói na kusára tí mo pepe : don't be lazy in your work} {zo tí goigói : an idle, lazy person} - mbáná suggests an element of willful purpose sometimes tinged with malice, which is absent from goigói

góna N : a certain poison used in trial by ordeal - the person suffering no ill effects from the swallowed poison is judged to be innocent

gondá N : the foot or base of a plant or tree, the stubble {mo mú ágondá tí péré só mo fáa : take the stubble of the grass and chop it up}

gonda V : to praise {aéke nzoní aussi sí wále agonda ándeko tí lo na kóli tí lo ? : is it right also for a woman to praise her lovers to her husband ?} - while gonda is used of praising human beings, sambéla and sepála are used of praising deity and of worshipping

gouvernement** [guvernámáa] N : 1. the government - the assemblée elects

the président, who appoints and directs the ministers and is assisted by the civil service

2. the president, as the head and personification of the government {tongana gouvernement agá abáa, anzere na lé tí lo, tongana lo yí, lo aider mo : when the president comes and sees (what you are doing), if it pleases him, if he wants, he can help you}

gó N : 1. neck, throat {lo fáa kámba na gó tó mbo : he cut the cord from the neck of the dog} {kíi ní agbó gó tí mo : the prickles catch in your throat}

2. voice {í má gó tí mo nzoní : we heard your voice well} {só gó tí ámakáko : that is the voice of the monkeys}

3. tune, melody {gó ní agoe tongasó : the tune goes like this}

gógóá N : a Cape buffalo - syn. ngbáá

gogoro N : a granary in which mil, maize, peanuts, sesame, etc. are stored - the prevalent model consists of a cylindrical hut with walls of coarse grass mat, a conical thatched roof, raised several feet from the ground on piles

goro N : the cola nut - the habit of cola nut chewing is especially prevalent among West African traders, but some men in larger towns have also adopted it

gozo N : manioc, the staple root crop which forms the basis of the diet of most of the population of the Central African Republic {áwále agoe tí sára gozo tí ála na yá tí ngú : the women go to prepare their manioc in the water} {tongana mo pika gozo awe, mo yengere na yengere tí gozo : when you have pounded the manioc, you sift it with the manioc sieve} {mo tourner gozo na kéké tí gozo : you stir the manioc (mush) with the manioc stick} - there are several varieties of manioc - the common kind is dug up as it is needed, peeled, cut into chunks, leached in water for two or three days to remove the prussic acid, dried, pounded on a large flat rock (lakéré) with a wooden mallet (kóngo), sifted with a special sieve (V. and N. both yengere) - the resulting coarse, starchy meal is stirred into boiling water with a

special stick (kéke tí gəzo) until a ball of stiff, sticky mush or dough is formed (the primary reference of kóbe is to this), which is broken off from the mass with the right hand, dipped into a sauce (kása) and carried to the mouth - other varieties, e.g. coup-de-poing 2, are simply boiled and eaten

guérir** [gerii] V : to recover from illness - ca va, gá nzoní 1, and kobéla ... kái are more common syn.

gugú N : mushroom - mushrooms are dried and fried, or salted and fried, and used as an ingredient in the making of many sauces - see kása

gugúrú N : small fish, which are dried and pounded into fish meal which is one ingredient in the making of many sauces {apika gugúrú, ayengere fúku ní, azia ngú da sí aneka, ató, azia yingó da, sí ate : you pound the fish, sift the meal, put in water and crush it together, boil it, add salt, and so eat it} - see kása

gúi N : an edible, large tuber - a type of large white-fleshed yam which is eaten boiled

gúrú N : smoke, steam, vapor - gúrú tí wá refers specifically to smoke

gúsá N : an edible leaf (Corchorus gen. ?) - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

- H -

há V 1 : to plait, to weave {ahá kámba tí coton : he plaited a cotton cord} - see pé kámba, which refers more specifically to making rope

há V 2 : to open - used in há zembé, ndo ahá

há [há, há] V : to ponder, to meditate, to cogitate {lo há gbá : he pondered in vain} - syn. penser, b'anda

háa V : to measure {aháa yáká tí lo, alingbi mètre pepe : he measured his field, it did not measure up to the required size}

hánda V : to attract and hold the attention, in either a pleasant or an unpleasant sense, to fascinate by holding out a hidden or deceptive prospect - hence, to tease, to kid, to amuse (as a baby), to tempt, to entice, to bluff {mo hánda mbi pepe, mo sára na mbi taá téné : don't tease me, tell me the truth} {mo lóndó ma, mbi hánda mo séngé : get up, I was just kidding you} {zo ahánda mo séngé tí foutu nginza tí mo : people are just enticing you to waste your money} {mbéni ita aake hánda lc : some sister is tempting him} {ázo só aake sára téné tí búbá, ála só atene ála eke hánda mbi sí mbi koé mbito : the people are talking nonsense, those who say they will bluff me into being afraid} - Protestants use the expression wa hánda to refer to a tempter, especially the devil

hánda N : temptation, deceptive enticement {nzala ahánda zo sí lo tí na hánda : desire tempts a person so that he falls into temptation}

hára V : to creep, to crawl, to crawl in pursuit of {ngbo ahára na sése : the snake crawls on the ground} {tongana awara yama, ahára lo ngbii, allez, apíka lo : when he finds an animal, he crawls in pursuit of it and suddenly hits it}

háráge N : a potent liquor made from manioc or mil crushed, steeped, fermented, and distilled - syn. ngbágo - see also samba

há zembe V : to pull a knife out of its sheath

hé [hé, ʔé, é] V : 1. to laugh at, to make fun of, to mock, to ridicule

{ála hé pémbé tí mbi pepe o : hey, don't laugh at my teeth!} {áfamille só ahé mbi, mbi yí ála pepe : those members of the family who mocked me, I don't like them} - see also hé ngiá

2. to sing {mbi hé tongasó : I sing (it) like this} - syn. hé bíá

hé bíá V : to sing {ála hé bíá, asára ngiá : they sang and had fun} - syn. hé 2

hé ngiá V : to laugh {ála bóngbi tí hé ngiá na í, ála sára ngiá na í : they gathered to laugh with us, to have fun with us} - see hé 1

heure** [léér, éér] N : 1. with French numerals : the specific time o'clock {ála sí na sept heures [setéér] : they arrived at seven o'clock} - see 5 below

2. a unit of time, in the European sense {í wara heure [léér] míngi míngi pepe : we didn't get many hours}

3. time in a punctiliar or aoristic sense : the moment when, the season when {heure [léér] tí école así : the time for school has arrived} {heure [léér] tí nzala : the time of famine} {heure [léér] tí yáká : the gardening season} {heure [léér] tí túku ngú da : the moment to pour in water} {heure [léér] tí deux heures : the time to go back to work} {heure [léér] tí midi : noon-time}

4. time in a durative sense : time during which {na heure [léér] só mbi eke na gouvernement ... : during my administration ...} {na heure [léér] só ngú apíka míngi, zía lo sukúla na ngú tí dé pepe : while it is raining a lot, i.e. in the middle of the rainy season, don't let him wash in cold water}

5. the divisions and times of the day are as follows :

ndá ade is before dawn

ndo ahá is sunrise

ndá péréré is the early morning, after dawn

midi, kótá lá refer to mid-day, noon

deux heures is early afternoon, especially the time to go back to work after the noon break, regardless of the time o'clock

lá kúí is the later afternoon and sunset

bí is the evening and night

bíngo is specifically the time of darkness

lṣ bí, midi tí bí is the middle of the night, midnight

hínga [hínga, 'ínga, ínga] V : to know, to realize, to understand, to be aware, to know how {yí só kóé, fadé mbi hínga : all those things, I'll know} {í hínga ake yí tí mbito : we know it is a fearful thing} {í hínga, ake kótá kótóró : we know it is a large village} {mbi yí tí hínga, na lége yé ála sára yí só : I want to know how they did this thing} {mbi hínga tí leke : I know how to fix it} {mbi hínga tí sárángó ní : I know how to do it} {mbi hínga mbéní zo ká : I know someone over there} {lo hínga kṣa ní : he knows the work} {lo hínga manière tí kpíkara : he knew the cunning of kpíkara} - see the following entries for use in phrases - see also penser

hínga bé tí V : to know another profoundly, to discern another's thoughts and motives, to understand another thoroughly {ake nzoní mṣ hínga bé tí lo sí, ngbangatí ázo tí wátáká ake míngi : it is well for you to know him thoroughly, because there are many liars about} - hínga lé tí is a much more superficial acquaintance

hínga ... kóé V : to know thoroughly, to understand, to be familiar with, to be intimately aware of {ála hínga kóé, kóbéla só ake sioní míngi : you know perfectly that this illness is very bad} {mbi de mérengé, mbi hínga kóé pepe : I was still a child, I did not really understand} {mbi hínga só kóé : I know this thoroughly} - see also penser

hínga lé tí V : to recognize another from the outward appearance, to be casually acquainted with another - hínga bé tí is a much more profound knowledge

hínga lége V : to know how {mbi hínga lége ní : I know how} {mbi hínga lége tí sára ta pepe : I don't know how to make pots}

hínga li tí V : to know in one's mind, to understand {mbéní téné ake só mbi hínga li tí mbi da pepe : there is a matter which I don't understand} - see hínga, penser

hínga mbétí V : to know how to read

hínga pepe [hínga ape] C : perhaps, possibly, who knows whether {o íta hínga pepe mo sára koa ní mbírimbíri pepe : oh sister, perhaps you didn't do the work right} {lo tene, hínga pepe, fadé kótóró tí í akono : he said, who knows whether our village will get big} - syn. peut-être

hínga ... tene V : to be sure, to be confident, to consider {lo hínga atene ní eke wále só aake sára koa tí da tí lo nzoní : she felt sure that she was a woman who did her housework well} - this is much more confident than báa ... tene

hínga téré V : to be mutually acquainted, to know one another {ázo tí lukundú ahínga téré nzoní : the witches know one another well} - see also hínga bé tí, hínga lé tí

hío Av : quickly, fast, in a hurry {mbi wara réponse hío pepe : I didn't get an answer quickly} - distinguished from fadé in lacking the element of a time lapse

histoire** [istwáar] N : a story, a tale, an anecdote {téné só mbi eke téné, aake téné tí histoire tí babá na mamá tí mbi tí giriri : the matter which I am telling is a story of my father and mother long ago} - téné is the most general term for any sample of language, while isoró is restricted to speech and tere to fables - see sára téné

hónde V : to hide, to conceal {mbi língbi tí hónde yí tí Afrique na mo pepe : I cannot conceal from you matters relative to Africa} {lo hónde téré tí lo : he hid himself}

hôpital** [opitáal, lopitáal] N : a hospital

họ [họq, họ] N : the nose, specifically that part of the human or animal anatomy which serves for breathing - see dú họ

họ [hó] V : 1. to pass, to pass by, to pass on, to proceed {tongana dole ayí tí họ, likongó akpo lo : when the elephant wanted to pass on, the spear stabbed him} {áwále míngi aake họ : many women were passing

by) {ála sára kóbe, ála họ na pskó tí pendere kóli só : they made food and passed on after this young man, i.e. followed him} {woga afáa yá tí yáká ahọ tí lo : as for him, the antelope crossed the garden and passed on} {lége só ahọ tí goe na Bangui : this road passed on to go to Bangui} {mọ họ Paoua, aske vingt kilomètre tí goe na kótóró tí mbi : you pass Paoua, it's twenty kilometers to go to my village} {tongana ngú ahọ míngi ... : when many years had passed ...}

2. to surpass, to excell, to defeat, to overcome, to overwhelm {tí báa kótá yí na ndó sése só ahọ kóbe tí yẹ : to see the great things on earth surpasses any kind of food} {lo eke kótá kótóró míngi, ahọ tanga tí ámbá tí lo kóé : it is a great country, it surpasses all its sister-countries} {lo họ lo na berá : he defeated him in war} {ngangó tí yoró ní agoe ahọ ngangó tí mọ : the strength of the medicine went and overcame your strength} - in the sense of to defeat, syn. gagner, họ ndó

3. used in various expressions of comparison and in "superlative" expressions {í yí míngi ahọ : we like it a great deal, it surpasses, i.e. we like it very much indeed} {mọ sára kọa ahọ ámbéni wále tí kótóró : you do work, it surpasses the other women of the village, i.e. you do more work than the other women} {íta só séngé yí ahọ yí kóé : sister, that's the most insignificant thing of all} {agá sioní, ahọ tí giriri : it has become bad, it surpasses that of formerly, i.e. it has become worse than formerly} {mbi yí tí kírí na mọ merci míngi ahọ : I want to return to you very many thanks}

họ ndó V : 1. to overcome, to overwhelm {kobéla ahọ ndó tí lo : sickness has overwhelmed him} {ngunzá ní ahọ ndó tí mbi : the greens are too much for me} {ngangó tí yoró ní ahọ ndó tí kobéla : the strength of the medicine has overcome the sickness} - syn. họ 2, gagner

2. with ní : an expression of the superlative of any quantitative concept {í fáa mbéni kótá yáká, ahọ ndó ní : we cultivated a huge field, beyond measure} {ála gbó susu, ahọ ndó ní : they caught many fish, beyond belief} {kóngbá tí mbunzú ní ahọ ndó ní : the load of the white man was much too heavy}- syn. lingbi pepe

hôngó N : 1. the act of proceeding or passing on - from hó V

2. used to reinforce hó V {lo hó hôngó : he definitely passed by}

hótó [ʔótó, hótó] N : a hill, a mountain {ákótará aake sambéla kótá li

tí hótó : the ancestors used to worship the high tops of hills}

hú [hú, wú] V 1 : 1. to spread {ázo ní acommencer tí hú míngi na yá tí

kótóró : the people began to spread abroad widely in the village}

2. by extension, to prosper, to become famous {éré tí kótóró só

ahú míngi : the name of that village has spread, i.e. become famous}

hú [hú, wú] V 2 : to breathe - used also in hú mbóo, hú pónó, hú téré

hú mbóo V : to breathe, to exhale, to blow with the mouth - see also gió

bé, úlu

húnda [húnda, ʔúnda] V : to ask, to request {lo húnda mérengé, lo tene,

kótóró aake ndurú pepe ? : he asked the child, saying, isn't the

village nearby?} {lo húnda, ázo óke ayí tí mú carte tí lo : he asked,

how many people want to take away his card?} {question só mo húnda

na mbi ... : the question which you asked me ...} {lo húnda bon :

he asked for a loan} - see also sára téné, éré 3

húngó N : fame, reputation, news {fadesó téné ní acommencer tí dé, í má

húngó ní míngi pepe : now the matter has begun to cool off, we don't

hear the fame of it much any more}

húnzi [húnzi, wúnzi, ʔúnzi] V : 1. to finish, to exhaust the supply, to

run out, to come to the end, to be finished or exhausted {ngangó tí

lo ade ahúnzi pepe : his strength is not yet exhausted} {nze ahúnzi

awe : the month is finished} {nginza ní ahúnzi awe : the money has

run out} {ála húnzi téné ní : they made an end to the matter} {aake

nzoní mo húnzi yoró ní : you should finish your medicine} {lo húnzi

tí sára téné awe : he has finished talking}

2. by extension, to disappear, to cause to disappear - hence, to

conceal {ála húnzi yama ní, sí ála kírí na kótóró : they concealed

the animal, and then went to the village} - syn. hónde, with which

there seems to be some confusion in current usage

húnzi berá V : to ambush

hú pónó V : to suffer persecution, to be persecuted - sometimes, to suffer in general (aake kusára tí Nzapá laá, sí mbi ngbá tí hú pónó da só : it's on account of the work of God that I'm still suffering persecution) - the element which distinguishes this from báa pási, báa finóo is that the ill-will of a person is involved - see ponó, sána

hú tére V : to rest from effort (mó zia í hú tére kété na : won't you please let us rest a bit) - see also lángó N 1

í P : 1. first person plural pronoun {apousser í títene í sára kɔa míngi : they urged us, so that we did much work} {só da tí í : this is our house} {só tí í : this is ours} - some of the Catholic literature uses *é for this, while using í in sense 2 below, but oral material does not justify this distinction - Protestant material uses áni in this sense

2. second person plural pronoun, mostly in missions literature {aake tene na í téné tí Nzapá : it is telling you the word of God} - ála is general usage for this sense - see mbi for the pronoun system - (Grammar p. 135-138)

ía V : to blow, as the wind {pupu aía ngangó : the wind blew hard}

ía N : the sky, the air - ndúzú means the upper regions, the sky, while yáyú means heaven, both where the stars are, and where Christians go after death

il faut que** [ifó, fó, fókä, ifókä, ifóke, ifók] V : it must be that {il faut que ála sára kɔa só : you must do this work} {il faut que mbi goe na Bangui : I must go to Bangui} - syn. língbi

impôt** [lɛpóo] N : taxes - for the greater part of the population, the prevalent form of taxes is the head tax, usually paid when the cotton crop is sold, since this is the only time when many people have enough cash - see coton

infirmier** [ɛfirmyé] N : a male nurse - the great majority of hospital employees of all categories are male

ino N : urine - sára ino is to urinate - bozó ino is the bladder

isoró N : any form of speech, as conversation or narrative {só tere na isoró tí dimanche : these are the fables and talks (or speeches, or chats, etc.) for Sunday} - sára isoró means to converse - téné is the

broadest term for any sample of the language, histoire refers to a story, a tale, or an anecdote, and teré is a fable - see also sára téné

- íta N : 1. in a strict kinship sense, a member of one's clan in the same generation, in particular one's siblings, but including parallel cousins {íta tí mbi atene mbi goe na lo : my sibling told me to go with him} - kótá zo 2 is an older brother {kótá zo tí mbi : my older brother} - ngambe is a younger sibling - babá ókó is used to distinguish a sibling from a cousin - mamá ókó, when it is added to babá ókó, distinguishes a full sibling from a half sibling
2. in a more general sense, a fellow-clansman- family obligations are very strong - a person whom can legitimately call one íta expects as his right one's support, material or moral, in any contingency, so that the term is itself an expression of claim upon an obligation mutually recognized
3. by extension, someone with whom one shares a significant social status or role, as membership in a secret society or age level {íta tí mbi áméréngé wále ... : my fellow-girls...}
4. especially in direct address, a close friend or intimate comrade - camarade and ndeko are more general and less intimate, fó is a co-worker, mbá is a compatriot, and ndoé is a person sharing one's personal name

jusqu'à** [zuská] C : until {mó mú yoró jusqu'à náá tí dimanche ókó :
take the medicine until the end of the week} {í kú jusqu'à lo dú
awe : we waited un'til she had given birth} - this is a gallicism

jusqu'à [zúska, zúsúka] Av : for a while, for a long time {aake dé
yáká na babá tí lo jusqu'à : he cultivated the field with his father
for a while} - syn. ngbii - both of these synonyms can occur
together in hybrid reinforcement {mbi du ká na íta tí mbi ngbii
jusqu'à : I stayed there with my brother for a long, long time}

- K -

ká V : to well {áwále aske ká yí tí ála na galá : the women are selling their goods in the market} - vɔ means both to buy and to sell, but it can be specifically contrasted with ká - vɔ ngéré means to buy and sell, to do business - see also fúta, payer, nginza, mosoro, ngéré

ká Av : there, over there, then {aske ká na Nice : they were there in Nice} {lo lóndó ká : he departed from there} {tongana mo sí ká ... : when you arrive there ...} {í goe na mbáge ká : we went to the side there, i.e. over there} {asára berá na lá ní ká : he fought a war then on that day} {zo só ká : that man over there} - ká is in contrast with ge, which means here - da Av is the anaphoric substitution for both

ká N : an open wound, a sore, an ulcer {lo wara ká na zembe : he received a knife wound} {tongana mbi kpaka pekó tí mo, fadé agá ká : if I scrape your back, it will become a wound}

ka C : 1. then - used to introduce the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, the protasis being introduced by tongana, ádu ní, or ádu títene, or being absent {ádu títene, wále tí mbi aske na kótóró, ka í causer : if my wife were in the village, then we would talk} {ádu ní ála, ka í língbi títene í báa finóo míngi : if we were they, then we would be able to say we experienced much suffering} {tongana carte d'identité, ka mo hinga : if (I had) my identity card, then you would know} {ka mbi tene na mo : I would have told you}

2. used to add an element of emphasis or surprise to a negative sentence {mbi eke sukúla bongó na kólí só, ka mbi wara pendere bongó tongasó pepe : I wash clothes for this man, and I still don't get beautiful clothes like that!} - (Grammar p. 66-67)

kái N : a paddle for a canoe - see sára kái

kái V : 1. to be or become quiet, to hush {pupu ní akái : the wind became quiet} {ngonzo akái na bé tí lo : anger quieted in his heart} {kái, mérengé : hush, child} - see su P, kánga ?
 2. to cure an illness {yoró ní akái lo : the medicine cured it (the illness)} - syn. kái ... kobéla - see also kobéla ... kái

kái ... **kobéla V** : 1. to heal, to cure an illness {í língbí tí kái kobéla na téré tí lo : we can cure the illness in his body} {fadé ála kái na kobéla tí lo : they will cure his illness}
 2. more rarely : to recover {í yí lo kái híó na kobéla tí lo ní : we want him to recover quickly from his illness} - syn. kobéla ... kái, ça va, guérir, gá nzoní are more common in this sense

kaká N : 1. ancestor - syn. kótará
 2. grandfather {lo eke kaká tí mbi : he is my grandfather} - see famille for the kinship system

kákéré N : a certain uncultivated tree (Amblygonocarpus Schweinfurthii Harms.) - also, its edible grain - pods drop from the tree to the ground, where they are gathered, broken up in a mortar, and the seeds enter into various edible sauces as a sort of condiment {lé tí kákéré agá fúku pepe, angbá gí lé ní : the kákéré seeds do not become a powder, they remain seeds} {kákéré afú nzoní : kákéré is aromatic}

kakó N : the husks or pods which are discarded when edible grains or seeds are prepared {apíka bódó awe, alungúla kakó ní : when they have pounded the mil, they remove the husks} - see pé 2

kalá N : a snail - its shell is póró tí kalá

kamáta V : 1. to take, to take possession, to seize, to catch, to capture, {ála kamáta mbéni yí tí sára na ngaánga : they took a certain thing with which to make a fetish} {ála kamáta, ála te : they took and ate} {ála tiri berá sí ála kamáta ázo tí gá na ála na lo : they fought a war so as to capture people to bring to him} - mú includes both the idea of giving and that of receiving or taking - gbó means to grasp
 2. to adopt (a child) {lo kamáta mérengé tí íta tí lo só akúí : he adopted the child of his brother who died} - syn. bata 2

kamáta ... pópó

78

kamáta ... na pópó V : to choose, to select, to elect - syn. choisir,
mú ... na pópó

kamáta kóli V : of a woman : to get married - see marier, mariage

kamáta wále V : of a man : to get married - see marier, mariage

kámba N : 1. a vine, a creeper - partially contrastive with kéké, a woody plant, and péré, grass or herb
2. a cord, a string, a rope {adu kété kété kámba na gó tí mbo : he tied a very small cord to the neck of the dog} - see pé kámba
3. a snare or noose made of cord and used to catch various small animals {kámba tí kpíkara amú kótá yama tí sése, na kámba tí tere amú kété yama tí ndúzú : kpíkara's snare caught a large land animal, while tere's snare caught a small aerial animal} - see also ngindí, só
4. a belt {kámba tí kánga na ngbundá tí lo : a belt to fasten about her waist}

kamelá [kamelá, kamerá, kamará, kamené] N : shame {tongana lo báa na yá tí lé tí zo vókó, kamelá amú lo, ngbangatí sioní yí só giriri lo eke sára na zo vókó : when he looks into the face of a black man, shame seizes him because of the bad things he used to do to the black man} {kamelá asára mbi míngi : shame is affecting me greatly, i.e. I am very much ashamed} {mbi eke ngbá gí na ngbéré bongó, só aake yí tí kamelá pepe ? : isn't the fact that I remain in this old dress shameful?}

kanda* N : a dish made of pounded dried or fresh fish or meat with other ingredients {apíka fúku tí gugúru, ayengere, azia ngú da sí, ane kanda ató azia yíngó da sí ate : you pound fish meal, you sift it, you put water in and crush the kanda, you cook it, add salt, and eat}

kángá N : any of several closely-related antelopes, as the hartebeest and sassaby (genera Alcephalus and Damaliscus)

kánga V : 1. to fasten, to tie {akánga gbánda tí fáa yama : he fastens the nets to kill animals} {kámba tí kánga na ngbundá tí lo : a string

of beads to fasten about her waist} - du 1 means specifically to tie - opp. lungúla, zí 1. - see also tíngbi

2. to shut, to close, to cover with a lid {mò kánga yángá tí da : close the door of the house} {kánga yángá tí ta : cover the pot} {chrétien alíngbi tí kánga lége na ázo pepe : a Christian cannot shut the way, i.e. create obstacles, for people} - opp. lungúla - see also gbánzi - kái means specifically to hush

3. to be or become shut, closed, obstructed {kété kété ngú ní akánga awe : the small stream was obstructed} {yáká tí café tí mbi akánga kóé : my coffee plantation is completely choked (with weeds)} {yángá tí da akánga : the door of the house is shut}

4. to imprison, to jail, to incarcerate {ála gá na lo na commandant, ála kánga lo : they brought him to the district officer, they imprisoned him} - see kánga N

kánga N : jail, prison {agoe zía ála na kánga : they went and put them in jail} - syn. da tí kánga

kánga bé V : to persevere, to be patient, to overcome discouragement {mò kánga bé tí mò, fadé na dimanche tí pekó, mò má séngé : just be patient, next Sunday you'll hear easily} - opp. bé ... nzé, wóko - this is a subjective reaction, while the occasion of the discouragement is said to kara or be one

kánga lége V : to obstruct, to hinder, to prevent {chrétien alíngbi tí kánga lége na zo pepe : a Christian cannot obstruct the way for a person} {lo kánga lége, sí mbi báa ndo pepe : he obstructed the way, so I did not see} - syn. gbánzi - see also lége 1

kánga yángá V : to make it impossible for someone to eat, specifically by preventing him from getting food {ngú Nzapá aake kánga yángá tí ála : the rain shut their mouths, i.e. kept them from eating by keeping them from going to the gardens to get food}

kángba N : an old man - syn. kótá kóli - mbakóro can refer to either sex, as can kótá zo - kótá wále is an old woman

kángbi V : to divide, to apportion, to partition (í kángbi yama ní : we divided the meat) (ála mú wé ní, ála kángbi tí sára na ngáfó : they took the iron and divided (it) to make into hoes)
 2. to separate (ála sára téné, sí ála kángbi : they talked, then they separated) - opp. bóngbi

kángbi yá tí V : to divide, to partition, to separate into parts or components (lo kángbi yá tí yama ní : he divided the meat into portions) (ála gá míngi, sí lo kángbi yá tí ála : they came in great numbers, so that he divided them (into groups)) - fáa yá tí necessitates the meaning of cutting into parts, while kángbi yá tí does not specify the manner of the division

kángó N : 1. act of selling - from ká V
 2. used to reinforce ká V (lo ká kángó : he definitely sold it)

kángú N : a dipper or container made of a gourd, cut longitudinally into halves, sometimes decorated with a red-hot iron - a gourd cut open at the small end to form a bottle is ngángá

kanguya N : palm wine - this is used mostly in the southern or forest zone of the Central African Republic - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

kapita N : 1. a headman, a subordinate to a village or other chief (í mú mbéni yama ngá na kózo kapita, só ake na pekó tí makunzi : we give meat also to the first headman, who comes after the chief) - see makunzi, the general term for a chief
 2. a foreman on a work project or in a factory, a supervisor of laborers (kusára tí inspecteur ake tí bata ázo tí kusára tongana kapita ? : is it the work of an inspector to supervise laborers like a foreman?)

kara V : to overwhelm, to defeat, to discourage, to be too much for one (caisse ní ane ahó ndó ní, akara mbi na yá tí ngonda : the crate was much too heavy, it was too much for me in the bush) - syn. be, mú yángá, hó ndó - bé ... nzé, wóko are the subjective reaction, and their opp. is kánga bé

káráko [káráko, kárko, kárákoró] N : the peanut plant and grains - peanuts are an important auxiliary food - they are eaten raw, boiled, or roasted, and a peanut paste (see kpí) is an ingredient of many sauces - peanut oil (see mafuta) is extensively used in cooking

kása N : 1. any edible sauce eaten with the staple mush or dough - the kinds of ingredients used are extremely varied : fresh meat (yama) or fish (susu) when available, fish meal (gugúrú), dried meat or fish (kúrú), caterpillars (makongó), termites (bobo), various kinds of edible leaves and greens (kugbé), peanuts and other oleaginous grains and seeds (kpí), various kinds of mucilaginous ingredients (dongó), tomatoes (tomate), onions (oignon), and condiments and seasonings (yíngó, kákéré, ndóngé), and so forth - yabándá is a sauce made of greens with or without the paste - see kóbe
2. sometimes, the name kása is applied to the ingredients names above

katá N : a small grey lizard - mbáráwára is a monitor lizard

kate N : the chest, both in its external aspect and its internal anatomy {kobéla tí kate tí lo asára sánzó na yá tí kate tí lo : his chest sickness has made pus inside his chest} {bongó aake na kate tí lo óko pepe : he had no clothes on his chest} - see téré 1

kawai [kawai, kawayá, kaiwayá] N : an edible leaf (Cucurbita Pepo L.) {lo fáa yáká tí gbánza, lo lú kawai na yá ní : he made a corn field, he planted kawai in it, i.e. between the corn stalks} {tongana mo yí tí tó yama pepe, mo vo kugbé tí kawai : if you don't want to cook meat, you buy kawai leaves} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

kéké N : 1. a tree or other woody plant {ndéke adutí na li tí kéké : the bird sat in the top of the tree} {mbi dutí na gbé tí kéké : I sat under a tree} - péré, grass or herb, contrasts with kéké
2. the trunk or stem of a plant or part of a plant {mo fáa ngunzá ní kóé, mo bi kéké ní na sése : you cut up the greens, you throw away the stems}
3. a pole, a stick {mbi dé kéké tí da : I cut poles for a house}

{í dé kéké tí yó na yama ní : we cut a pole to carry the animal}
 {kángba só amú kéké tí lo, akírí na kótóró : this old man took his
 stick and returned to the village}

4. wood {zo aake kéké pepe : people aren't wood} {lo sára gbogbo ní
 na kéké tí nzoní míngi : he made the bed of very good wood}

kéké tí gozo N : a special stick, often of bamboo (bambou 2), about an
 inch in diameter and three feet long, which is used to stir the
 manioc mush or dough

kéké tí wá N : firewood

ké lé V : to blink {mbi ké lé mbi : I blinked}

kékéréke [kékéréke, kééréke] Av : tomorrow {mo kirí kékéréke : come back
 tomorrow} - see lá for the dating system

kéngé N : penis, phallus - pitó is the foreskin, korogbó is the scrotum -
 see also fáa ganzá - see téré 1

kété An : 1. small, little, narrow, thin {kété m̄rengé : a small child}
 {kété sembé : a little dish} {kété kété dola : a very small moth}
 {kété kété kamba : a thin string} {ngú ní aake kété : the stream is
 narrow} - ndurú means short - opp. kótá

2. a small quantity, a small amount, a little {mo mú yingó kété : take
 a small amount of salt} {mbi girisa mbéni kété nginza : I lost a
 small amount of money} {ála mú mbéni kété kóbe : they took along a
 small quantity of food} {mbi díko Sango kété : I read a little Sango}
 - opp. míngi, kótá 2

3. of short duration {mbéni kété tere : a certain short fable} - syn.
ndurú, opp. yongoro

4. of lesser status, on a lower level {kété école : a lower-level
 school} - opp. kótá

5. used to modify verbs, adjunctives, or phrases other than noun
 phrases : a little, for a little while {í yí tí hó kété : we wanted
 to go on a little} {zía í hú téré tí í kété : let us rest for a little
 while} {mbi gá kótá kété : I became a little big, i.e. I grew up just
 a bit} {na pekó ní kété : a little while afterwards} {angbá kété,

ála fáa mbi : it remained a little more, and they would have killed me} - opp. mingi

kété babá N : one's father's younger brother - see famille for the kinship system

kété bóí N : a kitchen flunky, an apprentice in domestic service - the kété bóí has the lowest status and pay scale and the most menial jobs among domestic employees - syn. marmiton - see also bóí

kété géré N : a toe - see géré

kété mabóko N : a finger - see mabóko

kété mamá N : one's mother's younger sister - see famille for the kinship system

kété pémbé N : an incisor tooth - the characteristic verb for biting with the incisors is te - see also kótá pémbé, pémbé

ke V : see eke

kẹ [kẹ, kẹ] V : to refuse, to reject, to repudiate, to condemn {lo kẹ, mbi yí pepe : he refused (saying), I don't want to} {akẹ, tí fúta lo : he refused to pay him} {lo kẹ kóbe tí ála : he refused their food} {mbi língbi tí kẹ áfamille ngbangatí só pepe : I can't repudiate the family because of that} {mbi kẹ place tí mamá tí mbi : I rejected my mother's home} {commandant akẹ lége ní awe : the district officer condemned that conduct} - dé kité means to object, to express reservations or doubts - opp. yí, yí da, yí pekó

kẹ kóli V : to repudiate one's husband, i.e. to divorce him {mó língbi tí kẹ kóli tí mó ngbangatí bongó pepe : you can't divorce your husband over clothes} - see marier, mariage - syn. kpé kóli

kẹ wále V : to repudiate one's wife, i.e. to divorce her {kóli só akẹ wále tí lo awe : this man divorced his wife} - see marier, mariage - syn. tomba wále, zia wále

kii [kii, kí] N : thorns or prickles (as on bushes or trees), bristles or fuzz (as on caterpillars) {kii ní akpọ mabóko tí lo : the thorn

pierced his hand {mò kpaka kíí tí makongó ngbangatí agbó gó tí mò : scrape off the fuzz of the caterpillars so it doesn't catch in your throat} - sisi refers to burrs, while kóá can mean fuzz or bristles

kinda V : to trip or knock down {mbi kinda lo na sése : I knocked him down}

kio* V : to shave {mú na mbi zembé, mbi kio kóá lí tí mbi : give me the knife, I'll shave my hair}

kírí V : 1. to return, to go back {mbi kíí awe : I have returned} {mbi kíí na kótóró : I have returned to the village} {lo língbí tí kíí na babá tí lo pépé : he cannot go back to his father} {lo kíí na kóá : he returned to work}

2. to respond, to render, to return {mbi yí tí kíí na mò merci míngi : I want to render to you many thanks} {fádé mbi báa yí tí kíí na question tí mò : I'll find something to respond to your question} - see kírí téné

3. with another verb following : to do again {mbi kíí mbi tene, ála má mbírímbírí : I'll return and say it, i.e. say it again, so that you'll understand it correctly} {akírí agá koto lo : he up and scratched him again} - see encore, mbení

kíríkiri [kríkri, kirkir] An : 1. crooked, twisted, perverse, devious {kéké só aake kíríkiri míngi : that stick is very crooked} {bé tí lo aake kíríkiri : his character is perverse} {zo tí kíríkiri : a devious person} - while kíríkiri suggests multiple twists and bends, ba suggests a simple curvature - sioní is the general term for evil - opp. mbírímbírí

2. any, in the sense of a lack of selection or discrimination, i.e. in a pejorative sense {zo kíríkiri alíngbí tí mú yoró pépé : not just any person can take medicine}

3. used in modifying a verb : disorderly, every which way, indiscriminately, perversely {zo só amú yoró kíríkiri ... : people who take medicine indiscriminately ...} {ála commencer tí kpó téré tí ála kíríkiri : they began to stab one another indiscriminately} {lo fáa kóngba tí yá da kíríkiri : he smashed the house utensils every which way} {lo

- sára kíríkiri míngi : he did it very perversely) - opp. mbírímbírí
- kírí na V : to bring back, to accompany back {mbi kírí na ní na kótóró : I brought it back to the village} {akírí na mbi na Bangui : he accompanied me back to Bangui} - see also gá na, goe na
- kírí na pekó V : to retrogress, to go back or backwards - stronger than kírí 1
- kíringó N : 1. a returning {kíringó tí mọ na Bangui ... : your return to Bangui ...}
2. used to reinforce the verb kírí {mbi yí tí kírí kíringó : I want to definitely return}
- kírí téné V : to answer, to reply, to respond {mbi sára téné gbá, lo kírí téné pepe : I spoke in vain, he didn't answer} {lo kírí téné na mbi : he answered me} - when the context indicates in some way a semantic object of the verb, kírí 2 may be used
- kísi N : a string of beads worn by women and girls about the hips to adorn themselves and to support the skirt, apron, or loincloth - today, though dresses are worn almost universally, beads are often still worn underneath - lenge refers to beads in general - yí tí mé and ngbéréńá are other personal adornments
- kíté N : objection, doubt, expostulation - used especially in dé kíté
- kó V : to germinate, to sprout {bóndó aake kó na sése : the mil has germinated in the ground}
- ko V : to alight, especially to embark or disembark {lo ko na yá tí mbéńí ngó : he embarked in another boat} {lo ko na sése : he alighted, he disembarked}
- kóbe [kóbe, kóbé] N : 1. food in general, whatever is eaten - hence the meanings below
2. food crops, seed for food crops {só kóé kóbe tí yáká : this is all garden food, i.e. crops} {lé tí kóbe ndé ndé aake : there are various kinds of food seeds} {yáká tí kóbe : a food garden or field} {aake lú kóbe só na yáká : they planted all this food in the field}

3. prepared dishes in general {só ake mbéni mará tí kóbe, ála dé éré ní kanda : this is a certain kind of food, they call it kanda} {kóbe ní akpí, anzere pepe : the dish was sour, it didn't taste good} - kpíngba kóbe is solid food, adult's food - leke kóbe or sára mean very generally to prepare food, mé kóbe is a more specific term meaning to prepare the dough - tó means to boil, to cook, yóro means to fry, té means to eat

4. specifically, the staple mush or dough - this is made of manioc flour (fúku tí gozo) in most of the country, but in the north mil (bóndó, zuru) is used {mbéni kóbe tí yóro na gbé tí ngunzá ní ake pepe : there is no dough to dip into the greens} - it is in this sense that a person who has eaten various things during the day can say in the evening that he has not eaten : he has had no dough - in this sense, kóbe contrasts with kása, which is the sauce made to accompany the dough

kobéla [kobéla, kobéla, kobéra] N : sickness, illness, disease, ailment in general {lo tí na kutukutu, ní laá sí lo eke na kobéla : he fell (i.e. had an accident) in a car, that is why he is ailing} {só ake kobéla tí sioní míngi : that is a very bad sickness} {kobéla asára mbi ngangó : sickness is affecting me greatly, i.e. I am very sick} - the names of specific diseases include : buruma or ngiba leprosy, ndaveke syphilis, kobéla tí kate any chest or lung ailment, kobéla tí wá fever, kobéla tí yá any abdominal complaint, kóró a cold, ngbálo a kind of head ailment, ngé lángó sleeping sickness - sará is the itch sára, purú na méné means to have dysentery, yuru 2 means to have diarrhea - see also ça va, guérir, kái ... kobéla, kobéla ... kái, gá nzoní, which mean to heal or to recover - malade is a syn. interchangeable with kobéla in all usages and environments

kobéla ... kái V : to recover from illness {kobéla ake kái gí na lángó tongasó : the illness will get well only in that many days} - see also kái ... kobéla, ça va, guérir, gá nzoní

kobéla tí kate N : any chest or lung ailment, including tuberculosis, pneumonia, pleurisy, bronchitis, and asthma - see kobéla

kobéla tí wá N : fever - see kobéla

kobéla tí yá N : any abdominal pain or ailment, including colic, indigestion, intestinal or urinary parasites, and so forth - see kobéla

kóé [kwé, kwé] An : 1. all, every, whole, entire (mafuta ní acommencer sí gígí kóé : all the oil began to render out) (mbi leke yí kóé : I have prepared everything) (ázo tí sése kóé : the people of the whole earth, or all the people of the earth) (áita tí í kóé : all our brothers) (mbi bara ála kóé : I greet you all) (mbi yí óse kóé : I want all two i.e. both) - used in lá kóé - (Grammar, p. 55) - can be reinforced with syn. tout

2. everything (mbi leke kóé awe : I've fixed everything) (kózo ní kóé ... : before everything ...)

3. also, too (fadé mbi kóé mbi sára : I also will do this) (aéke babá tí í na mọ kóé : he is the father of me and you too, lit. of us and you too) (mọ zía kpí da kóé : put in paste also) - syn. ngá

4. entirely, wholly, altogether (mọ píka yá ní ngbíi kóé : pound it for a while, entirely, i.e. until it is done) (atourner kóé awe : it is entirely stirred) (ndo avokó na ála kóé : the surroundings were entirely dark around them)

kógará [kógará, kógalá, kógeré] N : a term used mutually among male in-laws - hence, father-in-law, brother-in-law (i.e. wife's brother), son-in-law - see famille for the kinship system

kóli N : a cushion, a pillow

kólo N : a giraffe - the giraffe is known only in the extreme north and east of the Central African Republic

kolóngo N : a broad flat platter or basin - traditionally made of carved wood (azía na yá tí kolóngo, na kótóró tí mbi í hinga sembé pepc : we put it onto a wooden platter, in my village we didn't know about dishes) - today, it includes any sort of broad flat container, in contrast to kopo, which designates a smaller and deeper container - see also ta

kombá N : a guinea fowl, a highly-prized game bird

kombáámbá N : a bachelor - masia is the feminine counterpart

kóngbá [kóngbá, kóngbá, kúngbá, kúmbá] N : 1. goods, possessions, merchandise {lo goe tí ká kóngbá tí lo na galá : she went to sell her goods in the market} {kóli ní atene na wále tí lo, lo lèke kóngbá tí ní : the man told his wife to pack up his possessions}
2. a load, a burden, a bundle, a package {lo eke gbó kóngbá na ázo : he carries packages for people} {kóngbá tí mbunzú ní ahọ ndó ní : the white man's load was too heavy} {goe zía kóngbá na yá auto : go put the load into the car} - specifically, kóngbá means as much as one person can carry, a porter's load
3. by extension : a container, as a basket, a pot {lo íáa kóngbá tí yá da kiríkiri : he smashed the household containers, i.e. pots, every which way} - see also sakpá, ta

kóngo N : 1. a mallet for pounding manioc - it is usually L-shaped, with a heavy head, and carved out of a single piece of hard wood
2. a hoe handle, either L-shaped and about eighteen inches long, or T-shaped and about ten inches long, and carved out of a single piece of hard wood

korogbó N : the scrotum - kóngé is the penis - lungúla korogbó means to castrate - see téré 1

kopo* N : a container, usually relatively small and deep, in contrast with kolóngo which is broad and flat - see also kangú, ta

koróngo N : a type of fan palm (Borassus aethiopum Mart.) - the nut is eaten, and from various parts a kind of salt is made (sá) - from the leaves coarse mats and baskets are made

kóso V : to drag, to pull along - see also gbótá

kótá [kótá, kútá, kótá] An : 1. big, large, great, wide, broad, thick {kótá caisse só ahọ ndó ní : that big crate was too much} {yí só ake kótá yí : this is a big thing} {asára kótá wá da : they made a great fire there} {kótá ta : a large pot} {mbéni kótá ngú : a certain

broad river} (kótá lége : a wide road) (Bangui ake kótá kótóró : Bangui is a big city) (kótá bǝngbi tí ála : their large gathering)

- opp. kété 1 - yǝngóro means long, tall

2. a large amount, a large quantity (kótá nginza tí mǝ abuba awe : your large amount of money has been wasted) - syn. mingi, opp kété 2

3. important, outstanding, significant, great, superior (só kótá gbíá tí í : this is our great king) (lo eke kótá zo tí nzi : he is a great thief) (mbi fa na ála kótá kǝa tí inspecteur : I will show you the important work of the inspector) (só kótá yí ahǝ kǝé : that is the most important thing of all) (só ake kótá école : that is a superior, i.e. higher-level school) (ála súra kótá wátáká : they made a great lie) (mbi gce na kótá yoró : I went to the great fetish) - opp. kété 4

kótá babá N : one's father's older brother - see famille for the kinship system

kótá géré N : thigh - see géré

kótá ita N : an older sibling (kótá ita tí mérengé wále ní alóndó ká : the older sibling of this girl departed from there) - kótá zo 2 specifies an older brother - see famille for the kinship system

kótá kǝli N : an old man - syn. kǝngba - kótá wále is an old woman, while mbakóro and kǝcé zo include both sexes

kótá lá : noon, mid-day - syn. lǝdi - see heure for the divisions of the day

kótá mabǝko N : a thumb - see mabǝko - not clearly distinguished in pre-literate usage, the distinction came through French

kótá maná N : one's mother's older sister - see famille for the kinship system

kótá pǝmbé N : a molar tooth - the characteristic verb for biting with the molars is ng, to crush - see also kété pǝmbé, pǝmbé

kótá wále N : an old woman - mbakóro is a sexless term for an old person, as is kótá zo, while kǝngba or kótá kǝli refer to old men

kótá zo N : 1. an older person, an elder, a member of a former generation, a dignitary {amú ngbéréná tí ákótá zo só : he took the brass ornament of the older people} {ákótá zo aake na mbáge aussi tí te ngá : the elders were also on one side to eat} {ákótá zo tí kótóró : the elders or dignitaries of the village} - syn. mbakóro - see also kótará
2. one's older brother - see famille for the kinship system

dótará N : ancestor in general - frequently used in the plural {lége tí ákótará tí í adiminuer awe : the ways of our ancestors are now dwindling} {yí tí giriri só, kótará tí í asára ... : those former things, which our ancestors used to do ...} {mbení kótá kótará tí í ... : a certain great ancestor of ours ...} - kótará is less specific than babá 2 or kaká

koti* N : the right hand - the right hand is used for eating and for giving gifts - both hands must be used in receiving a gift - syn. mabóko tí kóli, opp. mabóko tí wále or gati - see mabóko

kózo An : 1. first {kózo masía tí mbi ... : my first, i.e. oldest, unmarried daughter ...}
2. also used as a syn. of kózo ní {tene na mbi kózo : tell me first}

kózo ní Av : first, formerly - can occur before or after a verb or be joined to a noun by tí {kózo ní ábabé tí í asára só : formerly our fathers did this} {mbi hinga lo kózo ní : I knew him first} {yí tí kózo ní : the former things} - kózo ní is distinguished from giriri and ánde in expressing an ordinal idea

kó V : to pluck, as fruit or leaves {akó kugbé alaake na ndó ní : they plucked the leaves and arranged them on top of it}

kśá [kwá] N 1 : hair, bristle, fur, fuzz, feather {kśá tí lo avurú kóé : his hair is all white} {kśá tí makongó só kóé agbí : the fuzz of the caterpillars is all burned off} - see also kśá lí, kśá lé, kśá ngbagba, kśá tí téré, kśá yángá, kśá tí rdeke

kśá [kwá] N 2 : 1. death, in the global or general sense {kśá agá amú lo : death came and took him} {mbito tí kśá amú mbi pepe, ngbangati mbi

eké zo tí kóá : the fear of death does not seize me, because I am a man of death, i.e. mortal) - kúí N 1 refers to an instance or act of death - see also toto kóá

2. a human corpse, a cadaver {ála mú kóá tí mérengé só, ála lú lo : they took the corpse of this child and buried him} - kúí N 2 refers to the dead bodies of animals - a living human body is téré

kóá [kwa] N 1 : work, job, task, employment {ála sára kóá tí yáká : they did agricultural work} {ála manda kóá ní : they learned the job} {lo lóndó na kóá lo kírí na da : he left the job and returned home} {kóá tí mbunzú aso zo mingi : employment with a white man hurts people a lot} - syn. kusára

kóá [kwa] N 2 : a message - used in the expression to kóá - Protestants sometimes use the neologism wa kóá to speak of a messenger, i.e. a preacher

kóá lí N : hair of the head - tí can intervene {tongana mó mérengé mó má yángá tí babá tí mó pépé, lá ókó kóá lí tí mó agá vuru pépé : if you as a child don't obey your father, your hair will never become white, i.e. you will never live to an old age}

kóá ngbagba N : the beard - most African men have a sparse beard, which they shave - mature men sometimes wear chin beards

kóá tí ndéke N : a feather -

kóá yángá N : whiskers, moustache - a few men wear moustaches {tongana mérengé akpingba kóli awe, kóá yángá tí lo acommencer tí sí gígí : when a boy becomes a man, then his whiskers begin to grow out}

kóá N : a debt, an obligation of a material nature, often arising out of social relationships - debt incurred through credit purchase or the taking of a loan is called bon N

koko N : a kind of edible leaf (Gnetum africanum Welw.) {mó zia da kpi

tí sindi, na mafuta na koko na oignon, sí mọ leke nzoní mọ te :
you put in sesame paste, and oil and koko greens and onions, so as
to make it good to eat) - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

kókora N : an arrow {gbá tí kókora : a bundle of arrows} - the shaft of
the arrow is usually made of a special thin straight reed - the tip,
barbed or unbarbed, is of iron or hard wood, fastened to the shaft
by means of wound strips of raw latex - no feather is used - gindí
is the bow - see zembé for a list of weapons

kóli [kóli, kóri, kóli, kóri] N : 1. a man, as opposed to a woman or
child {mbi gá kóli : I have become a man} {kobéla só asára kóli, asára
wále, asára mérengé kóé : this sickness affects men, it affects women,
it affects children also} {fadesó áwále afáa yáká lége óko tongana
kóli : nowadays women make fields just like men} - opp. wále 1, mérengé
2. a husband {ála tene ála eke mú kóli gí na kété yoró tí bata téré :
they are saying that they get husbands just with the little charm
that protects their bodies} {ámbení wále ayí títene, ákóli tí ála afonó
pepe : some women don't want their husbands to roam around} {aake nzoní
wále agonda ndeko tí lo na kóli tí lo ? : is it proper for a woman
to praise her lover before her husband?} - opp. wále 2 - see also
marriage, marier

3. a male, human or animal, usually used to qualify some other noun
{mérengé tí kóli, mérengé kóli : a male child, a boy} {íta tí mbi
tí kóli : my male sibling, my brother} {kóli dole, kóli tí dole : a
male elephant} {kóli kóndo : a rooster} - opp. wále 3

kóli pendere N : a young man, a youth, a male adolescent - used especially
in songs - the more generally used syn. is pendere kóli - see also
for contrast kpingba kóli, pendere wále

kóndo N : a domestic chicken - chickens are universally domesticated, but
eggs are rarely used as food and chickens are killed for food only
on ceremonial or important occasions - they are rather a form of
wealth, like goats, and are used for gifts to important people and
for sacrifices - they are not fed, but forage for themselves during
the day and are kept either in the house or in a special coop at night -

wále kóndo is a hen, kóli kóndo a rooster, mérangé kóndo a chick,
pára kóndó an egg

kóngba N 1 : a frog - syn. bianga

kóngó [kóngó, kóngó] N : a rainbow (kóngó así gígí na devant tí mbínda :
 the rainbow appeared in front of the cloud)

kóngó N 2 : a shout, a yell - usually used in dé kóngó

kónó N : a hippopotamus - found in the Oubangui, the Sangha, and a few
 other large rivers

kono [kono, kono, kono] V : to be or become big, to grow in size, to grow
 up (yá tí mbi asúku, akono tongana ballon : my stomach swelled up,
 it became big like a balloon) (mérangé tí mbi akono tongana só ká :
 my child is as big as that one there) (mbi kono na Bangassou : I grew
 up in Bangassou) (mo gá zo só mo kono mbírímbrí : you have become
 a person who grew properly, i.e. who developed normally) (fadé
 kótóró tí Bangui aake kono ánde : the city of Bangui will get big
 soon) - opp. ngé - súku means to swell

kónóngó N : size, growth - also big (só kónóngó ní : that is a big one) -
 see kótá - from kono

kóró N : a cold, especially one accompanied by a running nose and/or
 sneezing - see kobéla

kóro V : to dig into so as to make a hole, to pierce, to bore (mbi kóro
 dú : I dug a hole) - zí emphasizes the digging action rather than the
 resulting hole, while kpo is to puncture rather than to dig or bore

kóso N : 1. any of several plants cultivated for their oily edible seeds
 (Citrullus vulgaris Schrad., Lagenaria vulgaris L., or Cucumeropsis
Manii Nand.) - mbéréké also refers to at least one of these

2. the seeds of any of these plants (mo gá na kóso, mo yóro mo píka
 na yá tí kpu : you bring the kóso seeds, you fry them and pound them
 in the mortar) - kóso may be extension be used to refer to any edible
 oily seed, syn. kpi N 1

koto N : a foundation of beaten earth about a foot high on which some peoples, e.g. the Kàrę, traditionally built their houses - see da - the more general term for a foundation is géré tí da

koto V : to scratch, as with the fingernails {lo koto mbi na nzené tí mabóko : he scratched me with his fingernails} - ása means to dig in, kpaka to scrape with an instrument

kótóró [kótóró, kódóró, kótró, kódró] N : any organized and settled human community which inspires loyalty and a feeling of belonging : a homestead, a village, a town, a city, a tribal community, a nation - especially one's own home community {kótóró ayó míngi : the village is far away} {makunzi vení acommander kótóró : it is the chief who rules the village} {mbi kírí na kótóró : I returned to my home community} {Bangui ake kótá kótóró : Bangui is a big city} {kótóró tí République Centrafricaine ake gá ánde kótá kótóró : the Central African Republic nation will soon become a great nation} {ála girísa yí tí kótóró awe : they have forgotten the things of the community, i.e. the traditional customs} {na kótóró tí í na Gbanu, ake tongasó : in our community the Gbanu (a tribal unit), it is like this} - in contrast with sése, the land, and ngonda, the bush or wilderness - see goe kótóró, zo tí kótóró

kóya [kóya, kwíya] N : 1. an uncle, especially one's mother's brother - syn. áu 1 - see famille for the kinship system
2. used as a term of respect in addressing an older man - syn. áu 2

kpa V : to resemble {mó kpa babá tí mó : you resemble your father}

kpaka V : to scrape with a tool or instrument {mó kpaka kíi tí makongó ngbangatí agbó gó tí mó : scrape the fuzz off the caterpillars so it doesn't catch in your throat} - ása means to dig in with the hands, koto to scratch as with the fingernails

kpalakongo* N : a scorpion - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids

kpangba* N : a temporary structure of poles supporting a thatched roof, a shed such as is used to shelter mourners and the corpse at a funeral

kpángbálá An : flat - applied to dishes and to land {kpángbálá sembé : a flat plate} {kpángbálá sése : flat land, a plain} - for a flat dish, see also kolóngo

kpangbala N : a machete - syn. coupe-coupe, nzenze

kpangbi* N : the wing of a bird {kóndo abóngbi áméréngé tí lo na kpangbi tí lo : the hen gathers her chicks under her wings}

kpé [kpé, kpé] V : to run, to run away, to run away from, to flee {lo éke kpé na géré : he is running on foot} {lo kpé na vélo míngi : he ran fast on a bicycle} {í tomba pekó tí ádole ngbii, ála kpé awe : we chased after the elephants for a while, but they had run away} {áBambinga akpé dole pepe : the Pygmies don't run away from elephants} {lo kpé tí goe báa kámbe tí lo : he ran to go see his snare} {auto ní akpé alíngbi pepe : the car ran too fast, or very fast} - see also kpé lóró, kpé mbito - used in li ... kpé

kpé kóli V : of a woman : to run away from her husband, to divorce him - if she takes the initiative, she leaves - if he does, he chases her away, tomba wále - syn. ké kóli, zía kóli - see also mariage, marier

kpé lóró V : to race, to run fast {mbi na ála, í sára ngiá, í kpé lóró : they and I, we had fun, we raced} {mo hínga tí kpé lóró pepe : you don't know how to run fast} - see also gbíma ndoko

kpé mbito V : to fear, to be afraid, to flee for fear, to respect, to reverence {ázo tí kótóró akpé mbito tí lukundú míngi : the villagers fear witch spirits greatly} {kózo ní mbi kpé mbito tí ambunzú : formerly, I used to fear white men}

kpere* N : a kind of antelope of the genus Cephalophus - see yama tí ngonda

kpí [kpí, kpé] V : to be or become sour, to ferment {ála fúru bóndó, sí tongana akpí awe, sí ála sára háráge : they mixed the mil with water, and when it had fermented, they made a distilled liquor of it} {kóbe ní akpí, titene anzere pepe : the food is sour, that is it doesn't taste good} - sé means to be bitter, nzere to taste good or sweet

kpí [kpí, kpé] N : 1. any oily edible grain or seed {só mafuta aake da, tongana mo neka, só kpí : whatever has oil when you crush it, that's kpí} - the most common grains so designated are káráko peanuts, kóso and mbéréké the seeds of various kinds of squash-like plants, and sindi sesame

2. a paste made of any of these seeds and used as an ingredient in many sauces {mo pika kpí tí sindi na kpu na yíngó tí basánze : you pound the sesame paste in the mortar with home-made salt} - see kása, yabándá

kpíkara N : a pangolin or scaly ant-eater (genus Manis) - with teré, the spider, a frequent character in fable {tongana zo andú kpíkara, lo sára manière, alángó tongana lo kúi : when people touch the pangolin, he uses guile, and plays dead}

kpíngba V : 1. to harden, to be or become hard, solid, firm {mbení kóbe só akpíngba na yángá tí kpu aake pepe : there is no kind of food that can harden itself against the mouth of the mortar, i.e. that is hard enough to resist grinding in the mortar} {lo te kpíngba kóbe : he ate solid food} {potopóto ní akpíngba awe : the mud has hardened} - see gbó 5, coller V, ngangó

2. to mature, as a person, animal, or plant {mo kpíngba awe : you have matured} {tongana kása akpíngba awe, sí fadé í fáa : when the food plants mature, then we will harvest them} - see also kpíngba kóli, lé ... kpíngba, li ... kpíngba - máí speaks of the whole organism in the process of developing, while kpíngba speaks of the end result or fruit

kpíngba kóli N : a mature man {aake tí mú wále fadé fadé na mérengé ní pepe, mais abata lo jusqu'à, tongana mérengé ní agá kpíngba kóli awe : it is not (done) to give the woman immediately to the boy, but we keep her for a while, until the boy has become a mature man} - opp. pendere kóli

kpíngbángó N : hard, mature {mbi yí kpíngbángó ní : I want a hard one} - from kpíngba

kpíngba wáale N : an adult woman - opp. pendere wáale

kpíngba zo N : a mature adult, in opp. to pendere adolescent, mérengé a child, and mbakóro an old person - see zo

kpítikpítí Av : an ideophone used to intensify the verb vókó {ndo avókó
kpítikpítí : the place became pitch black}

kpó [kpó, kpó] Av : quiet, quietly, at rest, at peace {lo dutí kpó na
kótóró : he remained quietly in the village} {mó zía mbi kpó : leave
me in peace} - this last may be a gallicism on the model of laissez-
moi tranquille - used usually with dutí

kpókpó N : a pipe for smoking - the traditional pipe has a baked clay
bowl and a hollowed wooden stem, and is shaped somewhat like a
Meerschaum pipe - mánga is the tobacco

kpoto N : a hat - syn. chapeau

kpó V : 1. to pierce, to puncture, to stab {ála kpó téré tí ála : they
stabbed themselves (or each other)} {mbi kpó yama na likongó : I
pierced the animal with a spear} - kóro means to bore or dig through,
zí 2 means to dig, and fáa means to cut
2. to plant cuttings by poking them into the ground - this is how
manioc is planted
3. to poke small bundles of grass into place prior to tying them
down to the framework of a roof {mbi fáa péré, mbi goe mbi kpó na ní
kóé : I cut grass, and I went and poked it all in}
4. to string tobacco leaves before hanging them to dry - see mánga

kpóka N : a hoe - there are three types of traditional hoes : two have
identical iron blades of roughly trapezoid shape, about seven inches
long and four wide, with a socket into which a wooden handle is
fitted, while the other has a narrower and thicker blade fitted onto
a long handle and is used for digging holes - the first two are
distinguished in that one has an L-shaped handle about eighteen inches
long and is used with a chopping motion as person bends over while
the other has a T-shaped handle ten inches long and is used with a
shoving motion as person squats - see kóngo 2 - syn. ngáfó

kpɔ mɔ ngangó-kúí

98

kpɔ mɔ ngangó N : a kind of burr - see also sisi

kpɔrɔ [kpɔrɔ, kpɔlɔ] V : to bubble, to boil {ngú só aɛkɛ na wá só, aɛkɛ
kpɔrɔ : the water which is on the fire is boiling} {na ndá ní mɔ
kpɔrɔ lo, jusqu'à : in the end you boil it a while} - the same word
describes the bubbling of carbonated beverages - tɔ means to cook by
boiling

kpórɔngó ngú N : boiled or boiling water - see ngú 1, ngú tí wá - opp.
ngú tí dé

kpu N : a mortar, in which food is pounded {kárákó, gɔzɔ, ngunzá, café,
yí só kóé mɔ pika gí na yá tí kpu : peanuts, manioc, greens, coffee,
all these things you pound in the mortar} - the mortar is carved out
of a single block of hardwood, and is shaped like a thick hourglass
about fifteen inches high or more and twelve inches in maximum diameter -
a pestle is used to crush grain and other foods in the mortar

kpu? Av : an ideophone expressing an explosive sound, as of a gun {ngombe
ní atoto, kpu? : the gun sounded out, kpu?}

kú V : to wait, to wait for {ála língbí tí kú : you can wait} {ázo aɛkɛ
kú kɔa tí ála : the people are waiting for their jobs} {mbi ngbá tí
kú tí má ndá ní : I remained to wait to hear the end of it} {mɔ goe
kú mbi na lége : go wait for me on the road}

kugbé [kugbé, kukpé] N : 1. any kind of leaf from a plant - edible leaves
or greens include gúsá, gbutu, koko, kawai, ngunzá, ngágo - see yabándá,
kása

2. by extension, a sheet of paper, a page {mɔ sára mbétí na ndó tí
kugbé tí mbétí só : write on this sheet of paper}

kúí [kwí] V : to die {babá na mamá akúí awe : father and mother have both
died}- used in lá kúí - see also kúí N, kóá N 2

kúí [kwí, kwíi] N : 1. death, a specific instance of death {kúí aɛkɛ da
míngi : there are many deaths there} {mbi sára téné tí kúí tí lo :
I spoke about his death} {lo payer kúí tí wále ní : he paid (damages)
for the death of the woman} - kóá N 2.1 means death in general

2. the dead body of an animal - kóá N 2.2 means a human corpse
 3. a wreck, as of a bicycle or automobile {kúí tí vélo : the wreck of a bicycle}

kúí nzala V : to be very hungry, to starve - see nzala ... fáa

kuku* V : to kneel - see also ba, dénge, zúku

kulá N : revenge, retaliation - used especially in fúta kulá, to avenge, to retaliate - in traditional custom, every injury occasioned resentment (vundú), which could not be appeased until vengeance had been made, by curse, by death, or by the payment of damages - a form of lex talionis was in operation

kúma N : a python - ngbó is any snake

kunde N : a sort of traditional guitar - see píka bíá

kúngbi V : 1. to fold {kúngbi yá ní : fold it in the middle} - syn. ngombi
 2. to break by bending, as a stick {kéké ní akúngbi : the stick broke} {kúngbi kéké ní : break the stick} - see fáa for various related terms

kuní N : knee - less commonly used than genou

kúró N : something thoroughly dried {kúró tí susu : dried fish} {kúró tí yama : dried meat} {kúró sése : arid land, desert} - see also ole, óléngó

kusára [kusára, kosára, kɔsára, kusála, kosála, kɔsála, gosára] N : work, job, task, employment {mbi eke zo tí kusára : I am a work (ing) man} {mɔ eke fúta lo kusára só lo eke sára na mɔ ngú otá só : you will pay him for the work he has done for you these three years} - syn. kɔa N 1

kutu N : a thousand - see ókɔ for the number system

kutukutu N : an automobile {kutukutu akpé lóró : the automobile is running fast} - auto is sometimes restricted to passenger cars, while camion is a truck and autocar is a bus

lá N : 1. the sun {ákótará tí í asambéla kéké, na péré, na nze, na lá :
our ancestors worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun}
{na lá kúí, lá tongasó, í goe : in the late afternoon, the sun (being)
like this (pointing), we went} - see kótá lá, lá kúí, lá ... kúí,
lá ... lóndó

2. a day, 24-hour period, daylight, a date, the time when something
happens {lá tí dimanche : the Sunday-day, i.e. Sunday} {lá tí vingt
juin mil-neuf cent soixante-deux : the twentieth of June 1962} {lá
tí voter : election day} {lá tí kótá bóngbi tí ála : the time of their
great meeting} {mbi tene lá ní na ála kóé ... : I said that day to
you all ...} {lá ní só mbi goe na kótóró ... : that day when I went
home ...} - see lángó N 2 - the dating system includes the following
terms :

bírí, yesterday

mbéní bírí, day before yesterday

kékéréke, tomorrow

mbéní kékéréke, day after tomorrow

lá só, today

mbéní lá, lá ókó, a certain day, one day

lá kóé, every day, always

in addition, the entire French dating system, including the names
of the days of the week and months of the year and the French numeral
system - see ókó

laá SP : emphatic and explanatory particle {ní laá lo eke sára matánga
só : that's why he is making this celebration} {lo lángó na ndó tí
sése míngi laá : he has lived long on this earth, that's why} {gí téné
ní laá : that's the matter right there} - (Grammar p. 152-155)

lait** [léé, dulé] N : milk, especially animal milk, canned milk or
powdered milk as used in human nutrition - human mother's milk is

ngú tí me

lakéré N : a lateritic plateau - hence, any large flat rock, especially one on which manioc is pounded {wále ane fúku na lakéré : women pound flour on the flat rock} - these special rocks are community property

lá kóé N : daily, every day, always - reduplicated, it can simply emphasize the daily element, or it can mean forever {lá kóé, mbi te gí ngunzá : every day, I eat just greens} {lo toto ngbangatí mo lá kóé : he cries for you all the time} {lo eke changer bongó lá kóé lá kóé : he changes clothes every single day} {mo eke zo só mo eke na kobéla lá kóé lá kóé pepe : you 're not the sort of person who's forever sick} - see lá 2 for the dating system

lá kúí N : late afternoon, sunset {lo eke sára na mo na ndá péréré, así na lá kúí : he works for you from early morning until sunset} - see heure for the divisions of the day

lá ... kúí V : sun ... set {lá akúí awe : the sun has already set} - opp. lá ... lóndó - see also lá 1, lá kúí - see heure for the divisions of the day

lá ... lóndó V : sun ... rise {lá alóndó awe : the sun has already risen} - see ndá ade, ndá péréré - opp. lá ... kúí - see heure for the divisions of the day

lampe** [lámpe] N : a lamp, especially a kerosene or gasoline pressure lamp or a wick lamp

lando [lando, lando] N : a grassy somewhat marshy or sometimes flooded plain, such as is frequented by herbivorous game - see ngonda, a general term for wilderness, péré, a grassy plain, and gbakó, meaning a gallery forest

lángó V : 1. to sleep, to go to sleep, to lie down to sleep {na Takorongo, zo tí lángó na kótá lá tongasó aake pepe : in Takorongo, there is no one who sleeps at noon like that} {mamá atene, mo toto pepe, mo lángó : mother says, don't cry, go to sleep} {lo sára manière, alángó tongana lo kúí : he used cunning, he lay down as if he had died} { na

bí, mọ eke lángó : at night, you sleep} - sé téré means to recline - zín is to awaken

2. of things : to lie, to remain {mọ zía kóbe ní alángó : let the food remain there}

3. to live, to dwell, to reside, to remain {mbi lángó da, mbi sára ngú ókọ na Grimari : I lived there, I spent one year at Grimari} - see also du 2, du 2

lángó N : 1. sleep, rest, nap {lángó asára lé tí mbi : sleep affects my eyes, i.e. I'm sleepy} {sọ lángó tí kọa láá pẹpẹ ? : isn't that the rest (period) from work?} - see also hú téré

2. a day - used especially in counting the number of days {tẹrẹ adutí na pẹkọ tí lo gí lángó ókọ sẹngé : tẹrẹ remained after he (left) just one day} {asára ká lángó míngí : he spent many days there} {yọró ókọ na lángó tí lo : each (dose of) medicine on its day} - see lá 2

lá ókọ N : one day, a certain day, ever {lá ókọ, mbi tó ngunzọ lége otá : on one day, I cooked greens three times} {mbéní lá ókọ, akẹ tí fúta lo ? : has he ever refused to pay him?}

lá ókọ ... pẹpẹ N : never {lá ókọ mọ mú na mbi kóbe pẹpẹ : never have you given me food} {akái na kobéla sọ lá ókọ pẹpẹ : they never cure this sickness}

lá sọ N : today {ála má éré tí ála lá sọ pẹpẹ : you didn't hear your names today} - see lá 2 for the dating system

lángó na V : a euphemism : to have sexual intercourse with {kóli alángó na wále : the man slept, i.e. had intercourse, with the woman} - syn. gba

langue** [lángar] N : the tongue - syn. méngá

lavú N : a bee - bees are kept in large, bullet-shaped hives, about six or seven feet long and over a foot in diameter, made of straw, in the forks of bush trees - the honey (ngú lavú, mafuta tí wótoro) and the wax (mafuta tí wótoro) are gathered and used or sold, as well as those

from wild bees - a kind of mead (duma) is made of the honey - syn.
wótoro - see voma for a list of insects

lá wa N : 1. what day, when {lo gá lá wa : when did he come?} - syn.

lá yẹ

2. an exclamation expressing derisive or indignant doubt or objection :
 it's ridiculous to think that {mbi tomba Kamara lá wa : it's ridiculous
 to think that I drove Kamara away} {mo língbi tí kẹ lo ngbangatí bongó
 lá wa : how could you ever reject him over clothes!} - tongana yẹ can
 have a similar exclamatory use, though the doubt expressed is not
 as strong as with lá wa

lá yẹ N : when, what day - syn. lá wa

lé [lé, lé, ré, ré] N 1 : 1. eye {lé tí lo óse kóé aso lo : both his eyes
 hurt him} {Bangui aga kótá kótóró na lé tí í : Bangui has become a
 big city in our eyes} - used in báa na lé, ngú lé, vokó lé, lé ... yí -
 see téré 1

2. face {lo sukúla lé tí lo : he washed his face} {nzala asára mbi
 tí báa lé tí mo : desire to see your face affects me i.e. I miss you} -
 used in ndó lé, lé na lé, hínga lé tí, lé ... kpíngba, lé ndúzú - see
téré 1

3. presence {mbi eke tene, na lé tí ála kóé ... : I'm saying, in the
 presence of you all ...} - na lé tí means in the presence of, before -
 see na 3 - syn. gbé lé, devant

4. surface {lo sára mbétí na ndó lé tí mbétí só : he wrote on the
 surface of the paper} - see also lé tí ngú

5. flat of the blade {lé tí zembe : the flat of a knife blade} - yángá
 is the edge of the blade

lé N 2 : seed, fruit {lé tí kóbe ndé ndé ake : there are various kinds
 of edible seeds (or fruits)} - see lé V - this term includes all of
 the edible grains and seeds, as well as all edible fruits : mil (bóndó,
zuru), maize (nzó, gbánza), peanuts (karáko), sesame (sindi), various
 squash seeds (kóso, mbéréké), mango (mángo), etc. - most edible fruits
 are known by their French names (oranges, pineapples, papayas, etc.) -
 see lé tí kéké

lé [lé, lí] V : to bear fruit or seed {sése ní aake nzoni pepe, al pepe : the soil is not good, it does not produce fruit} {kéké tí sioní alé sioní : a bad tree bears bad fruit} - see lé N 2, léngó

lége [lége, lége, rége, rége] N : 1. a path, a road {lége tí Paoua : the road to Paoua} {mo kú mbi na lége : wait for me on the path} {í goe fáa lége : we crossed the road} {lo sí na yongoro lége : he arrived on a long (i.e. faraway) road} {í sára kótá lége : we made a wide road} {lo húnda lége tí Takorongo : he asked for the road to Takorongo} {mbéti tí lo angbá na lége : his letter is still on the road} {lo zía likongó na lége tí dolo : he put a spear in the path of the elephant} - see kánga lége, mú lége, zía ... na lége

2. manner, way, custom {yí só ála sára aake lége ní pepe : what they have done is not the (right) way} {só lége ní laá : that's the (right) way there} {ála zía lége tí ákótará : they have left the customs of the ancestors} {ála girísa lége tí laka ta awe : they have lost the manner of making pots} {commandant aké lége ní awe : the district officer condemned this manner} - na lége tí/ní is a "prepositional expression" of means, manner, cause, and topic {abata lo gí na lége tí me : she kept him (i.e. fed him) just by means of the breast} {í sára kóbe na lége ní pepe : we did not make the food in the right way} {gendarme agá na lége tí zo tí nzí : the policeman comes on account of the thief} {na lége tí ákótará tí í ... : concerning our ancestors ...} - see na 3 - see gí lége, hínga lége, fa lége, wara lége - of malin, manière, ndaráa

3. with a numeral : times {mbi báa lo lége otá : I saw him three times} - see lége óko 1

lége óko Av : 1. once, one time - see lége 3

2. together, the same, alike, in the same manner, at the same time {abóngbi lége óko na ngunzá : you put it together with the greens} {wále afáa yáká lége óko tongana kóli : women make gardens in the same way as men} {í dutí kóé lége óko : we stayed together} {Sango na Banda aake lége óko : Sango and Banda are alike}

lekpa [lekpa, rekpa] N : a small antelope, a sitatunga (Strepsicercs spekei)

lé ... kpíngba V : to be or become mature, to mature {lé tí mbi acommencer
kpíngba awe : I had begun to mature} - see kpíngba

lélé N : a donkey, an ass - used primarily by Muslim ambulant traders and
herdsmen

lele N : a bush-tailed porcupine (genus Atheruru)

lé na lé Av : face to face (m̀bi tene na lo, lé na lé ... : I told him,
face to face ...) - see lé N 1.2

lé ndúzú N : the sky - syn. ndúzú

lengé N : a certain dance for girls among the Yakoma, at which time their
front teeth are knocked out - this is a sort of initiatory rite {tongana
mo zí pém̀bé tí mo sí mo lungúla pepe, zo tí lengé apíka lí tí mo :
if you don't loosen your teeth so that they come out, the lengé
participants will hit you on the head} - see dódó

lengé N 1 : beads, especially a string of beads - kísi is the special
term for a string of beads to be worn about the hips - ngbéréná and
yí tí mé are other personal adornments

lengé* N 2 : a type of creeping vine which is planted by the house and
used medicinally

lengó N : fruit, harvest increase, yield - from lé V - syn. lé N 2

lé tí kéké : any fleshy fruit grown on a tree, as the mango, etc. - see
lé N 2

lé tí ngú N : the surface of the water {bí ngó tí mo na lé tí ngú :
thrust your boat out on the surface of the water} {lé tí ngú ní aake
kété : the surface of the river is narrow} - see lé N 1.4

lé tí wá N : a glowing coal {ndao agbó wé ní na lé tí wá : the smith
took hold of the iron in the coals} - píndírí refers to embers

lé ... yí V : to desire in a transitory and casual way {lé tí lo ayí
bongó só : he wants this garment} - bé ... yí is a much stronger
desire or love

leke [leke, leke, reke, rege] V : 1. to make, especially in the sense of manufacture or fabricate {fadesó áwále azia lége tí leke ta : now the women have abandoned the manner of making pots} - sára 1 is a much broader term

2. to arrange, to organize, to set in order {mbi leke yí kóé pendere : I arranged everything beautifully} {ámbéni wále ahinga tí leke yá tí da tí ála : some women know how to organize the inside of their houses} {koa tí mbi ake tí leke ngbanga tí ázo tí kusára na ámbunzú : my job is to fix up the problems of workingmen and white men} {í bǒngbi na ála lége óko tí leke kótóró tí í : we get together with them to organize our country} - an extension of this sense is found in leke kóbe

3. to repair, to fix {wé ní afáa sí ndao aleke : the iron broke, so the smith repaired it}

leke bé V : to change the mind, to repent {lo leke bé tí lo : he changed his mind, he repented}

leke kóbe V : to prepare food - a more specific term meaning to prepare dough is mé kóbe - see leke 2

leke na kamba ní V : to arrange in a row, to set in order - see leke 2

leke téné V : to compose differences, to bring a disagreement or dispute to an end, to reconcile - see sára sǒngó

li V : to enter {í li na yá tí gbakó ní : we entered the gallery forest} {ngusú ali na téré tí mbi kírikiri : chiggers entered into my body all over} - sí means to arrive, linda to go down into - see also gá, goe

li [li, ri] N : 1. head {ála píka li tí mérengé só : they beat the head of this child} {mo yú kpoto na li tí mo : wear a hat on your head} {ála yó kóngbá na li tí ála : they bore loads on their heads} {li tí ála ake míngi pepe : their heads (i.e. they) are not many} - see báa li, bǒngbi li tí, hinga li tí, lí ngú, li ... eke ngangó, li ... tourner, li ... kpíngba, li ... wóko - see téré 1

2. top {mbi tambéla na li tí bangó só : I walked on top of this cloth}

{li tí hótó : the top of a hill} {li tí kéké : the top of a tree} -
 na li tí means on top of, at the head of, in front of {mbi eke na
 li tí gouvernement : I am at the head of the government} {mbi tambéla
 na li ní : I walked out in front} - see na 3 - see li tí da, ndó

li bé N : the part of the chest including the breasts - kate is the chest,
me the breast

li ... (eke) ngangó V : to be obdurate or stupid {ámbení só li tí ála
 (aeké) ngangó, ála ngbá tí fáa zo : some who remain obdurate, they
 are still killing people} - opp. li ... wóko

likongó N : a spear - usually about six feet long, with a hardwood shaft
 (kéké) and a triangular iron blade (wé), either barbed or unbarbed -
 the spear was traditionally used for big game, in conjunction with
 nets (gbánda), while bows and arrows (gindí, kókora) were used for
 small game - see gí yama - see zambe for a list of weapons

li ... kpé V : to be astonished {li tí ála akpé : they were astonished}

li ... kpíngba V : to be proud {li tí lo akpíngba : he is proud} - see
 also fandara, baba

linda [linda, lenda] V : to descend into, to enter, to be deep {ála
 linda na yá tí ngú : they descended into the water} {zo tí lukundú
 alinda na yá da tí camarade tí lo : the witch enters the house of
 his comrade} {dú ní alinda míngi : the hole is very deep}

língbi [língbi, ríngbi, léngbi, límbi] V : 1. to suffice, to be adequate,
 to attain the precisely exact measure {mbi te, alíngbi na mbi pepe :
 I ate, it did not suffice for me} {tongana lo va tí páta osió,
 alíngbi lo : if she buys twenty francs' worth, it suffices her} {tongane
 heure tí kíringó alíngbi awe ... : when the hour to return has arrived
 precisely ...} {midi alíngbi awe : noon has come exactly} {kusára aeké
 míngi, mais ázo ní alíngbi pepe : there is much work, but the people
 do not suffice, i.e. there are not enough people} {alíngbi awe :
 that's just enough} - see língbi pepe

2. by extension : to be able, to be capable, can - sometimes, to be

obligated {gí Nzapá óko alíngbi tí sára só : only God can do that}
 {yoró ní alíngbi tí língbi pepe : the medicine cannot be enough} {mbi
 língbi tí sára búbá da pepe : I cannot (or, I must not, I dare not)
 play the fool in it} {ála língbi tí kú : you can wait} {kóbe ní akpí,
 alíngbi títene anzere pepe : the food is sour, it cannot be said to
 taste good} {fadé í língbi títene, í leke kótóró tí í : we will be
 able, so to speak, to organize our nation} - in Protestant usage,
 a sort of pseudo-impersonal expression of obligation preceding the
 main clause has been formed with this verb, which is not standard
 usage {alíngbi mo sára : you must do it}

língbi pepe V : to fail to attain the precise and exact measure, either
 by insufficiency or by excess - hence, to be insufficient, to exceed -
 in the latter sense, this is used as a sort of strongly superlative
 expression {da ní agbí ká, alíngbi pepe : houses burned there, beyond
 measure, i.e. a great many houses} {ála goe tiri ká ngbii, alíngbi
 pepe : they went and fought there a while, with great excess} - see
 also hó ndó

li ngú N : a spring of water

li tí da N : the roof of a building - two models are common : the conical
 and the hip roof - both consist of poles (kéké) resting either on the
 wall poles only or on these and special center poles, tied at the
 top either to each other or to a ridgepole - between the sloping poles,
 at intervals of about eight inches, are bamboo poles (bambou 2) -
 across all these, at four-inch intervals, are tied long flexible reeds
 (sosongo), and to these are tied the small bundles of grass (péré, bebé) -
 the framework is called gángará

li tí mabóko N : shoulder - syn. ndó tí mabóko - see mabóko

li ... tourner** [turnée] V : to go crazy, to become demented {li tí lo
 atourner : he has become demented}

li ... wóko V : to be smart, to be capable of learning, to be open to
 learning {li tí lo awóko : he is smart} - opp. li ... (éke) ngangó

- lo P : third person singular pronoun, predominantly for animate beings
(Grammar p. 135-137) {lo pousser ngó na le tí ngú : he (or she)
propelled the boat on the surface of the water} {babá atene na lo ... :
father told him (or her)} {da tí lo : his (or her) house} {só tí lo :
this is his (or hers)} - see mbi for the pronominal system
- lógo N : a taste, a sample {mú na mbi lógo, mbi tara mbi baa : give me
a taste, I'll try it and see} - see tara
- lombé N : a conqueror, a hero in combat, a valiant man
- londó [londó, lundú] V : 1. to rise, to arise, to get up {kóya, mo londó :
uncle, get up} - opp. langó V 1, sé - see lá ... londó
2. to depart, to leave - used only in a locative sense {mbi tomba
Kamara lá wa, lo londó, lo vaní : I did not drive away Kamara, he left,
himself} {lo londó na kóá : he left work} {lo londó tí goe na berá :
he departed to go to war} {mo píka mbéréké, póró ní alondó : you pound
the squash seeds, and the husks leave (i.e. loosen)} - syn. quitter,
zia 2 - see goe 3 - opp. gá, sí
- lo* V : to gather up, to pick up one by one, to select {tongana kárako
atúku na sése, mo lo na place ní : when the peanuts spill on the ground,
you gather them up} {lo nzoní ní : select the good ones}
- lokpoto N : a kind of beer made of sprouted corn - see samba for a list
of alcoholic beverages
- lóró N : speed - used in kpé lóró, zia lóró ça
- lósó [lósó, lóso, rósó, róso] N : rice - a kind of mountain rice is
cultivated as a secondary crop in a few parts of the Central African
Republic, but rice does not constitute a significant part of the
indigenous diet
- lú V : to plant, to bury {lo lú kárako : he planted peanuts} {ála lú
kóá tí mérengé ní : they buried the body of the child}
- lukundú [lukundú, rukundú, likundú] N : a witch spirit {lukundú aeke
tongana kété kété yama, aeke na yá tí zo, sí na bí, zo na téré tí lo
na lukundú, ála sí gígí, ála goe tí ts méné tí zo : the witch spirit

is like a very small animal, it is inside a person, so that at night, the person and his body and the spirit, they go to eat the blood of people) {lo mú kéké, lo dé bá da míngi, lo tene ázo tí lukundú, tongana ála sí gígí na bí, fadé kéké só afáa ála : he takes a stick, he swears over it a great deal, he tells the witches that if they go out at night, this stick will kill them} {tongana mo eke na lukundú pepe, mo língbi tí hínka zo tí lukundú pepe : if you do not have a witch spirit, you cannot know (i.e. recognize) a witch} - the witch spirit is conceived of as possessing and controlling an individual without his consent, so that he is in a real sense not responsible for the actions of the witch spirit - the lukundú is thought to cause many illnesses and deaths by eating either the liver or the blood of the victims - the witch is zo tí lukundú

lungúla [lungúla, lungéla, longéla] V : to remove, to take away, to open, to demolish {ála lungúla kíi ní : they removed the thorns} {mbi lungúla pémbé tí mbi : I removed my teeth} {ála yí tí lungúla gouvernement na mabóko tí mbi : they want to take the government away from my hands} {lo lungúla lé tí kóli só : he opened the eyes of this man} {ála lungúla ngbéré da ní na sése : they demolished the old building}

lungúla korogbó V : to castrate

lutí V : to stand, to stand up - see also londó 1 - opp. dufí, lángó V

má [má, máá, mé] V : 1. to hear {mbi má téné tí yí só ngá : I have heard the report of this matter also} {má má gó tí ámakáko ní : you hear the voices of the monkeys} {mbi má atene má eke na mérengé : I have heard it said that you have a child} {mbi má ála awe : I have heard you} - báa 1.2 is another verb of sense perception of much broader scope

2. to listen, to give heed, to pay attention {ála má fadesó tere ní : listen now to the fable} {ála má mbi fadesó : pay attention to me now} - syn. gengi mé - see also má yángá

3. to understand, to comprehend {má má awe ? : do you understand?} {mbi má awe, Monsieur : I understand, sir} {mbi má Sango mbírimbíri pepe : I don't understand Sango thoroughly} - see má ndá, báa 5

ma SP : particle of emphasis and insistence (Grammar p. 147-148) {ní láá ma : that's it, precisely!} {má túku mbéni na lo ma : pour him some, why don't you} {kóli tí má ayí má pepe ma : your husband doesn't love you, undoubtedly} {má diminuer ngéré ní na mbi ma : come on, bring down the price for me!}

má ... bé V : expression coined by the Protestant missions and used in their Bible translations to denote believe, have faith - thus, má bé becomes faith, ma na bé means to believe, wa má bé is a believer - this is not consistent with Sango word and phrase formation and is not part of standard Sango - zia bé is the standard equivalent

mabóko [mabóko, mabóko, mabéko] N : 1. hand, wrist, arm, wing (of bird) {fadé mbi gbó mabóko tí lo : I will grip his hand} {lo mú kpóka na mabóko tí lo : he took the hoe in his hand} {yóro mabóko na ndúzú : hold up your hand} {asára taá na mabóko tí lo : he did it with his own hands} {azía gouvernement na mabóko tí lo : they put the government into his hands} {mbi te kóbe na mabóko tí lo : I eat food from his hand, i.e. through his kindness} {tongana mabóko tí lo ayí da pepe

fadé asára yę : if his hand (i.e. he) does not agree (to do it),
 what will be done?) {asúru mabóko tí lo : he cut open (i.e. vaccinated)
 his arm} {mabóko tí ndeke ní afáa : the wing of the bird is broken} -
 syn. tí - kpangbi is a more specific word for the wing of a bird -
 see also ndó tí mabóko, li tí mabóko, mabóko tí kóli, mabóko tí
wále, gbé tí mabóko, kélé mabóko, kótá mabóko, uzené tí mabóko, yá
tí mabóko - see téré 1

2. a handle {gbara ake mbéni mará tí kopo sɛ mabóko ní ake da :
 the frying pan is a kind of container which has a handle}

mabóko tí kóli N : the right hand - syn. kotí - see also mabóko, mbáge
tí kóli

mabóko tí wále N : the left hand - syn. gati - see also mabóko, mbáge
tí wále

machine** [masiɛn] N : any kind of machine - the term is used most
 frequently in referring to sewing machines, typewriters and spring
 traps, which are otherwise called by their full French names

madame** [madáam] N : lady, madam, Mrs. {madame só ahinga tí leke yá da
 tí lo nzoní : this lady knows how to fix up the inside of her house}
 - see monsieur

mademoiselle** [madamwazéɛl] N : a single lady, Miss

mafuta [mafuta, mafota, mafata] N : oil, fat, grease {mo zia mafuta na
 koko na oignon da kóé, sí mo te : you put in fat and greens and
 onions, then you eat it} {lo gá na lá kúí, bongó tí lo gí mafuta :
 he comes (home) in the evening, his clothes are greasy all over}
 {zo só ake mafuta míngi : this person is very fat} - the most
 common cooking oil is mafuta tí káráko, peanut oil - in the southern
 forest zone, bingbá mafuta, palm oil, is often used, while in the
 north mafuta tí báláwá or shea butter is used

mafuta tí báláwá N : a buttery fat made from shea nuts and used as a
 cooking fat, especially by Muslims and West Africans and those who
 have been influenced by them {mo vo mafuta tí báláwá, mo túku na yá

ngunzá ní, mo tó na ní ngbii kóé : you buy shea butter, you put into the greens, and you cook it all together for a while}

mafuta tí káráko N : peanut oil - the most common cooking oil in the Central African Republic - the Kpɛ of the Bozoum area, among others, have developed a fairly important commerce in peanut oil made by traditional methods

mafuta tí wótoro N : 1. honey - syn. ngú lavú
2. beeswax

magasin** [magazɛ̃] N : a store, a storehouse, a warehouse {kózo ní mbi eke gérant tí magasin : formerly I was the manager of a store} - syn. da tí magasin

máí [máí, máí] V : to grow, to develop - used primarily of plants {tongana sése ní aake nzoni tí lú kóbe da sí, kóbe ní alíngbi tí máí, : when the soil is good for planting food, then the food can grow} - kpíngba 2 refers primarily to the end result of the growth process, and more specifically to the fruit rather than to the whole plant

maire** [méer] N : the mayor of an organized city - in colonial days, an appointed official, now elected - see ville, also république

mais** [me] C : and, but - used only to join clauses or sentences (Grammar p. 68-69), where it is syn. with na {méréngé asára mbáná na lo, mais lo kpé : the youth was being idle for him, and then he ran away} {lo sára téné sioní mingi na li tí mo, mais mo hinga pepe : he says many evil things about you, but you don't know} - et, et puis are syn. but much less common

makáko [makáko, mokáko] N : any kind of monkey (superfamily Cercopithecoidea) - ngui is a colobus monkey, bákoyá a baboon, makáko tí bingbá a red or patas monkey, and vurú makáko another kind, unidentified

makáko tí bingbá N : a red monkey, a patas monkey (Erythrocebus patas)

makala N : a kind of fritter made of European wheat flour fried in deep fat, filled with either hot pepper or sugar, and sold as a snack in

markets all over the Central African Republic

makongó [makongó, makongó] N : a caterpillar - some kinds are used in making a number of sauces {ámamá agoe na ngonda tí gí makongó : the mothers go into the bush to hunt for caterpillars} {ála zía makongó na yá tí sakpá, ála túku lé tí wá na ndó ní, kíi ní agbí kóé : they put the caterpillars into a basket, and dump in glowing coals, and the fuzz is all burned off} - see kása, kóbe - see yome for a list of insects

makoró N : slander, betrayal - see sára makoró

makunzi [makunzi, makanzi, mokonzi] N : 1. a chief, especially a village chief or the chief of a petty administrative unit {tongana í fáa yama awe, í mú mbéní, í mú na makunzi : when we've killed an animal, we take some (meat) and give it to the chief} - gbíá refers to a king, kapita to a subordinate chief, the headman of a settlement or homestead - because in colonial times the administration selected village chiefs with little understanding of traditional power structures and the mechanisms of power transfer, and because the chiefs became often little more than flunkies of the alien administration, they were often despised by the people - in some cases, the real traditional chiefs concealed their identity to avoid serving in this demeaning role - as a result, the institution of chieftainship is moribund, especially since independence

2. by extension, a leader or chief in any domain, a political boss {mbi eke fadesé makunzi tí áfonctionnaire : I am now the boss of the civil service}

malade** [maláde, maráde] N : illness, sickness, disease {malade aêke na ndo só míngi : there is much sickness here} - kobéla and malade are syn. to such an extent that they are interchangeable in all usages and environments

malin** [maléé] N : cunning, skill {mo hínga malin ní pepe, sí mo sára samba : you don't know the skill to make beer} - syn. ndaráa, manière, lége 2

malínga N : any dance of European origin or in the European style {lo dó malínga : he danced a European dance} - syn. nylon 1 - coller N refers especially to the close physical contact between the sexes in the European dance - dódó is a general term for all dances

mamá N : mother, in a biological and social sense - usually accompanied by a specifying complement {mamá tí mbi akúí : my mother has died} {mamá agá amú mbi akírí na kótóró tí aú tí lo : mother came and got me and returned to her uncle's village} - see babá 1, famille

2. usually plural : collectively, the members of the mother's clan, including maternal ancestors {fadé ámamá tí mbi atene mbi eke zo tí búbá : my maternal clansmen will say I am a fool} - see babá 2

3. usually with some specifying complement : a member of one's mother's clan, especially one's mother's sisters - kété mamá is her younger sister, kótá mamá is her older sister - see babá 3

4. used honorifically of an older woman, especially one's hostess {tongana mo fonó na mbéni zo mo éré lo mamá tí gonda lo, mais taá mamá pepe : when you are visiting someone, you call her mother to honor her, but (she is) not a real mother} - see also áta 3, babá 4, aú 2, kóya 2

mamá ... (eke) ndé An : added to babá óko, specifies a half-sibling {íta tí mbi, babá óko, mamá (ake) ndé : a sibling, one father but the mother (is) different, i.e. a half-sibling} - cf. mamá óko

mamá óko An : added to babá óko, specifies a full sibling {íta tí mbi, babá óko, mamá óko : my full sibling} - cf. mamá ... (eke) ndé

mamá tí clé N : a lock - mérenge tí clé is a key - see also clé

mamá tí mápa N : yeast, of the kind used in baking bread - sái is the kind used in brewing bíribiri, a kind of beer

mamá tí ngo N : a pregnant woman

má ndá V : to understand fully {zia mbi má ndá ní bíaní : let me understand it fully} {fadesó mbi má ndá ní awe : now I understand it fully} - this means to get the essence of a matter - see also má 3, báa 5

manda V : to learn {tongana mbunzú así na lége tí coton, wále acommencer tí sára yáká, acommencer tí manda : when white men came with the practice of cotton, women began to make fields, they began to learn} {ála manda kóá ní : they learned the job} - see also gí lége, hínga lége, hínga

mánga N : 1. tobacco, cigarette - tobacco is grown locally in small family fields, and is cured by traditional methods and smoked in a pipe, or made into cigarette in a factory {zo só ayó mánga : this person is smoking (lit. sucking) tobacco} - see kpó 4, kpókpó, yó

mangbéré N : a portion of manioc crushed with water, wrapped in leaves, and roasted or boiled - mangbéré are sold as snacks in markets all over the Central African Republic

mángo N : a mango tree or fruit - mangoes are one of the commonest of all fruits in the Central African Republic

manière** [manyéer, maniyér, moniyéer, monyér, mayér, moniyére, mayére] N : way, manner, skill, ability, cunning, guile, wiles {kóli ayí tí dutí, manière aake pepe : the man wanted to stay, but there was no way} {mó fa na mbi manière tí kóá só : show me the skill of this job} {lo hínga manière tí kpíkara ní kózo pepe : he did not know before the pangolin's manner (of acting)} {zo wa sí aake na manière ahó íta tí lo ? : which one had more cunning than his comrade?} {fadé mbéní zo agá na manière, atene ní eke taá zo tí Nzapá : some people will come with guile, claiming to be really God's people} {lo gí manière tí nzí : he sought the cunning to steal} {mó hínga manière tí wále aake ndé ndé pepe ? : don't you know that the wiles of women are various?} - syn. lége 2, malin, ndaráa - see also sára manière

manoeuvre** [manévre, manívere] N : a laborer, an unskilled workman

manquer** [maké, mankéé] V : to fail, to be missing, lacking, or absent, to overlook {yí amanquer í na ndo só pepe : nothing is lacking for us here} {í mú wángó ní títene ála manquer pepe : we give you this notice so that you won't be absent} {ála manquer mbi na sambéla tí

ála pepe : don't overlook me in your prayers) {fadé í na mo í dé bá da, amanquer pepe : you and I will take an oath about it, it won't fail} {lo manquer tí gá pepe : he will certainly come (lit. he will not fail to come)} {amanquer lo pepe : it is very likely him}

mápa [mápa, mámpa] N : bread - used also of some local approximations of bread made from manioc - see also mangbéré, makala

mará N : a classificatory term : kind, sort, type, clan, tribe, nationality {mará aake, só atene, clan : there is the mará, that is to say, the clan} {mbení mará tí kóbe : a certain sort of food} {mbení mará tí kobéla : a certain kind of disease} {ála tene mará tí téné tongasó : they said this kind of thing} {mará tí yí só ála sára ... : the kinds of things they did ...} {mará ní aake ndé ndé : there are various sorts of them} {mará tí mbi aake Kare : my tribe is Kare} - qualité is a sophisticated syn. especially in speaking of merchandise

marché** [marsée] N : market, market-place - syn. galá 1

mariage** [mariyáaz, mariyázi] N : marriage - traditionally arranged by the two families and formalized by the payment of a bride-price (wé, mosoro) and often also by a period of bride-labor - see also marier, famille, kóli 2, wále 2

2. a spouse {mariage tí mbi akúi awe : my spouse is dead} - see kóli 2, wále 2

mariage tí bureau** N : civil marriage

mariage tí mission** N : religious marriage

marier** [mariyée] V : to marry - more common expressions are : for the man, mú wále, for the woman, mú kóli, goe na da tí kóli - expressions meaning to divorce are : zia wále, zia kóli, ké wále, ké kóli, tomba wále, kpé kóli (the last two reflecting virilocal residence) - divorce is a complicated and disruptive procedure, because proper arrangements must be made regarding repaying the bride-price, and also regarding the children

marmiton** [marmitɔɔ] N : a kitchen flunky, usually a young boy who does

the menial and subordinate kitchen tasks - he is the lowest ranking and the lowest paid domestic employee - syn. kété bói - see also bói

másarágba N : a rhinoceros - rare in the Central African Republic

masía N : an unmarried girl, a bachelor girl, especially a young one {mbi ngbá kété masía, mbi yí tí goe na école : I remained a young unmarried girl, I wanted to go to school} - kombáámba is a male bachelor, but the specific indication of youth is absent - pendere wále is a general term for a young girl, a female adolescent

matabísi N : a gift, a gratuity, a tip, a bribe {só mbi vo yama awe só, mo zía da mbéni kété matabísi ma : now that I've bought the meat, throw in a little gift, won't you}

matángá N : a celebration, a holiday {matángá só ngbangatí lo sára ngú bale otá na ndó tí sése : this celebration is because he has lived thirty years on the earth} - fête refers more specifically to a religious or legal holiday, while matángá emphasizes the festive and gay atmosphere and speaks often of personal or family celebrations

mawa N : 1. suffering, specifically misery {zo tí mawa : a miserable person, a pitiable person} {kobéla só asára mawa míngi : this sickness causes much misery} - see also finóo, pási, sáná
2. pity, compassion, mercy {mawa agbó mérengé só : pity seized this youth} - see bé nzoní, mawa ... gbó

mawa ... gbó V : to have pity, to pity, to be merciful, to have compassion {mawa agbó lo : pity seized him, i.e. he pitied} - see also sára mawa 2

má yángá V : to obey {tongana mo eke mérengé, aake téné tí mo tí má yángá tí babá tí mo, na tí má yángá tí mamá tí mo : when you are a child, it is your business to obey your father and to obey your mother}

mbá N : a compatriot, a fellow-citizen {ámbeí mbunzú, ála sára kusára na í, ngbangatí só ála ngá, ála eke mbá tí í : some white men, they work with us, because they too are our compatriots} - by extension, anyone with whom one may have a cordial working relationship - camarade and ndeko suggest intimacy, fó is a co-worker, ndoé is

someone having the same name as oneself

mbadi N : divination - see báa moadi, sára mbade - zéké is the act of telling fortunes, as with cards

mbáge N : side, direction - used with na 3 : beside, on the side, at the side, toward, at {zía mbéní yama ní na mbáge : put some of the meat to one side} {ámérenyé aake na mbáge tí te : the children were to one side to eat} {mo dénge gó tí mo na mbáge tongasó : you bend your neck to one side like that} {na mbáge ká : in that direction, over there} {mbi lángó na mbáge tí mamá tí mbi : I lived over at my mother's} {na mbáge tí ngú ká : over toward the river} {na mbáge tí í aake tongasó : at our (place) it is like that} - téré suggests a closer and more intimate relationship

mbáge tí kóli N : the right side - see also mabóko tí kóli

mbáge tí wále N : the left side - see also mabóko tí wále

mbakóro N : an old person - syn. kótá zo - kóli or wále can be added to specify sex - kángba is an old man - age confers prestige, authority, and dignity - see also vieux, zo

mbamba N : 1. oysters, which are found in the larger rivers, but not eaten
2. lime made by roasting oyster shells and used to whitewash buildings {zía mbamba na da : put whitewash on the house} - vurú sése is a white clay which is also used to whitewash buildings

mbáná [mbáná, mbálá] N : deliberate or malicious idleness or laziness, malingering, featherbedding, avoiding work on a false pretext, lack of integrity {méréné ní asára mbáná na lo, lo kpé awe : the youth had been purposely idle for him, and then he ran away} {lo te kóbe tí mbi gí na mbáná : he eats my food in an idle, unappreciative way} - goigói lacks the element of purpose or malice

mbandako N : a canoe race - see ngó

mbángbá N : cheek - lé N 1.2 is the whole face

mbange* N : marijuana {lo yó mbange : he smoked marijuana} - the use of

marijuana is almost entirely an urban phenomenon, predominantly among the youth

mbanu N : a sort of cross-bow

mbarata* N : a horse - because of sleeping sickness, horses are very rare in the Central African Republic, but some Muslim chiefs have them {kózo ní ámbunzú agá gí na mbarata : at first the white men came just on horses}

mbáráwára N : a monitor lizard (genus Varanus) - the flesh of this very large lizard is eaten, and its skin is used for knife scabbards - katá is a small grey lizard

mbásámbará [mbásámbará, mbálámbálá, mbárámbará, mbásámbálá] An : seven - see óko for the numeral system

mbengé N : a bush pig (Potamochoerus koiropotamus or Koiropotamus k.) - a reddish wild hog hunted for its meat - cochon is a domestic pig, and cochon tí gígí or cochon tí ngonda refer to a wart hog - see yama tí ngonda

mbé ngú N : the other side of a river {lo goe na mbé ngú : he went across the river}

mbení [mbení, mbení] An : 1. certain, a certain, some, other, another, any {mbení sioní kobéla : a certain bad disease} {mbi má gí na yángá tí mbení zo tí kótóró : I heard it just from a certain villager} {i hinga mbení yí óko tí sára pepe : we don't know any one (i.e. a single) thing to do} {lo mú mbení nginza tí kóbe : he took some of the food money} {ámbení wále ayí kóli tí ála afono pepe : certain women don't want their husbands to roam about} {afáa mbení zo tí kótóró, ákśá otá tongasó : it killed certain villagers, (there) were about three deaths} {mo goe na mbení ndo : you went to another place} {Nzapá amú na mbi mbení finí mérengé : God gave me a new child} - ndé means different - the two can co-occur, with the meaning another {mbení yí ndé : another, different thing}

2. with verbs : again, any more {mbení, mo mú kóbe ní : again, you

take the food} {papa ake mbéni pepe : there are not any (i.e. no) more quarrels} {mbi goe ká mbéni : I went there again} - syn. encore has in addition the meanings of still, yet - the two can co-occur {mbi yí lo encore mbéni pepe : I no longer like him}

mbéni bírí N : day before yesterday - see lá for the dating system

mbéni kékéréke N : day after tomorrow - see lá for the dating system

mbéni lá N : a certain day, one day, some day {tongasó mbéni lá mbi goe tí te mbéni mará tí kóbe : so one day (or, on a certain day) I went to eat another kind of food} - syn. lá ókó - the two can be telescoped {mbéni lá ókó, lé tí lo óse kóé ake so lo : one day, both her eyes hurt her}

mbéréké N : an oily edible seed - syn. kóso - see kpí N, the collective term for such seeds

moétí [mbétí, mbétí] N : 1. paper - kugbé 2 is a sheet of paper - syn. papier 1

2. a letter, a document of any sort {ála toka mbétí na í ge : you all send us letters here} - syn. papier 2 means a document

3. a book, a magazine, etc.

4. used in díko mbétí to read, sára mbétí to write, and píka mbétí, to print

mbétí tí Nzapá N : the Bible

mbi P : first person singular pronoun {í mǎ pekó tí mbi : follow me} {mbi hinga kóé : I know it well} {da tí mbi : my house} {só tí mbi : this is mine} - the pronominal system is as follows (Grammar p. 135-138)

	Singular	Plural
1.	<u>mbi</u>	í (Protestant missions <u>áni</u>)
2.	<u>mó</u>	<u>ála</u> (Christian missions <u>í</u>)
3.	<u>lo</u> (animate beings)	<u>ála</u>

mbi eke I : I am (all right) - response to the interrogation mó eke ? - see bara N for the greeting formulas

mbínda N : a cloud, fog {mbínda akánga lé ndúzú : a cloud (or fog) is obstructing the sky}

mbíó N : a red cosmetic powder made from the bark of a certain tree and used to adorn the body in connection with the ngbángéréngú dance - see fúku for other terms denoting powders

mbírímbírí [mbírímbírí, mbílímbílí, mbímbílí, mbrímbrí] An : 1. straight, physically and morally - right, just, upright, righteous {bé tí ála aake mbírímbírí : their characters are upright} {kéké ní aake mbírímbírí : the pole is straight} {zo tí mbírímbírí : a just person} - syn. nzoní means good in general - opp. kírikiri, sioní
2. with a verb : right, justly, properly, correctly {lo sára mbírímbírí awe : he has done it right} {mbi hinga lége ní mbírímbírí : I know the way properly} {mbi tense ála má mbírímbírí : I'll tell it so you understand it correctly} - syn. nzoní - opp. kírikiri

mbito [mbito, mbeto] N : fear, apprehension, fright, terror {yí tí mbito : a fearful thing} {mbito asára lo : fear affected him, i.e. he was afraid} {mbito tí kóá amú mbi óko pepe : the fear of death does not seize me at all} {mbito agbó lo : fear gripped him, i.e. he was terrified} - kpé mbito is to fear, to respect, to reverence

mbo N : domesticated dog {lo dára mbo ní, lo tense, 'ča' : he sicked on the dog, saying, 'ča'} - dogs are commonly raised, and are used for hunting, but for the most part they forage for themselves rather than being fed by their owners - sónzó is a wild dog

mbo V : to wipe, to erase by wiping {babá ambo ngú lé tí méréngé : the father wiped the tears of the child} {lo mbo lé tí tableau : he erased the surface of the blackboard}

mbongí N : a deaf person

mbóo N : breath - see hú mbóo

mbóko V : 1. to be bruised or ulcerated, to be disfigured {lé tí lo ambóko kóé : her face was all disfigured}
2. to be bald {li tí ambóko : he is bald}

mboso N : lead, solder - syn. tungu

mbúlú N : 1. gunpowder

2. powdered ashes used for medicinal purposes - fúku is a general term for powder

mbuma* V : to bud, as a newly planted slip or shoot, or as a branch {kéké tí gozo ambuma : the manioc shoot budded} - syn. tɔ

mbunzú [mbunzú, munzú, bunzú, bunžú, mužú] N : a white person {mbi tene na ámbunzú só kóé, aake nzoni í na ála kóé í bǒngbi téré lége óko : I say to these white men, it would be a good thing for them and us to join together} - vokó zo is a black man

mbunzú vokó N : a clerical worker, especially a civil servant or bureaucrat

mbúrú N : the oil palm (Elaeis guineense Jacq.), grown or wild especially in the southern forest zone - the fruit gives a rich red oil (bingbá mafuta) which is widely used in cooking - the kernel is exported as a source of fat - the fronds are used for various purposes, especially for roofing

mbutu N : sand - for other terms referring to powdered or granulated substances, see fúku

mélanger** [melánze, melangá] V : to mix, to stir {mo mélanger tongasó, sí mo te : you stir it like that, then you eat} {mo mélanger susu na yá ní wala : do you mix fish in it, or not?} - tourner means to stir - fúru is a related term

membre** [mámbre] N : a member - used especially by Protestants to refer to members in good standing in a Christian congregation - this term is more restrictive than chrétien or méréngé tí Nzapá

même** [mém, même, mémo] C : even, even if {même, lo yí kékéréke mbi eke kírí na koa : even if he should want, tomorrow I would return to work} {même, mbi aussi, mbi woko : even I also am weary} - syn. quand même

merci** [mersii, mersé, mesii, mersí] N : 1. thanks {mbi mú na mo merci

míngi : I give you many thanks}

2. used as an interjection : thanks, thank you - also used as a general expression of pleasure of gratification, e.g. as a response to good news or in receiving a greeting or message

mé N : the ear, the lobe of the ear - the ear hole is dú tí mé - see téré 1

me N : the breast, the nipple - breast milk is ngú tí mé - see téré 1

mé kóbe V : to prepare food, especially to stir or mix with an implement (e.g. kéké tí gɔzɔ), to mix ingredients together (tongana ngú tí kóbe akpɔɔ awe, sí lo mé kóbe ní : when the water for the food has boiled, then she stirs in the food (i.e. the flour to make the dough)) {fadesó amé gɔzɔ da asía na sése : now she stirs in the manioc and sets it aside} - tourner, mélanger are more general terms for stirring or mixing - fúru means to mix with the hands - still more general terms are lɛkɛ kóbe, sára kóbe - see also kóbe

méné N : blood, as opposed to mi flesh and bió bone - see téré 1

mane V : to swallow, to gulp {susu amane yángó : the fish swallowed the hook} - tɛ is to bite or chew

méngá N : the tongue - syn. langue - see téré 1, yángá the mouth

mé ngo V : to conceive, to become pregnant - mamá tí ngo is a pregnant woman

merdée V : see emmerder

mérèngé [mérèngé, mélèngé, mérèngé, mélèngé, móréngé, móréngé, mólèngé, mǎréngé, mǎlèngé, mǎréngé, mǎlèngé] N : 1. a child, a baby, an infant, a youth {mbi sára só giriri na mérèngé : I did this a long time ago as a child} {lo de kété kété mérèngé : he remained a very small child, i.e. a baby} {mérèngé tí mɔ asára kɔa tí yɛ : what kind of work does your child do?} {mérèngé só asára mawa na wǎle ní : this youth had pity on the woman} - mérèngé (tí) kóli is a boy, a son - mérèngé (tí) wǎle is a girl, a daughter - mérèngé tí mǎa, mérèngé tí ngbó are two ways of referring to twins - see also pendere, pendere kóli, pendere wǎle, famille - see zo

2. the young of animals (kóndo abata ámérengé tí lo : the hen protects her chicks)

mérengé tí clé N : a key - mamá tí clé is a lock - see also clé

mérengé (tí) káli N : a boy, a son

mérengé tí mia, mérengé tí ngbo N : twins

mérengé tí ngú N : a feeder stream

mérengé tí Nzapá N : a Christian - syn. chrétien

mérengé (tí) wále : a girl, a daughter

mi N : flesh, as opposed to bíó bone or méné blood - used in mi téré - see téré 1

mía N : see mérengé tí mia

midí** [midíi] N : mid-day, noon - somewhat more precise than syn. kótá lá - see heure for the divisions of the day

midí tí bí N : midnight - syn. bé bí - see heure for the divisions of the day

milieu** [milyée, milée] N : the middle, the midst - used with na 3
{mo gá na milieu tí dole ní : you came in the midst of the elephants} - syn. bé, pépó 1

míngi An : much, many, very {li tí ála míngi : they (were) many} {kótóró ade yongóro míngi : the village was still very far away} {míngi ake goe tí báa kótá ngú só : many are going to see this big river} {lo penser kpíkara ake na famille míngi : he thought the pangolin had many relatives} {déma tongasó míngi pepe : don't carry on like that so much} {awóko nzoní míngi : it was very nicely softened} {mbi eke na ngiá míngi : I have much joy} - emphasized by reduplication {ála gá míngi míngi : they came, very many} - (Grammar p. 56)

míngó [míngó, míngó, méngó] V : to extinguish {amíngó wá ní : he extinguished the fire} {ála míngó da : they extinguished the (burning) house} - opp. tíngá wá - see also zó and gbí

miombe [miombe, myombe, meombe, mombe, moyembe, meyembe, myembe, mwembe]

An : eight - see ókò for the numeral system

mission** [misyóq] N : 1. a religious or other mission, a mission station
2. among less acculturated speakers : a church edifice, a chapel -
syn. da tí Nzapá, chappelle, église 2

mi tére N : flesh - syn. mi

mois** [mwáa] N : a month - syn. nze 2

moitié** [motyée] N : half, halfway point {mbi sí na moitié : I reached
the halfway point}

monganga [monganga, mônganga] N : a medicine man, whose function is to
treat illness and to divine the cause of death {ála commencer tí
sára na monganga tí ála, tí soigner tére tí ála : they began to
cooperate with their medicine man, to care for their bodies} - see
nganga

moniteur** [monitéer] N : an instructor, a teacher of a lower echelon
and lower qualifications and who teaches in the lower grades

monsieur** [mösyó, mesyó, misyó, mesó, mesé, mesé, misyé] N : sir, Mr.
{mbi bara madame tí monsieur ngá : I also greet the lady (i.e. the
wife) of Mr. also} - see madame

monter** [monté] V : 1. to climb, to ascend {mbi monter na ndúzú : I
ascended into the air} {lo monter hótó ní : he climbed the hill -
opp. descendre

2. of animals : to copulate {mbo amonter na ndó wále ní : the dog
copulated with the female} - syn. uru 2 - for humans see gba

mon vieux** [mɔvyö, mɔvé, mvé] I : an exclamation of surprise, of aston-
ishment, of disappointment, of disgust {mon vieux, yí tí sése aake
tongasó : ~~wah~~, the ways of this earth are like that} {mon vieux, só
yáká tí kóbe sí aake na aú só : wow, is that ever a food garden that
uncle has there!} - syn. babá 5

mosúma N : a dream, a vision - syn. súma - see also báa li

moule** [múul] N : sun-dried mud brick - made near the building site by digging into the best available soil (termite hill clay is favored), tramping in water until the mud is the right consistency, and packing into a wooden mold about 6 x 5 x 12 inches, after which the blocks are dried in the sun and used for building - see téré tí da

moyen** [mwayé, mwé] N : means {í eke na moye. titene í mú dole, í goe na ní, ake pepe : we had no means of taking the elephant and carrying it away} - manière, lége, etc. emphasize rather the skill, ability, or manner, while moyen emphasizes the physical means

mó [mó, mó] P : second person singular pronoun {mó píka gí na yá tí kpu : you pound it just in a mortar} {babá atene na mó : father told you} {téré tí mó : your body} {só tí mó : this is yours} - see mbi for the pronominal system (Grammar p. 135-138)

móa* N : a flood

mó eke I : how are you? (lit. are you?) - in the greeting procedure, this immediately follows the exchange of bara N - the response is mbi eke

mósró* N : wealth, especially the bride-price - see also wé 2, te nginza, nginza, vo, ké, fúta, rayer

mú V : 1. to give {mú na mbi nginza : give me money} {ála eke mú na mó yoró : they give you medicine} {piqûre só amú na zo injections which they give to people} {mbi yí tí mú wángó só na áita : I want to give this advice to (our) friends}

2. to take, to get, to receive {ayí tí mú mbéní mérengé tí kótóró : he wants to take some of the children of the village} {mó mú papa tí fúku óko : you take one spoonful of flour} {mó mú piqûre ní kóé : you receive all the injections} {mamá amú mbi na docteur : mother took me to the doctor} {kóá alingbi tí mú mó : death can get you} - kamáta means more specifically to take, gbó to grasp, to seize, goe na to take with, wara to receive, to obtain

mú lége V : to take to the road, to start off, to begin a trip {lo mú lége tí goe na Bangui : he started off for Bangui} - see lége 1

mú lége na ... tí

128

mú lége na ... tí V : to allow, to permit {mbi mú lége na lo tí goe na

Bangui : I allowed him to go to Bangui} - also said zia lége na ... tí

mú ... na pópó V : to choose - syn. choisir, kamáta ... na pópó

mú ngiá na bé tí V : to give pleasure or joy {yí amú ngiá na bé tí mbi

míngi : this thing gave me much pleasure} - syn. zia ngiá na bé tí -

see bé, ngiá

mú pardon V : to apologize - see pardon

mú pekó V : to follow {mú pekó tí mbi : follow me} - this expression

implies often a close personal relationship between the persons

involved, while gá na pekó emphasizes as the goal the person being

followed and goe na pekó emphasizes the point of departure or the
relative detachment of the speaker

mú yángá V : to discourage, to get one down {koa só amú yángá tí mbi

míngi : this job really has me discouraged} - be, kara are a syn. -

emmerder means to annoy, to bother, as does gêner

mú susu V : to catch fish {í bi gbánda tí mú susu : we cast the net to

catch fish} - see also gí susu

- na C : (Grammar p. 69-88) 1. a general coordinating connective joining two units of the same class : words, phrases, clauses, sentences : and, but {mo na lo : you and he} {lo na zo vokó : he and a black man} {babá na mamá : father and mother} 'ála sambéla kéké, na péré, na nze, na lá : they worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun} {aake téné tí mo tí má yángá tí babá tí mo na tí má yángá tí mamá tí mo : it is your business to obey your father and to obey your mother} {mbi wara yíngó tí zía da, na mbi wara mbéní kpí tí zía da : I got some salt to put in, and I got some paste to put in} - et is a syn. used predominantly in French numerals or between sentences - et puis and mais are syn. used only to join clauses and sentences - et and mais may be used together with na, preceding na
2. a general subordinating connective, uniting complements other than "genitive" types to their head : with, at, in, to, from, etc. {mbi sára na kpí : I made paste with it} {mbi dutí na Bangui : I remained at Bangui} {lo lángó na da : he slept in the house} {lo goe na kótóró : he went to the village} {lo lóndó na tangé : he got up from the bed} {lo gá na mo : he came to you, or he came with you (i.e. he brought or accompanied you)} {lo mú na mo : he gave it to you} {lo sára só na mo : he did this to you} {lo húnda na mo : he asked it of you} {lo gá na lá kúí : he came in the afternoon} {lo wara nginza tí vo na yí tí lo : he obtained money to buy something for himself with} {ázo kóé na sése só : everyone on the earth} {gí kusára na nginza sí atambéla : only work for money "goes"} - tí is the other major subordinating connective, expressing most of the "genitive" type relationships, while na is used for locative, temporal, instrumental, attributive, and "circumstantial" relationships - other subordinating connectives are : ka, ngbangatí, tenstí, tongana
3. na is used to introduce many "prepositional" (or adverbial) expressions (Grammar p. 76-79, 105-106) with the structure na + noun

(+ tí/ní) - the nouns so used are primarily bé, ndá, devant, gbé, gígí, lé, lége, li, mbáge, milieu, ndó, ndo, ndúzú, pekó, pópó, sése, téré, yá, yángá - the meanings of these expressions are listed under the respective nouns - in general, they are more specific and precise than na alone

- ndá N : 1. the lower back, the hips, the buttocks - syn. ngbundá - see also pekó, gbó ndá
2. the end of something {ndá tí kamba ní : the end of the rope} - this suggests the far end, while yángá is used of the near edge or end
3. the essence or ultimate meaning of something, a reason {mbi má ndá ní awe : I've understood the end, i.e. the essence of it} {n' tí téné só yé : what is the meaning of this?} {mbi hinga ndá ní : I understand it thoroughly} {ndá ní ~~ni~~ sí sése tí í atí : that is the reason why our land fell} - used in ndá ní - see na 3

ndá ade V : to be before sunrise - hence, the early morning before sunrise {ndá ade, lo gá : before sunrise, he came} - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndakóro N : a kind of plant - the skin of the fruit is dried and used as a washcloth

ndámbu N : a remainder, a portion left over {mbi lángó ká nze otá na ndámbu : I lived there three months and some over} - syn. tanga

ndá ní N : after, afterwards {na ndá ní, ála mú mbéni : afterwards, they took more} - syn. pekó ní - both of these expressions can be used with or without introducing na

ndao N : a blacksmith - traditionally, the smith smelted the iron ore in a clay furnace, using charcoal (charbon), and then forged the iron (wé) to make tools and weapons, as well as ornaments and the bars used in paying bride-price - see zembé, ríga, likongó, kpóka, ngáfó - the smiths belonged to special clans

ndá péréré [ndá péréré, ndá péré, ndá préle, ndá pér, ndá pré] N : morning, after sunrise {lo duti ná da na ndá péréré, así na lá kúí :

he sat in the house from morning until sunset} - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndaráa N : ingenuity, skill, cleverness {wále ní aake wále tí ndaráa : this woman is an ingenious woman} - closely related meanings are expressed by manière, malin, lége 2

ndarangba N : a hare, a domestic or wild rabbit

ndá táá mọ : a very serious curse, a very gross insult - apparently making some reference to the anatomy of the victim's mother - see zonga

ndaveke N : syphilis - see kobéla

ndé An : different - repeated it has a distributive meaning {mará tí dódó ndé ndé : many different kinds of dances} {mbení yí ndé : another different thing, a certain different thing} - (Grammar p. 56-57) - see also mbení, which among other things means other - but while ndé stresses a different kind, mbení usually refers to another of the same kind

ndeke [ndeke, ndeko] N : an intimate friend of either sex, hence : a mistress, a lover, a paramour {aake nzoní wále agonda ándeke tí lo na kóli tí lo ? : is it proper for a woman to praise her lovers before her husband?} {ázo tí lukundú atambéla na bí tí gí ándeke tí ála : witches go about at night to seek their comrades} - camarade refers to friends of the same sex, fó is a co-worker, mbá is a compatriot, ndoé is a person having the same name as oneself, íta is a relative or someone whose friendship is so intimate as to warrant a sort of honorary inclusion in the family - wato is an enemy

ndembú N : cured rubber, or that which is made of it, as a rubber ball {asára balle na ndembú : they make balls out of rubber} - bángá is primarily raw rubber or latex - see also píka ndembú

ndeke [ndeke, ndeke] N : any kind of bird

ndeke tí ngbáa N : a buffalo bird, i.e. a bird which follows the herd of buffalo and feeds on insects aroused by their movements

ndiá N : a law, an ordinance, a rule, a decree - lú ndiá means to promulgate or enact a law

ndó N : the top of something {só ndó tí table : that is the top of the table} - ndó suggests a surface, while li 2 suggests the top part or portion of something - used in ndó bé, ndó gó, ndó lé, ndó tí, ndó (tí) mabóko, hó ndó - na ndó tí means on top of - see na 3

ndo N : a place, an environment {mbi te kóbe na ndo tí lo : I ate at his place} {ndo avokó awe : the place was dark} {lo goe na ndo yongoro : he went to a far-off place} {lo balayer ndo : she swept the place} {alóndó agoe na mbéni ndo : he left and went to another place} - syn. place - used as an "empty" object in expressions such as in báa ndo, éré ndo, yí tí báa ndo, ndo só, ndo wa

ndo ahá [ndo ahá, ahá] V : of the sun : to rise {ndo ahá awe : the sun has risen} - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndó bé N : the center of something {eh bien mo mú kóko fadesó, mo túku na ndó bé ní : well then you take some greens and dump them right in the middle of it} - bé means the middle, and ndó adds the idea of approaching the middle from above

ndoé [ndoé, ndóé, ndoyé, ndoyé, ndoyé] N : 1. a person having the same name as oneself, a bosom friend {lo eks ndoé tí mbi : he's my intimate friend, my other self} - see ndeko for a list of related terms
2. among persons who learned Sango through Protestant missions, ndoé is used to mean love, both V and N, which in standard Sango are expressed by bé ... yí

ndó gó N : the nape of the neck - see gó

ndó lé N : the forehead - see lé N 1

ndóndó li N : the brain - see li

ndóngé [ndóngé, ndóngó] N : small red pepper (Capsicum annum L. or Capsicum fruticosum L.), used as a condiment {na pekó tí kárako mbi tó ndóngé na yá ní, sí í te yá tí í aso pepe : after the peanuts, I boil red peppers in it, so that when we eat our stomachs won't hurt}

ndóo N : clay for making pots - see ta

ndo só N : here, this place - used usually with na 3 {mbi gá na ndo só : I came here} {na ndo só, na Bangui ... : here, in Bangui ...} {#la sára sioní míngi ndo só : they did much wrong here} - syn. ge - see ndo wa

ndó tí N : used with na : 1. on top of, above, over, in addition to {atúku kpí tí sindi na ndó tí makongó : you dump the sesame paste on top of the caterpillars} {í zo gí na ndó tí wá : we just roast it over the fire} {lége tí yó na ndó tí caisse aake pepe : there was no way of carrying it in addition to the crate} {í dé bá na ndó ní ngá : let's swear upon it also} - syn. li 2 - see also ndúzú 2
2. in numbers, joins units of one order to the next higher order of units in the decimal system {bale óko na ndó ní óse : one ten plus two, i.e. twelve} - see oko for the number system

ndó (tí) mabóko N : the shoulder {agoe tí súru ndó tí mabóko tí mo : they are going to cut open (i.e. vaccinate) your shoulder} - syn. li tí mabóko

ndo wa N : what place, where - usually used with na {mo wara pendere bongó só na ndo wa : where did you get that beautiful dress?} - see also ndo só

ndókó N : a flower - sára ndókó means to bloom

ndú V : to touch {tongana zo andú kpíkara, lo lángó tongana lo kúí : when someone touches the pangolin, he lies down and plays dead} - syn. toucher

ndunda* N : sisal - grown locally in plantations started through French initiative

ndurú [ndurú, ndulú] An : 1. short {kéké ní aake ndurú ndurú : the stick is very short} {mo sára ngá ndurú téné : make your talk short} - opp. yongoro
2. with verbs : near, nearby, close {mo gá ndurú : come near} {kótóró aake ndurú pepe ? : isn't the village nearby?} - see gá ndurú

ndurú gozo N : a small remnant of manioc - see ndámbu

ndurú mápa N : a small remnant of bread - see ndámbu

ndú téré tí ... vení na mbáná V : to masturbate

ndúzú N : 1. the sky, the air {yama tí ndúzú : an aerial animal} {lo eke na ndúzú, na lo gá na sése^{na} : he was in the sky, and he came to the earth} {ádóla só auru na ndúzú : moths which fly in the air} - ia emphasizes the air, yáyú means heaven
2. with na 3 : up, upwards, up in the air {yóro mabóko na ndúzú : put up your hand} {mbi monter na ndúzú : I climbed up} {lo kánga kámba tí lo na ndúzú : he fastened his snare up in the air}

ne V : 1. to bear down hard - hence the following meanings
2. to be heavy {caisse ní ane, alingbi pepe : the crate was much too heavy}
3. to crush or roll out, as paste {lo ne kpí tí kárako : she crushed peanut paste} - this is done with some kind of roller, e.g. a bottle - syn. neka - pate means to crush by pounding - ri means to be thoroughly crushed
4. to bite with the molars, to chew - te means to bite with the incisors

neka [neka, nakpa] V : to crush {mamá aneka kpí míngi, azia na téré tí susu : mother crushed a lot of paste and put it with the fish} - syn. ne 3 - pate means to crush by pounding, ri means to be thoroughly crushed

néngó N : 1. weight, heaviness {mbi mú néngó ní : I took the heavy one} - from ne 2
2. thickness {néngó tí kéké aake tois centimètres : the thickness of the board was three centimeters}

ngá An : also, too {mo yí tí vo ngá yí só : you want to buy this also} {babá akúí ngá : father died too} {ázo só ngá aake wara kobéla : these people also get sick} - syn. aussi - both can be used together - (Grammar p. 57)

ngaánga N : a fetish - see yoró

ngáfó N : a hoe (ngáfó aake kpóka, mais ngáfó aake yángá tí Banda : a ngáfó is a hoe, but ngáfó is in the Banda language) - both ngáfó and kpóka are used extensively - see zembe for a list of tools

ngágo N : a kind of spinach-like edible greens (Solanum aethiopicum L.) grown for food (tongana mo yí tí tó kúrú tí yama na kugbé tí ngágo, mo tó : if you want to cook dried meat with ngágo leaves, you do) - for a list of edible leaves, see kugbé

ngambe [ngambe, ngambi] N : a younger sibling (mbení ngambe tí mbi ... : a certain younger sibling of mine ...) - íta is any sibling, while kótá zo is an older brother - see famille for the kinship system

ngángá N : a gourd, cut open at the small end so as to form a kind of bottle - syn. bouteille - kangú is a gourd cut longitudinally so as to form a dipper

nganga N : a kind of medicine which is put on a dead man or on his grave, when the person responsible for the death is not known, to kill the culprit

ngangó [ngangó, ngangú] N : hardness, difficulty, strength, power, severity, force, violence (mo sára kóa na ngangó tí téré tí mo : work with the strength of your body) (zo tí ngangó : a strong man) (ngangó tí yoró ahó ndó tí ngangó tí téré tí mo : the strength of the medicine overcame the strength of your body) (tongana mo zia na wá jusqu'à, fadé kóko ní agá ngangó : if you leave them on the fire for a long time, the greens will get hard, i.e. tough) (mo dé kóngó na lí tí lo ngangó míngi : you shout after him with much force, i.e. loudly) (ála tomba ázo tí sára kóa na ngangó : they drive out people by force to work) (ngú tí Gbutu só aake tí na ngangó : the water of Gbutu (Falls) which falls with violence) (nginza tí wále aake ngangó míngi : the cost of a wife is very hard, i.e. expensive) (mo yí tí vo na ngangó ? : do you want to buy by force?) (kóa tí lo aake ngangó : his work is difficult) (pasteur awa ála ngangó : the pastor admonished them severely) (yí fadesó ngangó míngi : things

are tough now) {mbéni téné tí ngangó na téné tí pási aake da míngi : there is much difficulty and pain in it} - see sára ngangó, yí tí ngangó - wáko is a verb expressing an opposite idea

ngása N : a goat - universally kept, goats are not milked and are eaten only on ceremonial or festive occasions - like chickens, they are a form of wealth and are used primarily as gifts and to pay the bride-price

ngasá [ngasá, ngásá] N : a wild yam (Dioscorea sagittifolia Pax ?) found in the bush and eaten when better food is not available

ngása Ngbaka N : Protestant word for sheep - see taba

ngbá V : to remain (from the past), to be left over, to survive, to continue {tongana tanga ní angbá, i vo : when there is some left, we sell it} {mbi ngbá : I remained} {tongana mo báa kóá na lé tí mo, mo língbi títene mo ngbá pepe : if you see death (from smallpox), you won't be able to survive} {mbi ngbá na ngbére bongó : I remain with just an old garment} {mbi ngbá na ndo só : I remain here} {angbé saleté : it is still dirty} {mbi ngbá tí tambéla : I'm still walking} - syn. continuer - de is oriented to the future, with the idea of "not yet" - du V 2 and dutí 2 are more static

ngbá kété V : used pre-clausally : just a little more, just a little longer {angbé kété, ála fáa mbi : just a little more, and they would have killed me}

ngbáá [ngbáá, ngbáa] N : a slave - in traditional society, slaves could be either captured or bought - as long as they caused no trouble, they had certain rights and were treated as junior members of their master's household - in some cases there was a slave caste {awara lo, amú lo tongana ngbáá : he found him and took him as a slave} {yí só ála eke vo na wále na lá ní ká, aake tí fúta na mbéni ngbáá : what they used in those days to buy wives, was to pay (for them) with some slaves} - bóji is a servant or domestic employee in a more modern sense and context

ngbáa [ngbáa, ngbáá] N : a Cape buffalo - syn. gógóá, and rarely bágara 2

ngbagba N : the lower mandible, the lower jaw, the chin - see lé the face

ngbágo N : 1. a distilled alcoholic beverage, syn. háráge - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages
2. by extension : various forms of commercial or medical alcohol, e.g. methyl, ethyl, isopropyl

ngbálo N : a kind of head disease, possibly apoplexy {lo kúí na kobéla tí ngbálo : he died of apoplexy} - see kobéla

ngbanga [ngbanga, mbanga, maṇa, ngbange] N : a matter, an affair, a palaver, a dispute - used especially of matters requiring arbitration or judgment - also : need, in expressions of obligation {ngbanga tí kusára : a labor dispute} {koa tí mbi tí lẹke ngbanga tí ázo tí kusára na ámbunzú : my work is to settle the palavers of workmen and white men} {aake ngbanga tí lo tí gá na lá ní : he heeds to (or must) come on the day} - this is more specific than téné 2 - fáa ngbanga is to judge, to arbitrate, to make a formal decision - da tí ngbanga is the edifice where matters are settled

ngbangatí [ngbangatí, mbangatí, mṅaṇ(a)tí, ngbatí, mbatí, ngbatí, mbatí] C : a connective of cause, reason, or purpose : for, because of, on account of, to, in order to {aake ngbangatí nginza : it is on account of money} {mo língbi tí kẹ lo ngbangatí bongó lá wa : how can you reject him because of clothes} {í fono ngbangatí gí dole : we walked about in order to hunt elephants} {lo mú na mbi ngbangatí mo : he gave it to me for you} - (Grammar p. 88-91) - syn. tenetí

ngbangatí yẹ Av : used either pre-clausally or post-verbally : for what reason, why {mo dé éré tí lo ngbangatí yẹ : why did you say his name?} {ngbangatí yẹ mo dé éré tí lo : why did you say his name?} - syn. tenetí yẹ

ngbangbu N : a hundred {ngbangbu óse na ndó ní bale óko : one hundred and ten} - see óko for the number system

ngbángéréngú N : a cult and dance characterized by prolonged manifestations of frenzy or violent (spirit) possession {mbi dó ngbángéréngú : I

danced the ngbángéréngú} - the possession lasts for several months and culminates in a dance during which initiates paint their bodies with a red powder called mbíó - persons looking on from outside sometimes consider this a sickness, a form of unbalance

ngbéré [ngbéré, ngebéré] : old - used of objects {ngbéré da : an old house} {ngbéré téné : an old matter} {ngbéré bongó : old clothes} - mbakóro is used of old people

ngbéréna N : 1. brass coiled bracelets and anklets - kisi, lenge, and yí tí mé
2. a brass bell tied to a dog's neck

ngbii Av : an ideophone : for a while, for a long time - can be reduplicated for emphasis, or used together with its syn. jusqu'à (Grammar p. 60-61) {téré tí lo aso lo ngbii : his body hurt him for a while} {mo pika yá ní ngbii kóé : you pound it for a while until (it is) done} {mo goe na ní ngbii ngbii ngbii : you should continue it for a long, long time} {í yí tí leke jusqu'à ngbii : we want to 'keep on' organizing it for a very long time} - ngbii tends to have a future or time-neutral orientation, while depuis has a distinctly past perfective orientation

ngbingbi N : a dam, built to catch fish {lo eke zía ngbingbi tí lo na ngú tí mú susu : he put his dam across the stream to catch fish} - see éré ngú, gi susu

ngbó N : a snake - kúma is a python

ngbókó N : sugar cane - cultivated mostly in the southern zone of the Central African Republic

ngbundá [ngbundá, mbundá] N : the lower back, the hips, the buttocks {ála fáa mbéni kugbé só áwale akánga na ngbundá tí ála kózo ní : they cut some of those leaves which women used to tie about their hips} - syn. ndá 1 - see téré 1

ngbúru V : to embroil, to enmesh {ayí tí ngbúru zo na yá tí téné ní : he wants to embroil someone in the affair}

ngeki lé N : eyebrow - see lé

ngé lángó N : sleeping sickness (trypanosomiasis) - formerly endemic in the Central African Republic - a form of curse is to wish the sleeping sickness upon someone {lo éré ngé lángó na li tí mbéní zo : he called down sleeping sickness upon someone} - see kobéla

ngéré [ngéré, ngéré] N : cost, price, value {ngéré ní aêke ngangó : the cost is high} {ngéré ní awóko : the cost is reasonable} {ngéré ní óke óke : how much are they apiece?} - see also fúta, payer, nginza, vo ngéré

nge V : to be or become thin, to waste away - used only of living beings {mo nge míngi : you have become very thin} - kété is used for things - opp. kono, mafuta

ngiá N : cordiality, amiability, sociability, joy, happiness, gladness, fun, amusement, fellowship {ála báa mbi na ngiá : they looked upon me cordially} {mbi êke na ngiá míngi : I am very happy} {aêke yí tí ngiá pepe : it's not a laughing matter} {aêke téné tí ngiá pepe : it's not a laughing matter} - ngiá arises from the prior condition of good interpersonal relationships, free of guile, rancor, suspicion, or envy - bé óko is a closely related idea - see also ngiá ... sí bé, mú ngiá na bé tí, zía ngiá na bé tí, hé ngiá, sára ngiá

ngiá ... sí bé V : to rejoice greatly, to be very happy {ngiá así bé tí mbi : I am very happy} - the expression can also be inverted {bé tí mbi así na ngiá : my heart is full of joy}

ngiba* N : leprosy - syn. buruma - see kobéla

ngindí N : a rat snare made of a cord noose stretched by a spring made of flexible stick - larger models are used to catch other animals such as the ratel (zarí) - perhaps the same as gindí - kámbe 3 is a more general term - see also só

nginza N : money {lo wara nginza óko pepe : he has obtained no money} {í vo na nginza : we bought it for money, i.e. cash} {nginza tí boíte só aêke ngangó míngi : the cost of a can is very high} {ála

lingbi tí te nginza tí mɔ pape : they cannot receive the bride-price for you} - see pata, franc, te nginza, vo, ká V, mɔsɔrɔ, ngéré, fúta, payer, vo ngéré, par jour, which all express financial or commercial concepts

ngobo N : a fist {lo pika kate tí lo na ngobo tí lo : he hit his chest with his fist} - syn. coup de poing ¹ - mabóko is the hand and arm

ngói N : a season, a time characterized by some event or activity {ngói tí lú kárako : the season for planting peanuts}

ngómbá N : an indigenous xylophone - see pika biá

ngombáyá* An : nine - see óko for the number system

ngombe N : a gun - few Africans have guns, and most of those in use are either shotguns or muzzle-loaders (piston) - see gí yama - see zembe for a list of weapons

ngombi V : to fold, as clothes {mɔ ngombi bongó sí mɔ zía na sandúku : fold the clothes before putting them into the box} - syn. kúngbi ¹

ngonda N : the bush, the wilderness - in most parts of the Central African Republic, this is savanna {mɔ fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you cut greens in the bush} - péré is a more specific term for savanna, while lando refers to a low-lying, sometimes marshy plain - gbakó is a gallery forest along a stream - opp. kótóró - síse is the most general term for land - see also goe (na) ngonda, bi na ngonda, yama tí ngonda

ngóngóá [ngóngóá, ngóngóá] N : that which is impure or defiled as the result of death, e.g. a house, a garden where death has occurred

ngongoa N : seed of animals {tongama lo wara yama, fadé lo fáa ngongoa tí yama ní kóé ahúnzi : if he finds animals, he will wipe out the seed (i.e. posterity) of the animal, and all will disappear}

ngonzo [ngonzo, ngonzo] N : 1. the bile - bozó tí ngonzo is the gall bladder

2. anger {téné tí ngonzo : angry words} {ngonzo alóndó na lé tí lo :

anger rose in his face} - see also ngonzo ... sára, ngonzo ... gbó, sára ngonzo - vundú is rather resentment and a desire for retaliation for an injury - for other emotions, see bé

ngonzo ... gbó : to be very angry, to be controlled by anger {ngonzo agbó lo : he was very angry} - this is stronger than ngonzo ... sára, sára ngonzo

ngonzo ... sára V : to be angry {ngonzo asára mbi : I was angry} - syn. sára ngonzo - ngonzo ... gbó is stronger

ngóro N : a cheetah ?

ngó N : a boat, especially a dugout canoe made from the trunk of a tree - dugouts are used extensively for transport and for fishing by all the peoples living near larger rivers {na kótóró tí Yakoma giriri, ála tambéla na géré pepe, gí ngó na lé tí ngú : in Yakoma country formerly, they didn't travel on foot, only by canoe on the water} - for larger boats or ships of European origin, French bateau is used

ngo N 1 : a drum or gong - there are two models of indigenous drums, both basically carved out of a section of a large log hollowed out - the gong, used especially in transmitting messages and "announcements", is laid on its side and has uppermost a longitudinal slit, and is beat upon either with the hand or fist or with a stick - the drum proper, used mainly for dances, stands upright and has a rawhide drumhead, and is played primarily with the hands - see píka bía

ngo N 2 : a fetus {wále tí mbi áeke na ngo : my wife is pregnant} {lo kúí na ngo : she died in childbirth} - mé ngo is to conceive, mamá tí ngo is a pregnant woman, ngo ... buba means to abort or have a miscarriage, dú V means to give birth

ngo ... buba V : to abort, to have a miscarriage {ngo ní abuba awe : she had a miscarriage, lit. the fetus was destroyed}

ngólo N : a wicker fish-trap or weir - see gí susu for a description of fishing

ngolo N : a palaver, a quarrel - used only in gí ngolo - more general syn.

are ngbanga, téné 2

ngóro [ngóro, ngóro, ngúru] V : to surround, to circle, to go around
 {í ngóro kótóró : we circled the village} {gbágbá angóro bála : the fence surrounds the enclosure}

ngú N : 1. water {mo mú na lo ngú, lo sukúla lé tí lo : give him water to wash his face} {zía ngú na wá akporo : put water on the fire to boil} - see sukúla ngú, dú ngú, ngú tí wá, ngú tí dé, koóróngó ngú
 2. by extension : any liquid - see ngú lavú, ngú lé, ngú tí bángá, ngú tí mbétí, ngú tí me, ngú vurú, ngú tí kóli
 3. a stream, a river, a lake, a pond, a sea, etc. {place só ngú asoa da : the place where the stream flows} {í fáa ngú : we crossed the stream} {ngú tí Gbutu só aake tí na ngangó só : those waterfalls of Gbutu which fall with such violence} {mbení kótá ngú : a certain wide river} - see lé tí ngú, yángá tí ngú, éré ngú, li ngú
 4. rain, rainfall - see ngú ... pika, ngú (tí) Nzapá
 5. rainy season - hence, because the passage of time is reckoned in terms of the passage of rainy seasons, a year {ngú tí mbi ade titene mbi mú wále : my years remain (i.e. I am not old enough) to take a wife} {na ngú só : this year} {ngú na ngú : every year, year by year} {ngú otá : three years} - gbé ngú means in the rainy season - buru, vuru ndo refer to the dry season - nze is a month

ngui [ngui, ngwii, wii] N : a colobus monkey (Colobus abyssinicus) - the black and white pelt of this monkey is made into a kind of hat the wearing of which is culturally restricted - see makáko, the general term for monkey

ngú lavú N : honey - syn. mafuta tí wótoro 1

ngú lé N : tears, weeping - see lé N 1.1

ngundé N : a crocodile - found in the larger rivers only

ngungu* N : a mosquito - see voma for a list of insects

ngunzá [ngunzá, ngonzá] N : greens, either manioc leaves or certain wild edible leaves - the most common green vegetables, an ingredient in

various sauces (kása) {mo goe tí fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you go cut greens in the bush} {mo fáa ngunzá ní, mo bi kéké ní na sése, -mo zia na yá tí ngú sí akporo, mo tourner, mo zia na yá tí kpu, mo pika : you cut up the greens, you throw away the stems, you put them into water to boil, you stir them, you put them into a mortar, and you pound them} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

ngú ... pika V : to rain {ngú apíka míngi lá só : it rained hard today} - see ngú (tí) Nzapá

ngusú N : 1. a chigger, a small six-legged larval mite (family Trombiculidae) that burrows into the skin, usually around the toenails, and lays eggs in a sac - especially common in the south, where people's toes are often deformed - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids
2. a maggot {voma adú ngusú na yama : flies lay maggots in meat} - see voma

ngú tí dé N : cold water - see ngú 1 - opp. ngú tí wá

ngú tí bángá N : raw rubber, latex - syn. bángá

ngú tí kóli N : semen - syn. ngú vurú

ngú tí mbéti N : ink - the French encre is much more common

ngú tí me N : breast milk, mother's milk - canned or powdered milk is lait

ngú (tí) Nzapá N : rain {ngú Nzapá ake kanga yángá tí ála : rain shut their mouths, i.e. made it impossible for them to eat by preventing them from going to the fields to get food} - syn. ngú 4 - see also ngú ... pika

ngú tí wá N : hot water - see ngú 1, also kpóróngó ngú - opp. ngú tí dé

ngú vurú N : any thick, milky discharge from the body, as pus, semen - sánzó is a term for pus - ngú tí kóli is a syn. for semen

ní An : 1. with nouns : a restrictive and/or anaphoric determinant (Grammar p. 38-45) : the, the one {mú na mbi yama ní : give me the animal (previously referred to or present to sight')} {mo zia kpí, kpí ní ake kósó : you put in paste, the paste is of squash seed} -

used often to replace a complement consisting of a phrase introduced by tí {li tí hótó : the top of the hill} {li ní : the top of it}

2. used alone : mainly in indirect discourse as a pronoun referring to the person speaking {tere atene, lo mú na ní mbo tí ní : tere said that he (another person) should give him (tere) his (tere's) dog}

ninga V : to hold back, to stop short, to refrain from, to last a long time {áwale tí giriri, aninga na ní míngi : women formerly held back (i.e. were very reluctant) from it much} {kobéla aninga tí fáa zo pepe : this disease does not stop short of killing people} - see also pekó ní aninga pepe

non** [nɔ̃, nɔ̃] I : no {non, mbi eke na wále pepe : no, I am not married} - opp. oui - pepe is the corresponding sentence particle

numéro** [nimeróo] N : number, especially in an ordinal set {numéro bale óko : number ten} - see óko for the number system

nylon** [nilɔ̃ɔ̃] N : 1. nylon

2. a European dance {ála kẹ́ tí dó ngaragé, gí nylon óko, ála hinga : they refuse to dance the ngaragé, they know only the nylon}

3. anything which is modern, stylish, up to date, chic {aake nylon : it's the latest!}

nzá N : horn of an animal - syn. dede

nzala [nzala, nzara] N : appetite, hunger, desire, craving, urge, lust, {nzala ahánda zo : appetite tempts a person} {heure tí nzala : a time of hunger, i.e. famine} {nzala tí mọ́ asára mbi míngi : a desire for you affects me very much, i.e. I want badly to see you} - see nzala ...fáa, kúí nzala

nzala ... fáa V : to be very hungry, to starve {nzala afáa lo : he was very hungry, he was starving} - syn. kúí nzala

nzanza* N : a kind of grass which grows near water and which is used to make large, strong baskets in which raw cotton is carried to market, and also for making woven granary walls and fences - see péré for a

list of grasses and reeds

- Nzapá N : 1. originally, probably a kind of sky-god - this is the name adopted by Christian missions to refer to the God of the Bible {sambéla Nzapá ókó : worship God only} {lo húnda Nzapá babá ... : he asked God the father ...} {Nzapá aake : God is, i.e. you can depend on Him to set things right and to avenge wrongs done to you} - sambéla, díko mean to pray, to worship, sepála means to praise God - da tí Nzapá is a church edifice, mbétí tí Nzapá is the Bible, téné tí Nzapá is the word of God, Yingó tí Nzapá is the Spirit of God, mérenge tí Nzapá is a Christian, ngú (tí) Nzapá is rain
2. an oath attesting one's truthfulness {Nzapá ! : I swear it's true!}

nzére yí N : different kinds of things usually small

nzé V : to get weary or discouraged, to give up, to fail to persevere {quand même ála ké lo, bé tí lo anzé pepe : even though they rejected him, he did not give up} - used in bé ... nzé - wóko emphasizes physical weakness - see also be 1, gèner

nze N : 1. the moon {língbi tí báa nze pepe, lé tí nze ní avokó : you can't see the moon, the face of the moon is completely dark} {ákótará asambéla kéké, na péró, na nze, na lá : the ancestors worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun}

2. a month {mó fúta lo na nze : pay him by the month} {nze na nze : month by month, every month} {í lánzó ká nze otá : we stayed there three months} - syn. mois - ngú 5 is a year - see also báa nze, bángó nze

nzené, nzené tí mabóko N : a fingernail, a claw - see mabóko

nzenze N : a machete - syn. coupe-coupe, kpangbala - see zambe for a list of tools

nzere [nzere, nzere] V : to please, to give or receive pleasure, to taste sweet, to taste good {kóbe ní akpí, anzere pepe : the food was sour, it didn't taste good} {tongana anzere na lé tí mó, mó sára : if it pleases you, you do it} {yí ní anzere na mbi míngi : the thing pleases me greatly} - see bé ... nzere, nzere na bé

nzere na bé V : to please, to give pleasure {yí só anzere na bé tí mbi : this thing pleases me}

nzí V : to steal {lo vení, lo nzí : he's the one who stole} {mbi nzí bulée tí sentinelle : I stole the bananas of the watchman} - see also zo tí nzí, wa nzí, which are terms for a thief

nzinga* N : poverty, poor - wa nzinga is a poor person

nzó N : corn, maize - syn. gbánza

nzoní [nzoní, nzoní, nžoní, nžoní, nzon, nzo, nzo] **An** : 1. good, in the most general sense, nice {lo mú nzoní yí na í mingi : he gave us many good things} {í goe tí baa nzoní manière só ála sára na kɔa tí yáká : we went to see the good manner in which they worked the fields} {kótóró ní aske nzoní pepe : the village is no good} {ála sára na mbi nzoní téné mingi : they said many nice things to me} {mo fa na ála lége tí nzoní : show them a good way} {ndo aske nzoní : the place is good, i.e. we are having good weather} - see bé nzoní - see also mbírímbrí, which means straight or upright, nzere, meaning to please or to taste good - opp. sioní - see also ɛke nzoní, 2. with verbs : well, nicely {mo sukúla ní nzoní : wash it well} {ála sára kɔa nzoní pepe : they didn't do the work well} {veke awóko nzoní : the okra was nicely tender} {lo sára nzoní mingi na mbi : he acted very well toward me} {mbi bara mo nzoní : I greet you cordially} - see gá nzoní, goe nzoní, dutí nzoní

- o SP : a particle expressing politeness, endearment, supplication, etc.
 : (Grammar p. 147-148) (ála hé pēmbé tí mbi pepe o : please don't make
 fun of my teeth!) (bara b : greetings!)
- oignon** [onyóó, ɔyóó, zió] N : an onion - some are grown locally, some
 are imported from the Chad - they are used to season sauces
- ole [ole, woli, wore, hure] V : to dry {tongana ndo acommencer tí ole,
 ma baa átongóro omaná só : when the place begins to dry up, you can
 see those six stars} (ngú ní aole : the stream dried up) - see kúru
 ólengó N : dried {ólengó susu : dried fish} - syn. kúru
- omaná [ɔnaná, omené] An : six - see óko for the number system
- omba [ɔmba, womba] N : father's sister, aunt - see famille for the
 kinship system
- óse [óse, úse, úsi, ósi, úse] An : two - used in sára na mabóko óse - see
óko for the number system
- osió [osió, ɔyóó, usió, usyó] An : four - see óko for the number system
- otá An : three - see óko for the number system
- oui** [wii] I : yes {oui, ma hinga aake tongasó : yes, you know it is like
 that} - opp. non

óke [óke, óke] An : how many, how much {ázo óke ayí tí sára : how many people want to do it?} {ngéré ní óke : how much is it?} {ngéré ní óke óke : how much are they apiece?} - (Grammar p. 57)

óko [óko, óko, óko] An : one, only, alone, a certain, each, together {préavis aake nze óko : notice is one month} {mbení alú gí óko : some planted only one} {marriage ní gí óko awe : there is only one marriage, that's all} {mo mú yoró óko na lá tí lo : take each (dose of) medicine on its day} {gí kaa tí da tí kóli óko awe : just the work of your husband's house only, that's all} {mbi báa méréngé kóli óko ... : I saw a certain youth ...} {mbi óko awe : only me} {lo goe lo óko na li tí hótó : he went alone to the top of a hill} {í yé samba óko : we drank beer together} - see also bé óko, lá óko, lége óko, óko óko, óko pepe, yí óko - the number system is as follows (Grammar p. 45-47) :

<u>óko</u> - one	<u>omaná</u> - six	<u>bale óko na ndó ní óko</u> - eleven
<u>óse</u> - two	<u>mbásámbará</u> - seven	<u>bale óse</u> - twenty
<u>otá</u> - three	<u>miombe</u> - eight	<u>ngbangbu óko</u> - one hundred
<u>osió</u> - four	<u>ngombáyá</u> - nine	<u>ngbangbu óko na (ndó ní) bale óko</u> -
<u>ukú</u> - five	<u>bale óko</u> - ten	one hundred and ten
		<u>kutu óko</u> - one thousand

the Sango numbers are used in counting most things, especially traditional things - they are used in counting money by páta's (five-franc units) - French numerals are used in counting units of the metric system, in dates, and in most cases for counting money in francs - there is a large area of fluctuation between the two systems, but they are never mixed

óko óko [ókoóko, kókókó] An : each and every one {zo óko óko aake gá : each and every person is coming}

óko pepe An : not at all, not a single one {lo kẹ́ tí fúta lo awe ? óko
pepe : did he refuse to pay him? not at all} {zo alíngbí tí gbánzì
na lo óko pepe : one can withhold it from him not at all} {awara
susu óko pepe : they found not a single fish}

okò ? ewe of etòl it qh ol} ewe etòl a ton ,lila te ton : an aqeq okò
 laubda it idgnila on} (lila te ton ?and ya of eadon ad his : aqeq
 aqeqa} (lila te ton . id avr) it bfohthw and ewe : aqeq okò of an
 {dant ofgnila a ton bawf yed : aqeq okò nawa

- P -

pá éré V : to slander, to accuse on suspicion, to destroy someone's
 reputation {zo ní apá éré tí lo : the man slandered him} - see
 also réclamer, which suggests accusation on more substantial
 grounds - sára makoró is to betray

paire** [péer] N : 1. sometimes, used as in French to mean a pair of
 anything
 2. more commonly : a pair of shoes {lo vo paire óko : he bought one
 pair of shoes} - this refers especially to European style shoes,
 while pápa is a sandal or thong and póró 3 and póró tí géré are
 general terms for any kind of shoe - French soulier is also used

pandé N : a pattern, a model, an image to be copied {mo sára na lége tí
 pandé ní : do it according to the pattern} - the model can be
 concrete, verbal, or ideal - photo suggests the image of the model
 in some contexts, though the two terms are not precisely correlated

pápa N : sandals, thongs - the traditional sandals had soles of rawhide
 and a simple leather thong passing between the toes - since the
 arrival of European goods, many have soles made of pieces of
 automobile tire casings and thongs of inner tube rubber - the term
 is also applied to imported plastic thongs - póró 3 and póró tí géré
 are general terms for shoes, while paire 2 is a pair of European
 shoes

papa V : to quarrel, to argue passionately and with bitter feelings
 {ála papa ngangó míngi : they quarreled bitterly} - dé kité means
 to object, to express doubts or reservations - tiri means to fight

papa N 1 : a quarrel, a bitter argument, a dispute {papa ake mbéni pape :
 there is no more quarrel} - this is more specific than ngbanga or
téné, which can also refer to purely abstract or dispassionate
 matters

papa N 2 : a spoon, a spoonful {mɔ mú papa tí fúku ókɔ : take one spoonful of flour}

papier** [papyée] N : 1. paper - syn. mbétí 1
2. a document - syn. mbétí 2

párá N : an egg

párá (tí) kóndɔ N : a chicken egg

pardon** [pardɔɔ] N : 1. an apology, an excuse - by extension, any expression of a humble recognition of dependence or obligation {mbi mú pardon míngi na mɔ : I humbly apologize to you} {mbi mú pardon míngi na Nzapá : I express my humble and unworthy dependence upon God}
2. used as an interjection : a placating, apologetic, or ingratiating expression {pardon ita, í sára téné só na pópó tí í pepe ? : pardon me, brother, but didn't we agree to this thing between ourselves?}

pardoner** [pardóné] V : to forgive, to pardon, to excuse {mɔ pardonner mbi monsieur : please forgive me, sir}

par jour** [parzúur] N : 1. a daily wage, as of a laborer {par jour tí ála ake ndé : their daily wage is different} - see nginza, payer, fúta

2. also used, as in French, as a complement to the verb : by the day {amú na mbi nginza gí par jour : they just pay me by the day}

pási N : suffering, especially that occasioned by burdensome toil {pási tí yɛ sí mbi eke báa só. kɔa tí mbi ahó ndó tí mbi : what suffering I am experiencing! my work is too much for me} - used mostly in the expression báa pásí, to experience suffering {í báa pásí na bí ngbii, ndá adé, í wara yí pepe : we toiled all night, and at dawn we hadn't caught anything} - finóo means pain, ponó and sáná suggest suffering caused by the ill-will or malice of others, and mawa means misery

passer** [pasée] V : 1. to pass, to pass by, to pass through, to happen {mbi báa yí só apasser : I watch what happens} {ála passer na yá tí

kótóró : they passed through the village} {mbi passer concours tí mbi : I passed my examination} - si V 1 means to happen, hó V means to pass or pass on, wara can mean to pass an examination

2. to sift, to strain through a sieve, a colander, or a strainer, to drain {mó pika, mó passer ngú ní kóé : you pound it and drain out the water (i.e. in a strainer)} {mó mú yengere mó passer na fúku ní : you take the sieve and sift the flour with it} - yengere V means to sift

3. a shortened form of repasser : to press clothes, to iron {mbi sára kóá tí passer bongó : I did the work of pressing clothes}

pasteur** [pastéer] N : among Protestants, an ordained minister, a pastor - an ordained Catholic priest is père, while in both communions an unordained leader or catechist is catéchiste

páta N : a unit of five francs - most retail prices are in multiples of five francs, and smaller pieces of money are very rarely used - money is often counted in páta's, usually with Sango numerals {páta osió : four páta's, i.e. twenty francs - see franc, bon N, fúta, payer, nginza, ngéré, vo, ká V, vo ngéré, which all express financial concepts

pátará N : a die for gambling {lo nzí nginza na pátará : he stole money with dice} - see píka pátará

payer** [payée] : to pay, as for work or goods, to recompense for services or damages {lo payer nginza na ázo tí kusára : he paid money to the workmen} {lo payer impôt : he paid taxes} - syn. fúta - see also nginza, franc, páta, bon, par jour, vo, ká, vo ngéré, ngéré, which express financial concepts

pé kamba V : to twist rope, to make rope by twisting fibers - há is a more general verb, including the notions of weaving and plaiting

pendere [pendere, pendere] An : 1. young, youth {ápendere agá : the young (people) came} - used especially in pendere kóli, pendere wále
2. beautiful, beauty {pendere bongó : beautiful clothes} {ála báa pendere tí kótóró : they saw the beauty of the village} {pendere bíá :

a beautiful song} {mbi eke pendere mingi : I am very beautiful} -

nzoní is a much less specific partial synonym - see zo

pendere kóli N : a young man, a youth, a male adolescent - in songs,
sometimes kóli pendere - kpíngba kóli is a mature man, pendere wále
is a young girl, mérenyé is a child

pendere wále N : a young girl, a young woman, a female adolescent
{ápendere wále asára kóbe : the young girls made food} - masía means
specifically an unmarried girl of marriageable age - pendere kóli
is a young man, mérenyé is a child, kótá wále is an old woman

penser** [pasée, panzée] V : to think, to consider, to meditate {mbi
penser mo eke na téné tí tene : I think you have something to say}
{mo penser tongana yé : what do you think?} {mbi penser mbi tene ... :
I think ...} {mbi penser téné ní gbá : I considered the matter in
vain} {lo penser ngbii : he meditated for a while} - syn. b'anda, báa 7,
báa ... tene, báa tongana, há, gí bé

péré N : a generic term for grass {tongana coton ní asungba awe, mo goe
na yá tí ngonda tí gí péré tí sakpá ní : when the cotton bolls burst,
you go into the bush to hunt for grass for the baskets} - various
kinds of grass have specific uses :
bebé is a grass used as a roofing material
nzanza is a coarse, tough grass used to make large heavy-duty baskets,
fences, and granary walls
sosongo is a kind of reed used in making the framework of a roof before
tying on the bébé

père** [péer, lepéer] N : 1. a Catholic ordained priest - most priests
are European, but a few are Africans - Protestant ordained leaders
are called pasteur, and lay leaders in both churches are called
catéchiste

2. by extension : the Catholic church or mission {mbi sára école na
père : I went to school at the Catholic mission}

peut-être** [petétre, pötétre] C : perhaps, possibly {peut-être, tongana
mbi kúi na deux heures ... : perhaps, if I die in the early afternoon ...}

{peut-être bé tí lo ayí mọ pepe : possibly he doesn't love you} -
syn. hínga pepe

pé V : 1. to wave the hand, to beckon or signal with the hand {mbi pé
tí tí mbi sí ázo ahínga mbi sára téné pepe : I signal with my hand
so that people will realize I can't talk}
2. to winnow grain and other kinds of food {lo pé saleté tí sindi :
he winnowed the chaff of the sesame} {lo pé kóá tí bobo : he winnowed
the wings of the termites} - diki is a syn. - the winnowing is done
by letting the grain fall into the wind from a broad woven scoop -
sosó means to thresh, to pound the grain before winnowing

pekó [pekó, pekó, pekó, pikó, pikó, pokó, pokó] N : 1. the back, as a
part of the anatomy {lo kpaka pekó tí lo : he scraped his back} -
ngbundá and ndá refer to the lower back, the hips, the buttocks - see
téré 1

2. the rest, the following portion, the follow-up of a communication
{lo sára pekó tí mbéti ní : he wrote the rest of the letter} {mamá
asára pekó ní : mother followed it (i.e. the letter) up} - cf. ndá 3
which refers to the meaning of the communication

3. used in a tí phrase, as the complement of a noun : following,
next, subsequent {dimanche tí pekó : the following Sunday, next
Sunday}

pekó (ní/tí) N : used frequently in a na 3 phrase : after, afterwards,
behind, in back of {na pekó ní, mbi sára kọa : afterwards, I worked}
{mamá asára téné na pekó (ní) : mother spoke afterwards} {wále tí lo
así na pekó tí í : his wife arrived after us} {aéré ndo ná pekó tí
lo : they called out after him} {kapita só aske na pekó tí makunzi :
the headman who is after the chief} {mbi dutí na pekó tí école : I
stayed behind the school} - see kírí na pekó, mú pekó, gá na pekó,
goe na pekó, tomba peko - syn. ndá ní - opp. devant, gbé lé

pekó ní anínga pepe Av : used pre-clausally soon afterwards - see nínga

pekó ... yó Av : used pre-clausally : a while later {pekó ní ayó kété ... :
some time later ...}

pémbé N : a tooth - kótá pémbé is a molar, kété pémbé is an incisor - see yángá the mouth

pémbé tí dole N : an elephant tusk

pepe [pepe, pepe, ape, epe] SP : the negative sentence particle (Grammar p. 148-152) - used generally at the end of the sentence, though a few particles can follow it {ála hé pémbé tí mbi pepe o : please don't laugh at my teeth} {mbi wara bongó pepe ma : I don't receive clothes} {gí ní laá pepe ? : isn't that just it?} {tongasó pepe, ka mbi mú : if it were not for that, I would have taken it} - see also óka pepe, hinga pepe, lingbi pepe, pekó ní aninga pepe

pete V : to pound, to crush by pounding, to mash {mo mú lé tí káráko, mo zó kóé awe, mo mú kugbé tí tomate mo pete da mo sára na potopóto : you take peanuts and roast them, you take tomato leaves and pound them into it and make a mash} - ne 3 and naka mean to crush by rolling - pete is used of relatively soft things, e.g. manioc, while soso means to thresh grain - píka 1 is a general term for pounding

photo** [fotóo] N : a photograph, a picture, an illustration {só photo tí lo : this is his photograph, his picture} {ngó tí Pierre aake tongana photo tí église : Peter's boat is like an illustration of the church} - pandé is a model, a pattern, though the two terms are not precisely correlated

1. píka [píka, péka] V : 1. to hit, to strike, to beat, to pound {ála píka mérangé só : they hit this child} {lo píka gozo : she beat the manioc} {lo píka ngo : he beat the drum} {lo píka kpí tí sindi : she pounded the sesame paste} - pete is a more specific term for pounding relatively soft foods, e.g. manioc, while soso means to thresh grain or to pound relatively hard foods - see also ngú ... píka
2. by extension, in a context of hunting : to kill {lo píka cochon ní na ngombe : he killed the pig with a gun}
3. by extension, in a context of building : to nail roofing to a house {lo píka da ní na tôle : he nailed sheet-metal roofing on the house}

píka berá V : to wage a war - see also goe berá na li tí, tiri, tí na ndo

píka ... bíá V : to play music, either on an instrument or on a record player {mbi yí tí píka na ma pendere bíá : I want to play for you a beautiful song} - French disque can replace bíá - kunde, a sort of traditional guitar, and ngombá, a sort of xylophone, are the two major instruments with variable pitch, while ngó is the drum - sanze is a sort of portable instrument consisting of iron keys fastened to a hollow wooden body - úlu is used of wind instruments

píka mbétí V : to type, to print {lo píka mbétí só na machine : he typed this letter on a typewriter} - sára mbétí is to write, díka mbétí is to read

píka ndembú V : to play soccer, by far the most popular of imported sports or games - from the fact that balls are made of rubber, ndembú - also píka ballon

píka pátará V : to gamble with dice, to throw the dice {lo píka pátará : he threw the dice}

píka senga V : to telephone, to telegraph {mbi yí tí píka senga na ma : I want to phone you} - from senga, a wire

píndírí (tí wá) N : embers, usually smoldering - lé tí wá is glowing coals, charbon is charcoal

piquet** [pikée] N : 1. a stake, e.g. to mark the corners of a lot
2. a field of the legally prescribed size for planting cotton, in the days of compulsory cultivation of cotton - the fields were marked off and the work supervised by petty agricultural officials called bóí coton

piqûre** [pikúur] N : a hypodermic injection - European medicine is classified into piqûre and quinine, which means any form of dry pellets of medicine - the injection is popularly ascribed much greater potency - yoró is a generic term for medicine

pitáa N : fornication, adultery - see sára pitáa, wále tí pitáa

- pitó N : the foreskin - kéngé is the penis, fáa ganzá is to circumsize
- place** [pláse, plási] N : a place {mbi kẹ place tí mamá tí mbi : I have rejected my mother's (home) place} {mọ sí na place ní : you arrived at the place} - syn. ndo
- poche** [bózo] N : a pocket, a pocketbook, a wallet - by confusion of the French word with bozó, a carrying bag
- pointe** [pónte] N : a nail (for building)
- pont** [póp] N : a bridge - smaller bridges are often built of logs thrown across a stream slightly above the level of the water and covered with rocks and earth - such bridges are often washed out when the waters rise during the rainy season
- pópó N 1 : a horizontal or oblique ornamental scar on the cheek just below the eyes, esp. among the Yakoma
- pópó [pópó, pópó] N 2 : midst, middle - used with introductory na 3 : between, among {na pópó tí ála : among them} {na pópó tí lo na íta tí lo : between him and his brother} - syn. bé, milieu - used in pópó hótó
- pópó hótó N : a valley
- póró [póró, póró] N : 1. skin, hide, bark, shell {vurú póró : white skin} {póró tí ze : leopard hide} {póró tí kalá : snail shell}
2. leather, rawhide
3. a generic term for shoes {ála yú póró tí ála : they put on their shoes} - syn. póró tí géré - pápa are sandals or thongs, paire 2 are European style shoes - French soulier is also used
- póró tí géré N : shoes - syn. póró 3
- póró tí yángá N : a lip {póró tí yángá tí lo ane pepe : his lips are not thick} - yángá is the mouth
- póró tí zembe N : a sheath or scabbard for a knife, zembe
- poste** N : 1. [póost, lapóste, lapóstä] : a post-office, the post-office

department

2. [póst, póste] : an administrative center (Bossangoa poste : the administrative center of Bossangoa)

pousser** [púsu, pusée] V : 1. to push, to propel, to incite, to urge strongly, to impel (yí só apousser í, sí í sára kóá : this thing incited (or impelled) us to work) (lo pousser ngó na lé tí ngú : he propelled the boat over the water) - forcer means to compel - bi is used of propelling a boat

2. especially in injunctions : move over (mó pousser! : move over!)

ponó N : suffering, often such as results from the ill-will or malice of others, persecution - used in hú ponó, to suffer - syn. sána, yí tí vundú - finóo suggests physical pain, pási the suffering of burdensome toil, and mawa can mean misery

potopóto [potopóto, potopóto, papóto, parapóte] N : anything of a soft mushy consistency : mud, soft clay, mush, gruel (mó sára potopóto kété, lo yó, sí lo te kpingba kóbe : you make a little gruel, and he drinks it before eating solid food) (ála sára kótá potopóto, amonter na ndúzú : they made a great (pile of) mud, it went up into the air) (mbi fáa kéké tí potopóto : I cut the poles (upon which is put) the mud (i.e. to build a wall)) - kóbe is the staple dough of manioc or mil, kása is a sauce, ndóo is potter's clay

préfecture** [prefektüür] N : the name given since independence to the former région, one of the approximately ten administrative units into which the Central African Republic is divided - each is subdivided into two or more units called sous-préfecture - the head of a préfecture is a préfet - see république for the administrative organization of the country

préfet** [prefé] N : the career civil servant who is the appointed administrative head of a préfecture - before independence, the French official who filled this office was a chef de région or commandant - see république for the administrative organization of the country

président** [prezidáa, preizdáa] N : 1. the president of the Republic, often called président tí république - see république for the administrative organization of the country
 2. the elected chief official of a collectivité, a sort of township chairman - usually called président tí collectivité, he replaced after independence the roughly hereditary canton 2

propre** [próp, própre, própro] Av : clean, properly {mo sukúla propre : wash it clean} {mbi hinga Sango bien propre : I know Sango really properly} {mo tó kóbe nzoní propre : cook food nicely and cleanly}
 -opp. saleté

pulú nzo (purú nzó ?) N : cold corn meal mush cut into slices and sold

pupu N : wind - the proper verb is ia {pupu aia : the wind blew}

pupu sése N : dust - other kinds of powder include : fúku, a flour, meal, or similar fine powder - mbúlú, or gunpowder - mbíó, a red powder used to adorn the body of participants in a certain possession dance - mbutu, or sand

purú N : 1. excrement - sára purú is to defecate - sára purú na méné is to have dysentery

2. by extension : slag from smelting, or any waste of similar consistency {purú ní así gígí kóé, na taá wé ní ake : all the slag runs out, and the true iron remains}

qualité** [kalitée] N : sort, kind - a sophisticated syn. for mará, the general classificatory term - used especially in speaking of merchandise

quand même** [kaméem] C : 1 even, even if {quand même mbi yú pepe tñé aake pepe : even if I don't wear it there isn't any problem} - syn. même

2. nevertheless {quand même mbi ngbá tí sára école : nevertheless I continued to go to school}

quartier** [kartyée] N : an administrative subdivision of a large city, e.g. Bangui - frequently based on ethnic divisions - each quartier has its chief, makunzi - see république for the administrative organization of the country

quinine** [kiniin] N : originally, quinine - by extension : any sort of dry pellet of medicine to be taken by mouth : pill, tablet, capsule - the other major classification of European medicine is piqûre, a hypodermic injection - yoró is a generic term for medicine

quitter** [kitée] V : to leave {mbi quitter na Rafai : I left Rafai} {lo quitter wále tí lo : he left his wife} - syn. londó 2, zia - goe is a much more general term

- R -

réclamer** [klamée, kalamée, karamée, kalamé] V : to accuse {wále ní aréclamer kóli tí lo : the woman accused her husband} {lo réclamer mbi na zo só séngé séngé : he accused me to this man absolutely for no reason} - pá éré is a syn. suggesting more specifically idle, malicious, and unfounded accusation and slander - sára makoró is to betray - zí na ngbanga means to acquit

région** [rezyóq] N : before independence, the largest administrative unit within the country - replaced since independence by the préfecture - the administrative head of the région was a chef de région or commandant - see république for the administrative organization of the country

repasser V : see passer 3

république** [repüblík, republik, larepublík] N : a republic - esp. the Central African Republic, properly called République Centrafricaine - the administrative organization of the country, before and after independence, with the terms corresponding horizontally, is as follows :

before independence		since independence	
unit:	chief officer:	unit:	chief officer:
Oubangui-Chari	<u>gouverneur</u>	RCA	<u>président</u> tí RCA
<u>région</u>	<u>commandant</u>	<u>préfecture</u>	<u>préfet</u>
<u>district</u>	<u>commandant</u>	<u>sous-préfecture</u>	<u>sous-préfet</u>
<u>canton</u>	<u>canton</u>	<u>collectivité</u>	<u>président</u> tí c.
<u>ville</u>	<u>maire</u>	<u>ville</u>	<u>maire</u>
<u>kótóró</u> (village)	<u>makunzi</u>	<u>kótóró</u>	
<u>quartier</u> (ward)	<u>makunzi</u>	<u>quartier</u>	

the few larger cities have always had a separate European type municipal structure, and have been called ville

ri V : to be thoroughly crushed so that no grainy particles remain {káráko ní ari nzoní míngi : the peanuts were very smoothly crushed} - used

especially of oleaginous material, kpi - ng 3, naka refer to the crushing process by rolling, ri refers to the resulting state

riga N : a throwing knife - usually an F-shaped iron blade about eighteen inches long in its largest dimension and used as a projectile in war and hunting - see zambe for a list of weapons

- S -

- sá V : to pour, to spill {ngú asá na sése : the water spilled on the ground}
 {zo asá méné tí mbéni zo : someone spilled the blood of another
 person} {lo sá ngú na sembé : he poured water into a dish} - yuru
 means to leak or seep, gara means to flow (as blood in the veins),
sja means to flow (as a river), túku means to tip over, to dump out
- sá N : salt made by burning the leaves of certain plants and leaching the
 ashes - also called yíngó tí ngonda or yíngó tí basánze - in contrast
 to adorónu, or imported rock salt - yíngó is the generic term for salt
- sac** [sáki] N : 1. a sack, a bag
 2. much more frequently : a sum of one thousand francs {manoeuvre ate
 gí sac óse séngé : a laborer receives (lit eats) only two thousand
 francs} - see nginza, money, and páta, franc
- sái [sáy] N : the yeast used to brew biribiri, a kind of beer - mamá tí
mápa is the kind of yeast used in bread
- sakpá N : any sort of basket - the largest baskets are about eighteen
 inches high and three feet across, are made of nzanza and are used
 for carrying raw cotton to market - a smaller open-work basket lined
 with leaves is used for transporting manioc flour
- saleté** [saltée, sartée, sardé, saleté, salité] An : 1. dirty {mbi eke
 taá saleté : I was really dirty} {mo sukúla téré ní pepe, angbá
 saleté : you didn't wash the sides of it, it remains dirty} - opp.
propre
 2. in talking of, e.g. a cotton garden : weeds
- sambá N : a co-wife, i.e. the mutual relationship of the several wives
 of a polygynous husband {mamá amú tí lo, na ásamba tí lo amú tí ála :
 mother took hers, and her co-wives took theirs} {na heure só wále adú
 só, ásambá aaider lo : at the time when a woman is giving birth, the
 co-wives help her} - wále is a wife, kóli a husband

samba N : a generic term for fermented, especially brewed beverages

{samba asára lo : beer is affecting him, i.e. he is drunk} {í bǒngbi téré í yǒ samba lége ókò : we got together and drank beer} - samba includes bière imported beer, biribiri a grain beer, duma mead, lokpotò a beer made of corn, kanguya palm wine, vin imported wine, and by extension háráge and ngbágo distilled beverages

sambéla [sambéla, sambúla, sambúra] V : to pray, to worship {mbi goe na kéké tí sambéla mbéni pape : I no longer go to a tree to pray} {í sambéla Nzapá lá káé : we always worship (or pray to) God} {mò sambéla ngbangatí mbi : pray for me} -syn. dikò 3 - sepála and gonda mean to praise, but the first applies to God, and the second to creatures - zúku means to bow, to kneel (as in worship)

sáná N : suffering, usually caused by someone's ill-will or malice, persecution {lo yí mò pape laá aake sára mò sáná só : it's because he doesn't love you that he causes you so much suffering} - ponó and yí tí vandú are syn. - finóo suggests physical pain, pási the pain of burdensome toil, and mawa means misery

sandúku N : a wooden box or chest, a wooden home-made suitcase {sandúku tí nginza : a money box} {ála zía na yá tí sandúku tí ála : they put it into their chest} - boite is smaller and usually not wooden, caisse is a crate

sangbí lége N : a cross-roads - syn. croisement

sa (ngú) V : to swim {lo hinga tí sa ngú : he knows how to swim} {lo sa jusqu'à na mbé ngú : he swam all the way over to the other side of the river}

sanze* N : a small musical instrument on which iron keys are plucked with the fingers and the sound is amplified by a hollow, oblong wooden body to which the keys are fastened - see pika biá

sánzó N : pus, or other thick milky discharge from the body - syn. ngú vurú

sára N : the itch, scabies - an eruptive, contagious, and itchy skin disease, very prevalent among children

- sára [sára, sála, sár] V : 1. a virtually empty verb meaning basically to do or make - hence, depending on the object : to make, to create, to fabricate, to manufacture, to prepare, to constitute, to institute, to establish, to build, to erect, etc. {ála sára yí ní gbá : they (tried to) do the thing in vain} {ála sára da : they built a house} {fadé í sára gouvernement : we will establish a government} {fadé ála sára tongana yé : what will you do?} {lo sára sioní na mbi : he acted very badly toward me, i.e. treated me badly} {gí Nzapá óko alingbi tí sára só : only God can do that} {wále só asára ta : this woman is making a pot} {mo sára potopoto na lo : make him gruel} {í yí tí sára yáká : we want to make a garden} {ála sára wá : they made a fire} - leke can be used in many of the same ways - see also the many entries in which sára is the first element
2. with na and a noun denoting a person : to serve, to work for {mbi sára na lo ngú otá : I served him (or worked for him) three years} - see also sára kpa, sára bóí
3. with a noun denoting a function or office : to serve as {lo sára pasteur tí í : he served as our pastor}
4. with a subject denoting a state, an emotion, an illness, or a circumstance and an object denoting a person : to affect {kobéla asára lo : disease affected him, i.e. he was sick} {mbito asára mbi : fear affected me, i.e. I was afraid} {dé asára mbi : cold affects me, i.e. I am cold} {nzala tí mo asára mbi : desire for you affects me, i.e. I miss you} {samba asára lo : beer affects him, i.e. he is drunk} - see ngonzo ... sára - where the emotions are concerned, gbó expresses a stronger idea - see bé for the emotions, kobéla for the illnesses
5. with a noun denoting a period of time : to spend {mbi sára ngú otá ká : I spent three years there}
6. when the context, linguistic or situational, makes clear what the complement is, sára can substitute for any of the entries in which it is the head word { (kpa ... mbi sára : ... I worked)

sara N : a forked pole or stick, esp. the kind that serves as an upright post supporting cross-beams in construction

sára attention** [tasyɔɔ] V : to be careful, to watch out, to pay attention {lo sára attention pepe : he wan't careful}

sára bé óko V : to have fellowship, to agree with {ála sára bé óko : they had fellowship} - sára sɔ́ngó, gá sɔ́ngó suggest a reconciliation after conflict

sára bíá V : to sing - syn. hé bíá

sára bon V : to incur debt, to buy on credit, to take out a loan {lo sára bon tí boíte otá : he bought three boxes on credit}

sára bóí V : to act as a servant, to kowtow {mbi língbi tí sára bóí na mɔ pepe : I refuse to kowtow to you} - i is a servant

sára búbá V : to act foolishly or irresponsibly {tongana mbi sára bubá na sése tí babá tí mbi, fadé áíta tí mbi kóé aske zonga mbi : if I act irresponsibly in the land of my father, all my brothers will curse me}

sára école V : to go to school {mbi sára école na père : I go to school at the Catholic mission}

sára goigói V : to be lazy {ála sára goigói fadesó míngi : people are very lazy nowadays} - see also sára mbáná, which suggests a more willful or malicious laziness

sára íno V : to urinate - a euphemistic syn. is goe (na) ngonda

sára isoró V : to converse, to chat - syn. causer - see also isoró, sára téné

sára kái V : to paddle (a canoe), to row (a boat)

sára kirimba* V : to agree with a co-worker to give him all or a share of one's wages one month in return for all or a share of his wages the next month - by this reciprocal arrangement, the various members of a group of co-workers in turn have a fairly large amount of money at one time - see fúta, payer, nginza, tɛ nginza

sára kóbe V : to prepare food - syn. leke kóbe - mé kóbe means specifically to prepare the staple dough

sára kɔa, sára kusára V : to work

sára kótóró V : to establish permanent residence {lo sára kótóró na Bambari : he established permanent residence at Bambari} - see kótóró, dutí 2, lángó 3

sára makoró V : to betray {lo sára makoró tí mbi sí mbunzú atomba mbi : he betrayed me so that the white man fired me} - pá éré means more specifically to accuse idly and maliciously, réclamer means to accuse in general

sára manière** [mayére] V : to use ingenuity, guile, wiles, or tricks {kpíkara asára manière, lo lángó tongana lo kúi : the pangolin used guile, he played dead} {fadé mbi sára manière tí báa : I'll use ingenuity to see} - see manière, gí lége

sára mariage** [mariyázi] V : to marry - syn. marier

sára matánga V : to celebrate

sára mawa V : 1. to cause suffering or misery {kobéla só asára mawa míngi : this disease causes much misery} - see báa finóo, báa pási, sára sáná for related ideas

2. to pity, to have mercy {mo sára mawa na mbi : have pity on me}

sára mbadi V : to practise divination {lo sára mbadi ní : he practised divination about it} - syn. báa mbadi

sára mbáná V : to be wilfully or maliciously lazy or idle, to act irresponsibly, to malingering, to featherbed {mérangé ní asára mbáná na lo : the youth was deliberately idle for him} - stronger than sára goigói

sára mbétí V : to write {lo hinga tí sára mbétí : he knows how to write} - díko mbétí is to read, píka mbétí is to type or print

sára na mabóko óse V : to do things half-heartedly, with a divided allegiance or attention {lo sára na mabóko óse pepe, mais na bé óko : he did not do it half-heartedly, but with a will} - opp. bé óko

sára ndókó V : of a plant : to bloom - ndókó is a flower

sára ngangó V : to treat harshly, to do violence, to be violent, to violate, to use force on someone (íadé í sára ngangó na ázo só ayí tí sára sioní na í, í tumba ála : we will treat harshly those who wish to treat us wrongly, we will drive them out)

sára ngiá V : 1. to have good fellowship, to chat (í sára ngiá, í te kóbe óko : we chatted, we ate together) - causer and sára isoró are more strictly restricted to the conversational aspect of the relationship
2. to play, to have fun (ála sára ngiá míngi na lá tí matánga : they had a lot of fun on the day of the festival)

sára ngonzo V : to be angry (ála sára ngonzo, ála commencer tí tiri : they were angry, they began to fight) - syn. ngonzo ... sára - ngonzo ... gbó is stronger

sára pekó ní V : to act in response, to follow up, to go on with (mamá asára pekó ní : mother responded to it) (í eke sára na ála pekó tí téné ní : we are going on with (ensuing) matters) - see pekó (ní/tí)

sára pitáa V : to commit fornication or adultery

sára purú V : to defecate - a euphemistic syn. is goe (na) ngonda

sára purú na méné V : to have dysentery

sára sáná V : to persecute, to cause suffering to another (lo sára sáná na mọ : he caused you much suffering) - hú ponó is the subjective experience of such persecution

sára sǎngó V : to make peace, to be reconciled (ála sára sǎngó : they were reconciled) - gá sǎngó is a syn. - sára bé óko suggests harmony without preceding conflict - leke téné means to compose a difference, to bring a dispute to an end

sára téné V : to speak, to talk (mọ sára téné na mbi : speak to me) (kété mérengé asára téné pepe : small children don't talk) (lo sára téné kiríkiri : he's talking nonsense) - tene means to say, to tell - causer, sára isoró, sára ngiá mean to chat, to converse, to visit - húnda is to ask, kirí téné is to answer, dé kité is to object, dé kǎngó or toto is to shout

sára vene, sára wátáká V : to lie - syn. tene vene

sauvage** [sováaz, sowási] An : pertaining to traditional ways, in a strongly pejorative sense : barbarous, old-fashioned, etc. {yíngó tí sauvage : home-made traditional salt} {babá tí mbi aake sauvage pepe : my father wasn't a savage} - much stronger than basárze, which applies only to things - opp. civiliser and service

savon** [savóq] N : soap - one can find imported soap, locally-made European type soap, and locally-made Muslim soap

sé V : to be bitter {fúku tí gozo asé : manioc flour is bitter} {quinine asé : quinine is bitter} - kpi means to be sour, nzeré to be sweet

seko N : chimpanzee, a relatively rare animal . see yama tí ngonda

semaine** [seméen, seméan, sāméen] N : a week - dimanche 2 is more common

séndá tí géré N : 1. the sole of the foot - see géré

2. a footprint - see also géré tí yama

senga N : a wire - used in pika senga, to telephone or telegraph

séngé [séngé, séngé] An : a general term denoting the absence of something which is specified by the linguistic and situational context - hence : naked, worthless, purposeless, senseless, insignificant, free, well, for nothing, etc. {séngé zo : an ordinary person, i.e. one without distinction} {lo réclamer mbi séngé séngé ; he accused me without reason} {só séngé : that is nothing} {só aake kusára tí séngé pepe : that is not work without value} {yí tí séngé : a worthless thing} {mo má séngé : you heard without difficulty} {zo aake hánda mo séngé : someone is simply tricking you} {téré tí mbi aake séngé : my body is naked, or my body is well (i.e. absence of clothes or disease, depending on context)} {mbi eke séngé : I'm well} {mbi te gí ngumá séngé : I ate greens without anything else} {zia lo séngé : leave him alone} {lo mú na mbi séngé : he gave it to me free, i.e. for nothing}

sentinelle** [satinéel, sinzíri] N : a watchman

sepála V : to praise {ála sepála Nzará : they praised God} - used only of

God, while gonda is used of others - sambéla and diko mean to pray, to worship

service** [serviis, serevisi, serawisi, sarawisi] N : 1. employment in a European-type job, especially away from home (tongana mbi wara service, sí mbi goe na Bangui : if I get a job, then I'll go to Bangui) (í gá na service, sí í hinga Sango : we got a job, and then learned Sango)
2. pertaining to civilization or to European ways (na service atene, mo vo sése tí mo, mais na kótóró tí mbi, í vo sése vóngó pepe : according to civilized ways, you buy land, but in my village, we didn't buy land) (kóbe tí service : European or civilized food) - syn. siviliser - opp. basánze, and esp. sauvage

sése [sése, sísi, sése] N : earth, world, land, soil, ground (mo kinda mbi na sése : you knocked me to the ground) (ázo kóé tí sése só : all the people of the world) (sése tí République Centrafricaine : the land of the Central African Republic) (sése tí áGbanu : the land of the Gbanu) (koa tí sése : the work of the soil) (yama tí sése : land animals) - zia ... na sése means to set aside - bi ... na sése means to throw away, to discard, to abandon - used with na 3

sembé [sembé, sembé, sambé] N : a dish - dú sembé is a deep dish, kopo is also a relatively deep container - kolóngó is a wide flat container, a platter or basin - kangú is a gourd dipper, ngángá is a gourd bottle - ta is a pot or kettle - gbara búba is a frying pan

sé téré V : to recline (lo sé téré tí lo : he reclined) - lángó refers primarily to sleeping

sí V 1 : 1. of time or place : to arrive, to reach (mamá alóndó na Bangui así na ndo só : mother left Bangui and arrived here) (mbi sí awe : I have arrived) (mbéti aake sí na í hio pepe : letters don't reach us quickly) (heure tí école así : the time for school has arrived) (así na lá kúí : it came to sunset, i.e. sunset came) (así na heure tí nzala : a time of famine came) - see also gá 2 and gá 3 - goe sí under goe considers the action from the point of departure - opp.

léndó: quitter, zia

2. to appear {gbikí así singó na téré tí mbi : sweat appeared on my body} - syn. sí gígí

sí V 2 : to fill, to be filled {ngú así ta : the water filled the pot}
{bé tí mbi así na ngiá : my heart is full of joy}

sí C : a sequential connective (Grammar p. 93-99) : and so, so then, so that {mó túku na yá tí kopo, sí mó yó nzoní : you pour it into a container, and then you drink it} {aake nzoní mó gá mó pika lé tí mbi sí mbi hínga mó eke méréngé : it's good for you to come and slap my face so that I'll know that you are just a child} {abáa pási míngi na yá tí ngú bale osiό, sí agá kótá : it suffered much for forty years, and then became great}

2. optionally follows pre-clausal constructions {sό vení (sí) aake nzoní : this is what is good} {birí (sí) madame amú bongó na mbi : it was yesterday that Madam gave me the clothes}

sí gígí V : to emerge, to come into view, to appear, to come out {yama ní aake sí gígí na mbéni kété dú : the animal was coming out of a small hole} {tongana mbi sí gígí na gbé tí kéké awe ... : when I had emerged from under the trees ...} {ábákoyá así gígí míngi na yáká ní : the baboons came into view in the field in great numbers}

síliki N : a head kerchief, a head scarf - worn almost universally by women and girls, esp. when they are dressed up

sindi N : sesame - a widespread secondary crop, part of the group of oleaginous foods called kpi N - an ingredient of many sauces - see kása

singó N : arrival {singó tí mó na Bangui ... : upon your arrival in Bangui ...}
- from sí V 1

sinzíri N : see sentinelle

sioní [sioní, sioní, syoní, sóní, sóní] An : bad, evil, in a very general sense {zo tí sioní : an evil person} {mbéti tí sioní : a bad letter or book} {ála báa tongana sioní : they considered it bad} {teneti sioní tí mó ... : because of your badness ...} {kobéla tí sioní : a bad

sickness} {aake sioní mingi : it is very bad} {ála sára sioní mingi na í : they did us much evil, they treated us badly} - kirikiri means crooked, either physically or morally - opp. nzoní

siriri N : peace, concord, harmony {mbi sára siriri na lo : I achieved harmony with him} - syn. sóngó - see also bé ókò - opp. berá, tiri, papa N ¹ which denote various kinds of conflict

sisi N : thorns, burrs that grow close to the ground - see kii

só An : a deictic and "relative" adjunctive (Grammar p. 47-53) : this, that {apíka mérengé só : they hit this girl} {da só : this house} {wále só amú kóli : this woman took a husband} {témé só wé aake na yá ní : a stone in which there is iron, lit. this stone, there is iron in it} {na lá ní só mbi goe ... : on the day when I went ..., lit. on that day, I went ...} {só aake kusára tí wále : that is the work of women} {só séngé : that's all right} {só mo tene awe (só), fadé mbi sára : since you have said this, I will do it} - used in lá só, ndo só

so V : to save, to rescue {lo so mbi na mabóko tí bámará : he rescued me from the lion}

sóá N : a needle - fú V ¹ is to sew

soigner** [swanyée, swáyéé, sɔyéé] V : to care for (a sick person), to treat medically {docteur asoigner mbi gbá : the doctor treated me in vain} {ála soigner téré tí ázo : they treat the bodies of people} - ga va, and other verbs listed under it, mean to recover

sóngó N : peace, harmony {ámbeńí amú kusára tí gbiá na berá, ámbení amú na sòngó : some seized the power of a king by war, others took it peacefully} - syn. siriri - bé ókò means concord, unity of feeling, fellowship - opp. berá, tiri, papa N ¹ which denote conflict - see also gá sòngó, sára sòngó

sónzó N : the African hunting dog (Lycaon picta) - a wild dog

sous-préfecture** [suprɛfɛktúr] N : an administrative unit intermediate between the préfecture and the collectivité - before independence it

was called district - the chief officer is a sous-préfet - see république for the administrative organization of the country

sous-préfet** [supreffɛ] N : the appointed career civil service chief officer of a sous-préfecture - see république for the administrative organization of the country

sɔ [sɔ, sɔ] V : to hurt, to ache, to pain, to harm {kobéla ní asɔ ahɔ ndó ní : this disease hurts beyond measure} {koa tí mbunzú asɔ zo míngi : work for white people hurts people greatly} {li tí mbi asɔ mbi : my head hurts me} - see sɔ bé, bé ... sɔ

sɔ́ N : a trap, a cord snare {tongana mɔ goe na yáká tí mbéni zo, na yama aake na sɔ́ tí lo, mɔ mú pepe : if you go to the field of another person, and there is an animal in his trap, do not take it} - syn. ngindí, kámba 3

sɔa V 1 : to comb {mbi sɔa li tí mbi : I combed my head} - see sɔa li

sɔa V 2 : to flow {ngú ní asɔa gí na place óko : the water flowed in only one place} - gara is used of blood - yuru means to leak or seep, sá means to pour or spill liquid

sɔa li N : a comb

sɔ bé V : to grieve {téné sɔ asɔ bé tí mbi míngi : this matter grieves me greatly}

sóko N : rust, corrosion {sóko ate wé ní : the rust has eaten the iron}

sósó V : to break wind

soso V : to thresh, to pound grain and similar foods so as to loosen the husks before winnowing - this is done in a mortar, kpu - to winnow is diki or pé 2 - pɛtɛ is to mash or pound soft food, e.g. manioc - ne, neka mean to crush by rolling

sosongo N : a reed (Pennisetum purpureum Schum. and Thon. ?) which is used in making the framework of a roof - these reeds are tied horizontally at close intervals across the rafters, and the grass is then tied to the reeds - see péré for a list of grasses - see li tí da

su I : an injunction or warning to a child to desist from something he is about to do, e.g. make noise, take something, or eat before being given permission - hence : hush, stop {su mérengé mɔ dutí : hush, child, sit down}

su V : to shine - used only of the sun {mɔ kú jusqu'à lá asu na tére ní : wait until the sun shines beside it} - zá is used of other shiny or shining things

súku V : 1. to swell {yá tí mbi asúku : my stomach swelled}
2. followed by na and a noun denoting a person : to scold, to reprimand angrily {mɔ eke súku na lo : you scold him} - syn. zínfo 2 is less strong

sukúla [sukúla, sukúra] V : 1. to wash {lo sukúla tére tí lo : he washed his body} {lo sukúla bongó : he washed clothes} - syn. sukúla ngú
2. more generally : to cleanse, to sweep, to weed (a garden) - balayer is a more common syn.

sukúla ngú V : to bathe {tongana mɔ lóndó na kɔa, mɔ gá mɔ sukúla ngú, mɔ yú bongó tí mɔ : when you've left the job, you come and bathe and put on your clothes}

sukúla photo V : to develop and print photographs - see photo, tirer photo

súmá N : a dream, a vision - dreams are considered to be communications from the spirits of persons seen, especially those of dead relatives (tóró) - a great deal of weight is attached to dreams, in both a literal and symbolic interpretation - syn. mosúmá, báa li

sumári [sumári, sumbári] N : a male secret society originating among the Banda but prevalent among a number of other tribes - members are initiated, and are given special names - they participate in a number of lodge activities, including a secret language and a special dance {lo goe sumári awe : he's gone sumári, i.e. has become a member, or has gone to participate in the activities} {ála eke dó sumári : they are dancing the sumári} - see dódó - lengé is a Yakoma female society

sungba V : to burst {coton asungba : the cotton bolls burst} {békpa

asungba : the thunder bursts)- see the ideophone kpu', which expresses an explosive sound

súru V : to split {gbánda ní aake súru : the net was splitting} {asúru na mbi fondo óko : he split a plantain for me} {lo yí tí súru na kéké : he wants to split a log with it} {ála súru téré tí ála, ála fáa téré tí ála : they cut their bodies} {tongana mo súru téré tí mo pepe, kóli alíngbi tí kamáta mo tongana wále pepe : if you don't cut your body, i.e. so as to make ornamental scars, men won't marry you} - fáa denotes a crosswise cut, when it is distinguished from súru, which is not always the case

súru (ndó tí) mabóko V : to vaccinate - see ndó tí mabóko

susu N : a fish - eaten fresh or dried as a secondary element in the diet {finí susu : fresh fish} {kúrú tí susu : dried fish} - see gi susu and éré ngú for information on fishing - capitaine is a Nile perch, gugúru refers to small fish

- T -

ta [ta] N : a pot, a kettle {mbi hinga lége tí sára ta pepe : I don't know how to make a pot} {lo kpoko na yá tí ta : it boils in the pot} - traditional pots were made of a special clay (ndóo) by women who specialized in pottery - used primarily for cooking and carrying water - a pot was built up of successive windings of long thin strips of clay rolled out between the hands - after firing, it was glossy black - increasingly, in the present situation, imported kettles of enamel ware, aluminum, or other metals, are replacing traditional pots for cooking, and five-gallon oil cans are used for carrying water - ta tí bésánze is a traditional pot, ta tí vɔrɔɔ is a pot kept for guests, and ta wé is a metal kettle

taá Au : true, real, genuine, truly, really, genuinely {ála hinga taá éré tí lo pepe : they didn't know his true name} {taá yángá tí mbi ake Zande : my real language is Zande} {taá kpa tí ndao : the real work of a blacksmith} {taá mamá tí mbi : my real mother} {mbi sára taá na mabóko : I really did it with my hands, or I did it with my own hands} {mbi eke taá saleté : I was really dirty} - (Grammar p. 64) - used in taá téné

taá téné N : truth, true speech or saying {só taá téné, wala vene ? : is that the truth, or a lie?} {taá téné tí mɔ ? : is your speech the truth?} {taá téné : it's the truth} - opp. vene, wátáká

taba N : a sheep - African sheep are tall, thin, and straight-haired rather than woolly - they are not nearly as common as ngása, goats - called by Protestants ngása Ngbaka (i.e. Ngbaka goats)

tágba N : a kob, a medium-sized antelope of the genus Adenota - see yama tí ngonda

tailleur** [tayéer] N : a tailor - every village has one or more of these men who, with a hand-cranked portable sewing machine, make the dresses,

blouses, shirts, trousers, shorts, and loincloths needed by the inhabitants - the customer usually provides the cloth - the tailor works from another piece of clothing as a model rather than from a paper pattern - this is one of the most common European-type specializations and an occupation of some prestige

tambéla [tambéla, tambúla, tambíla] V : 1. to walk, to travel {mo tambéla ngbii, mo sí na yáká : you walk for a while, and then arrive at the field} {mbi tambéla na li ní ; I walked at the head} - fona means to walk about, kpé means to run, goe means to go, gá means to come
2. of an impersonal entity, e.g. a machine or organization : to run, to work, to go {gí kóá na nginza sí atambéla : only work for money goes} {vélo atambéla pépé : the bicycle does not work}

tambéla N : walking about, running about, going about {tambéla só Kamara ákè sára ... : the walking about that Kamara is doing ...}

tambéla remorque** [remórke] V : to drag a song, to sing heavily and slowly - remorque means trailer, and trailer trucks travel slowly and ponderously

tanga [tanga, tana] N : the rest, the remainder, what is left over - used usually with ní or a complement introduced by tí {mú tanga ní só : take the rest of it} {ála kú tanga tí téné kóé : wait for the rest of the matter} - ndámbu suggests a remaining piece of some solid whole

tangé N : a bed - this can refer either to an African bed made of bamboo (bambou 2) or to a European type bed - gbogbó is properly a sleeping mat, which is used either on a bed or on the floor, but it is also used to refer to a bed

tará N : 1. a grandmother on either side - syn. áta 1 - see famille for the kinship system

2. ancestors in the female line {mamá amú mbi na kótóró tí átará tí mbi : my mother took me to the village of my female ancestors}

3. used as a mark of respect in addressing an older woman {tará, yé aso mo ? : grandmother, what is hurting you?}

tara V : to taste, to sample, to try, to attempt {mo tara ma : taste it, why don't you!} {lo tara tí hinga lége tí tó ngú : she tried to learn how to dip up water} - lógo is a taste, a sample - see also gí lége

tatara N : a mirror, a sheet or pane of glass

tatara ndo V : to grope, to feel about (as a blind person)

ta tí basánze N : a traditional pot - see ta for details

ta tí voróo N : a pot reserved for guests - see ta

ta wé [ta wé, tawá, tawá] N : a metal imported kettle - usually enameled or aluminum, though a few are steel or cast iron - see ta

té [té, tí] V : to meet, to encounter {mbi gá mbi té lo : I came and met him} - báa 6, báa lé tí, and báa téré mean to meet socially

tende N : cotton - coton is the more common syn.

te [te, te] V : 1. to bite, especially with the incisors - used also of a snake or a dog biting, as well as of insects stinging - ne 4 means to chew with the molars - see also te pémbe

2. to eat {mbi te alíngbi na mbi pepe : I ate, but it wasn't enough for me} - see te kóbe - yó means to suck, to drink - mene means to swallow, to gulp - see also te nginza

3. to inflict a wound or pain, e.g. with a spear {likongó tí ála alíngbi tí te zo mbéní pepe : their spears can no longer wound people} - kpo is more usual with the meaning of to stab - see also góá ... te, te bé, te méné

te bé V : said of a witch : to eat someone's liver, that is to attack his vitals - this causes sickness and death {zo tí lukundú ate bé tí lo sí lánzó osió ní lo kúí : the witch ate his liver so the fourth day he died} - syn. te méné - see lukundú, bé

te kóbe V : to eat, especially to eat a regular meal consisting of the staple dough (kóbe) and an accompanying sauce (késa) - the statement that one has not eaten, using this expression, often means simply that the speaker has not eaten a full meal, but that does not preclude his having eaten one or more snacks

te méné V : said of a witch - to eat the blood {lukundú ní así gígí na bí, ála goe tí te méné tí zo : witches come out at night, and go eat people's blood} - this, as with syn. te bé, causes sickness and death

te nginza V : to receive money, especially a payment due, as wages or bride-price - a synonymous idea can be substituted for nginza {mbi te nginza tí lo : I received the bride-price (which was paid) for her} {manoeuvre ate gí sac óse : a laborer gets just two thousand francs} - see nginza for a list of terms referring to financial and economic concepts

te pémbé V : to gnash the teeth {lo te pémbé tí lo : he gnashed his teeth}

témé [témé, téné, témé, téné] N : a stone, a rock, a pebble

téné [téné, téné, tén] N : a word, a saying, an utterance, a speech, a matter, an affair, an issue, a problem, news, a report {mo tene ndurú téné : say a short speech, i.e. speak briefly} {téné tí mbi awe : my words are finished, i.e. I have finished speaking} {lo goe ká tí gí téné ní : he went there to investigate the matter} {ndá tí téné ní : the meaning of the matter} {acommcencer tí gá téné : it began to become a problem, i.e. an issue or subject of dispute} {aake téné tí wále ... : it is the business of women ...} {téné ní así na ndo só : the news reached here} {téné tí ngonzo : an angry issue, or a matter arousing anger} {ngangó téné : harsh or violent words} {mbi húnda mbéni téné : I ask a certain matter (or question)} - see gí téné, fa téné, lake téné, sára téné, taá téné, téné ... ake papa, téné nzoni, téné tí Nzapá - ngbanga is related, but lacks the emphasis on speech found in téné

tene [tene, tene, ten, ten, te] V : to say, to tell {í eke tene céné só na ála : we're telling you this matter} {mo tene só biani ? : did you really say that?} {ála tene yé ? : what did they say?} {kpikara atene tongasó : the pangolin said that, lit. spoke like that} {lo tene, zía lo séngé : he said, leave him alone} {í eke tene na í téné tí Nzapá : we're telling you the word of God} - sára téné is the most general expression meaning to speak - sára isoró, causer, and sára ngiá suggest

social intercourse, chatting, visiting, etc. - húnda is to ask, toto and dé kóngó mean to cry out or shout, dé kité means to object, dé éré means to name

téné ... eke pepe V : to be all right {quand-même mbi yú pepe, téné ake pepe : even if I don't wear it, it will be all right} - this is used to dispel the impression that offence has been given, as in response to an apology

téné nzoní N : a Protestant neologism : the gospel

tenetí [tenetí, tantí, tetí, tenetí, tentí, tetí] C : a connective of cause, reason, purpose (Grammar p. 91-93) : because, because of, on account of, in order to, for {mó tene ngá ndurú téné, tenetí ázo míngi ake kú mbi : make your talk short, because many people are waiting for me} {lo toto tenetí mó lá kóé : he cries for you all the time} {í vó na nginza, tenetí payer impôt : we sell it for money, in order to pay taxes} - syn. ngbangatí - see also tenetí yé

téné tí Nzapá N : Protestant expression : the word of God - see mbétí tí Nzapá

tenetí yé Av : for what reason, why {tenetí yé mbi wara mbétí pepe ? : why did I not receive a letter?} - can also be used post-verbally - syn. ngbangatí yé

tene vene V : to tell a lie - syn. sára vene, sára wátáká

téré [téré, télé, téré] N : 1. a live body {mó sára kóá na ngangó tí téré tí mó : work with the strength of your body} {sukúla téré tí mó : wash your body, i.e. bathe} {téré tí lo aso lo : his body hurts} {téré tí susu : the body of a fish} - this is in contrast with kóá 2.2 meaning a human corpse, and kúí N 2 meaning the dead body of an animal - it is also in contrast with bé which refers in general to the inward parts and to the spiritual or metaphysical being - see hú téré - the major parts of the body are : lí the head, lé the face, gó the neck, kate the chest, pekó the back, mabóko the arm and hand, yá the abdomen, ngbundá the hips and buttocks, géré the leg and foot - ndó gó is the

shoulder, coude is the elbow, ngobo is the fist, li tí mabóko is the lateral aspect of the shoulder, yá tí mabóko is the palm of the hand, kété mabóko is a finger - on the head and face, kóá lí is the hair, ndó lé is the forehead and eyebrow, ngeki lé is an eyebrow, lé is the eye, mé is the ear, hó is the nose, dú hó is a nostril, yángá is the mouth, mángá or langue is the tongue, pémbé are the teeth, póró tí yángá is a lip, mbángbá is the cheek, ngbangba is the lower jaw and chin, kóá tí yángá is the moustache, kóá tí ngbangba is the beard - mé is a breast, kéngé is the penis, korogbó is the scrotum, dondo is the vagina - internally, ndóndó lí is the brain, yá is the stomach, fúfú is a lung, bé is the liver and the seat of the personality, bozó ngonzo is the gall bladder, bozó ino is the bladder - méné is the blood, póró is the skin, bió is the bone, mi is the flesh

2. since téré refers to the external aspect of a body : lateral aspect, side, flank, outside {mo sukúla téré ní pepe : you didn't wash its sides}

3. used in a reflexive or reciprocal sense : each other, one another, oneself {ála fáa téré : they cut (or killed) each other} {ála kpo téré tí ála : they stabbed themselves (or each other)} - see bóngbi téré, báa téré, hínga téré, yí téré, fa téré

4. with na 3 : beside, in a close relationship, etc. {mbi dutí na téré tí babá tí mbi : I remained close beside my father} {adu kamba na téré tí mbo : he fastened a cord to the dog} - the second example may also be interpreted as an example of sense 1 - mbáge suggests a much less intimate or essential relationship : in the direction of, towards

téré N : 1. a spider - see yoma for a list of insects and arachnids

2. the spider appears as a character in many tales and fables, along with kpíkara, the pangolin - téré is a wily character who uses much cunning, but who is sometimes outwitted in unexpected ways, to the delight of audiences

3. a fable, esp. one in which téré is a main character - histoire is a more general term for narrative forms of speech, and isoró can have the same meaning, though it is a general term for oral language

téré ... dó V : to tremble, to shake {téré tí mo adó : you trembled}

téré ... mú wá V : to get or have a fever {téré tí lo amú wá : he has a fever}

téré tí da N : a wall of a building - in traditional building, usually made of mud (pɔtɔpɔtɔ) plastered onto a framework of vertical poles (kéké, sara) to which are tied at close intervals thin flexible vines - alternatively, walls are made of sun-dried bricks (moule) - see da

tí V : to fall {ála tí na géré tí lo : they fell at his feet} {sése tí í atí : our land fell} {lo tí na kutukutu : he fell with an automobile, i.e. had an accident} {ngú tí Gbutu atí na ngangó : the water at Gbutu falls with violence} {ála tí na sése : they fell to the ground} {lo tí na hánda : he fell into temptation} - see tí na ndó

tí C : a subordinating connective (Grammar p. 99-116) expressing in general "geritive" relationships : possession, attribution, destination, etc.

1. joining a noun or adjunctive complement to a noun head {da tí mbi : my house} {gó tí mbo : the neck of the dog} {kótará tí í : our ancestor} {nze tí novembre : the month of November} {mérangé tí wále só : the child of this woman, or, this female child} {mabóko tí kóli : the hand of a man, or, the right hand} {zo tí sioní : a bad man} {zo tí Bangui : a person of Bangui} {kóbe tí lá kúí : the evening food} {téné tí politique : a matter about politics} {lá tí kótá bóngbi : the day of the big meeting}

2. governing a noun which is subject or complement of a verb - in this case, the phrase acts exactly as if there were a noun head {lo wɔ tí vingt francs : he bought twenty francs' (worth)} {tí ákóli aso ála : men's hurts them}

3. joining a verb complement to a noun head {zo tí gí (ngó) susu : a man who hunts fish} {zo tí sára wé : a man who works iron} {lo hínga lége tí tó ngú : she knows the way to draw water}

4. joining a verb complement to a verb head {ála gá tí te kóbe : they came to eat} {zo ahánda mo séngé tí fúti nginza tí mo : people tempt you for nothing to waste your money} - tenetí and ngbangatí in this kind of construction are restricted to expressions of purpose or cause

ti [ti, te] N : hand {abáa yama na ti tí ázo só : he saw meat in the hands of these people} {gouvernement aake na ti tí lo : the government is in his hands} - syn. mabóko 1 - ti is used frequently in a metaphorical sense to mean power or authority, as in the second example above

tiko V : to cough - a cough is often used to signal one's presence politely to someone who is not aware of it

tí na ndó V : to fall upon, to attack {vundú atí na ndó mbi : sorrow has fallen upon me} {áturúgu atí na ndó tí kótóró : the soldiers attacked the village} - see related ideas in goe berá na li tí, píka berá

tíngbi V : to join, to unite, to fasten together {mbi gá, mbi tíngbi na lo : I came and joined him} {lo tíngbi yángá ní : he fastened their edges together} - bóngbi means to bring together distinct parts, while tíngbi suggests a kind of fusion - kánga V means to fasten, and du V 1 means to tie

tínga wá V : to light or kindle a fire {mo bóí, mo sí gígí na ndá péréré, mo tínga wá kóé : you the servant, you get out in the morning and light all the fires} - see also zó and gbí which mean to burn, and mingo which means to extinguish

tínga wá N : a match {mo vo tínga wá, mo leke wá : you buy matches and fix the fire} - French allumette is more common

tipóí N : a sort of carrying hammock or chair in which important people used to be carried on the shoulders of four men

tirer photo** [tiré fotóo] V : to take a photograph - see photo, sukúla photo

tiri V : to fight, to wrestle, to struggle, to contend {ála commencer tí tiri, ála fáa téré : they began to fight, they cut each other} {ála goe tí tiri berá : they went to fight a war} {mo gá í tiri : come on, let's fight} - see also píka berá, goe berá na li tí, tí na ndó - if the struggle is verbal rather than physical, papa is used

tiri N : a fight, an act of fighting {alóndó na tiri tí gá : they left the fighting to come} {ála voter na tiri papa : don't vote with fighting}

títene [títene, titene, títan, títne] C : a subordinating connective expressing only a loose sequential connection between clauses (Grammar p. 116-119) - it can join clauses which otherwise would be hypotactically united, or it can in certain circumstances replace tí or sí - in all three cases, the resulting sentence structure is looser {mbi de títene mbi gá wále pepe = mbi de mbi gá wále pepe : I am still not a woman} {lo goe títene lo báa kótóró = lo goe sí lo báa kótóró : he went and saw the village} {lo goe títene lo báa bótóró = lo goe tí báa kótóró : he went to see the village}

tó V : to draw (water), to dip up, to carry in a container {mbi goe tí tó ngú : I went to draw water} {mbi tó sése na lége : I carried dirt to the road (i.e. in a basket)} {lo tó yíngó na wále : she carried salt to the woman} - yó V 2 means to carry on the back, shoulder, or head - gbó means to carry in the hand

to V : to send, to dispatch {mbi to mbéti na mọ : I sent you a letter} {mbi to na ála mbéti : I sent them a letter} {lo to ázo tí gí rérangé : he sent people to hunt for the child} {lo to nginza na mbi : he sent me money} - syn. toka

toka V : to send {ála eke sára mbéti ála toka na í : they wrote a letter and sent it to us} {lo toka mbi tí tene na mọ : he sent me to tell you} - syn. to

to kpa V : to send word on ahead, to call to get attention {lo to kpa na mbéni kótóró, sí ála bóngbi : he sent word on ahead to a certain village, and they gathered}

tôle** [tóol] N : sheet or corrugated metal, e.g. galvanized iron or aluminum, esp. as used for roofing

tomate** [tomáte] N : a tomato - used fairly extensively as an ingredient in sauces - see kása

tomba [tomba, tumba] V : 1. to pursue or chase something that is fleeing, so as to overtake it {atomba woga, amú lo : he pursued the antelope and caught it} - can be followed by the expression pekó tí without

substantial change in meaning {áturúgu atomba pekó tí ála na ngonda afáa ála míngi · the soldiers pursued after them in the bush and killed many of them}

2. attenuated : to follow in order to catch up {lo tomba pekó tí lo, awara lo : he followed him and found him} - see gá na pekó, goe na pekó

3. to chase or drive away {lo tomba ábákoyá gbá : he chased away the baboons in vain} - see tomba wále

4. to discharge from work, to fire {lo tomba zo na kusára : he fired a man from his job}

tomba wále V : to divorce one's wife, because of the fact that the home is the husband's - if the wife takes the initiative, the expression is kpe kóli - syn. ké wále, zia wále

tongana [tongana, tongana, toṅana, toṅana, tangana, tonga, toṅa, tone, tṅa, tṅa, tṅa, tṅa, tṅ, tṅ] C : a conditional, temporal, and comparative connective (Grammar p. 119-124) : when, if, like, as {tongana mbi te ngunzá, mbi te mbéni yi da : when I eat greens, I eat other things with them} {fadé mbi báa tongana mo si na Bangui : I'll see when you get to Bangui} {mo gá tongana moniteur : you will become like an instructor} {lo sára tongana ála : he did things in just the same way as a child} - syn. ádu ní - see also tongana yé

tongana yé Av : how {kusára tí mbi tongana yé : how is my work?} {lo sára tongana yé : how is he doing?} - can be used in an emphatic or exclamatory sense {mo língbi tí hinga tongana yé! : how in the world can you know!} - this expresses a measure of doubt, like lá wa

tongasó [tongasó, tongasó, toṅasó, toṅasó, tṅasó, tṅsó] Av : an adjunctive of manner (Grammar p. 57-58) : thus, so, like this, in this manner {mará tí zo tongasó : a kind of people like this} {lo sára tongasó : he did it like this} {tongasó, lo goe : thus, he went away} {tongasó, lo hinga pepe : so he did not know} - used both post-verbally and pre-clausally - see lége 2

toro V : to dance a certain Yakoma dance at the time of which the upper incisors of girls are chiselled out - see dódó, lengé

tó samba V : to brew beer - see samba

toto V : to cry, to make noise, to cry out, to sob {kóndo atoto : the hen cries, i.e. cackles} {lo toto na ngú lé : he wept with tears} {lo toto alingbi pepe : he cried a great deal} {bongó tí mọ atoto míngi : your dress is making a lot of noise} {lo goe na pekó tí mọ tí toto na pekó tí mọ : he followed you to cry after you} {ála toto mọ : they are lamenting you, i.e. because you're not here} {í toto yá tí í : we complain of our stomachs} - dé kóngó is to shout, éré ndo is to call out, bima is to complain or moan - see also toto kóá

toto N : a cry, a shout, a noise, weeping {mbi má toto na gígí : I hear crying outside, I hear a noise outside} {toto agá na lé tí lo : tears came to his eyes} {zíá tot- : leave off crying} - ngú lé is tears, kóngó is a shout, wúruwúru is a tumult, a noise of disorder, a clamor

toto kóá V : to mourn for a death {ála toto kóá : they mourned a death}

toucher** [tusée] to touch {zo alingbi tí toucher lo pepe : no one could touch him} - syn. ndú

tourner** [turnée] V : 1. to turn - used in li ... tourner

2. to stir, to mix by stirring {mọ túku ngunzá na yá tí ngú, mọ tourner : you pour the greens into the water, and you stir} - mélanger is a syn. - fúru means to mix with the hands so as to make a homogeneous semi-liquid mass - mé kóbe means to prepare the staple dough by stirring flour into hot water

tout** [túu] An : all, altogether - used to reinforce the syn. kóé {zo kóé tout : absolutely everyone} {yáká tí mbi kóé akánga tout : my field is all choked up (with weeds)}

tó V : to cook, especially by boiling - used most often with the object kóbe {lá kóé mbi tó gí ngunzá : always I cook only greens} {ála goe tí tó kóbe : they went to cook food} {ató nzoni : she cooked it well} - mé kóbe means to prepare the staple dough, leke kóbe and sára kóbe are very general terms meaning to prepare food - yóro 2 means to fry - kporo is used of water boiling

tɔV : to bud - syn. mbuma : see also mbuma

tongóro N : a star {ámbení tongóro otá só agoe tongasó, ála tene só ake
póro tí zembé tí lo : three stars which go like that, they say that
these are the scabbard of his knife}

tóró N : the spirit of a dead person, esp. an ancestor, considered to
maintain an interest in and authority over the clan - they are thought
to live in the wilderness in the territory of the clan, where they
must be propitiated with offerings of various sorts - traveling far
from the clan territory removes one from their influence - they
communicate with the living in dreams, and signal displeasure by
bringing calamities, such as sickness or sterility - yingó is the spirit
of a living person - lukundú is a witch spirit - see bé as the seat of
the personality

travaux** [travóo, tarawóo] N : the public-works department, which has
the special responsibility of building and maintaining roads {giriri
mbi sára kóo na mbunzú tí travaux : I used to work for a white man in
the public works department}

trop** [tróo] Av : very much, very well {ála hinga Sango trop : they know
Sango very well} - syn. mingi - trop is rather affected, and is used
esp. by young people

túku V : to tip over, to dump, to pour, to spill {ngó ní ayí tí túku : the
boat was about to tip over} {mbi túku mbéní samba na lo : I poured
him some beer} {mo túku kóbe na sambé : you dump the dough into a dish}
{mo túku ngú na yá tí filtre : you pour water into a filter} {ngú
atúku na sése : the water spilled in the ground} - sá means to pour
a liquid

tungu N : lead, solder - syn. mboso

turúgu N : a soldier {í sára yí tongana turúgu : we are doing things like
soldiers, i.e. with discipline} - see also yongoro ngombe

turúngu N : the navel, the umbilical cord (i.e. the part which remains
attached to the child) {zo agirisa zo tí fáa turúngu tí lo, mais lo

girisa zo tí carrer pémbé tí lo pépe ; a person forgets who cut off his umbilical cord, but he does not forget the person who chipped his teeth (i.e. because the latter operation is done when one is of age to remember))

- U -

ukú [ukú, okú] An : five - see óka for the number system

úlu [úlu, úru] V : to blow {lo úlu dede tí yama : he blew on the horn of an animal, i.e. to make music} {lo úlu hó tí lo : he blew his nose} {na midi, ála úlu yí ní ; at noon, they blow the thing, i.e. the steam whistle} - hú means to breathe - ia is used only of the wind - píka bíá is used of all but wind instruments, e.g. the drum, the xylophone, or the guitar

úr̃ Av : an ideophone descriptive of flowing {méné ayuru na hó tí lo úr̃ : blood flowed from his nose, úr̃}

uru [uru, ulu] V : 1. to jump, to fly {mbi uru na ndó tí dú : I jumped over the hole} {dola auru na ndúzú : the moth flies in the air}
2. of animals : to mate {kóli tí yama auru na ndó wále ní : the male animal mated with the female} - syn. monter 2 - gba is used of human beings

válá [válá, várá] N : a shield {lo mú likongó tí lo, lo mú válá : he took his spear, he took a shield} - used in traditional warfare - oval, and made either of wickerwork or rawhide - see zembé for a list of weapons

vélo** [velóo] N : a bicycle {lo tambéla na vélo : he rode on a bicycle} {lo kpé na vélo míngi : he rode very fast on a bicycle} - the bicycle is a ubiquitous means of travel and a status symbol for the lower and middle classes

veké N : okra (Hibiscus esculentus L.), a mucilaginous vegetable used in many sauces {mo túku kpí tí káráko da, mo píka veké, mo zí= da : you dump in peanut paste, then you pound okra and put it in} - okra is one of the foods which are called dongó yongóra - see also kása

vene [vene, mvene] N : a lie {mbi sára vene pepe : I did not tell a lie} {vene tí mo : your lie, i.e. you have told a lie} {mo tene vene pepe : don't tell a lie} - syn. wátáká - see sára vene, tene vene

vení [vení, mvení] N : an owner, a master, a mistress (i.e. the feminine of master only) {vení tí lengé ní até kóbe pepe : the mistress of the lengé dance did not eat} {vení tí da só na ndo wa ? : where is the owner of this house?} - wa N is an inhabitant, an agent, as well as an owner

vení [vení, vení, mvení, mvení] An : an emphatic adjunctive, used to emphasize any phrase by bringing it to the head of the sentence : -self, it is ... which {lo vení sí acommencer berá : he himself started the war} {áSango vení áeke fáa susu na gbánda : it is the Sango who kill fish with nets} {fadé mbi vení, mbi eke éré ála : I myself, I will call them} {áeke tongasó vení sí ála eke sára kóbe ní : it is like that that they make the food} {só vení sí í ké : it is this that we refuse}

vieux** [viyé] An : old, as applied to persons - see also mbakóro

ville** [viil] N : a city with a European type municipal administration - only a few of the larger cities have this status, while smaller communities constitute parts of various collectivité units - in colonial days, the maire or mayor was an appointed official, but now he is elected - see république for the administrative structure of the country

ville de Bangui** [vildəbangí] N : a fire engine {amú ville de Bangui otá, agoe míngo wá só : they took three fire engines and went and extinguished this fire} - da gbí is a fireman

vin** [véɛ] N : European wine - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

voilà** [vwalá, walá] I : there now {téré atene na lo, voilà mbi tene na lo awe : the spider said to him, there now, I've told him}

voma N : a fly - other insects and arachnids include dola a moth, bobo a termite, gandá a wasp, ngungu a mosquito, ngushú a chigger, a maggot, kpalakongo a scorpion, téré a spider, lavú or wotoro a bee, makongó a caterpillar

vɔ V : 1. to buy {lo vɔ ngunzá tí páta osió : she bought four páta's (i.e. twenty francs') worth of greens} {zo wa avɔ na mɔ pendere bongó só ? : who bought you this beautiful dress?} {íta, mɔ gá tí vɔ na mbi, mɔ vɔ : sister, if you've come to buy from me, buy} - this meaning to buy is the more common usage, which contrasts with ká V, to sell - see vɔ ngéré, fúta, payer, nginza, tɛ nginza, franc, páta for other financial concepts

2. to sell {í vɔ tanga ní na nginza tí payer impôt : we sell the rest of it for money to pay taxes} - this usage, syn. with ká, is less common than 1

vokó [vokó, vokó, vukó] V : to be or become black, to be dark, to be dirty {ndo avokó : the place was dark} {téré tí mbi avokó : my body was black, i.e. dirty} - see bé ... vokó - opp. vurú V

vokó An : black, dark, dirty - can be reduplicated for emphasis {bongó ní

aske vokó vokó : the cloth was very black} - vokó kété is dark grey or an unsaturated dark shade of some other color - see couleur for the color system - syn. saleté in the sense of dirty - opp. vurú An, propre - see also mbunzí vokó, zo vokó, vokó lé

vokó lé N : the pupil of the eye - see lé N 1.1

vokó zo N : see zo vokó

vo ngéré V : to do business, to buy and sell - see vo, ká V, fúta, payer, nginza, franc, páta, bon, ngé.é, te nginza for other financial and economic concepts

voró V : to give honor or great deference, to express respect, submission, or pleading, as by kneeling {mbi voró téré tí mbi na mo : I kneel before you to plead with you} - used esp in speaking to or about God - see also sambéla, diko, sepála - see ta tí voró

vú V : to be or become famous {éré tí ála avú tongana tí ámbení zo pepe : their names were not famous like those of other people} - may be related to vurú V

vundú N : a complex emotional reaction and state resulting from misfortune or a real or imagined slight - since misfortune is considered to be caused by malevolent personal agencies, human or otherwise, the disappointment or sorrow (depending on the magnitude of the occasion) is invariably tinged with resentment and a desire to retaliate {tongana zo só afáa ita tí mbi akúí, sí vundú tí mbi awe : when the person who killed (or caused the death of) my brother dies, then my sorrow and resentment will be appeased} {só mo sára mbéti na mbi pepe, agá yí tí vundú : because you did not write me, it has become an occasion for disappointment and resentment} - the resentment is the central and constant component of vundú - bé ... so expresses a similar reaction - ponó and sáná express the objective cause of some vundú, i.e. persecution or other suffering caused by personal malevolence - ngonzo is anger - ngiá, siriri express opp. emotions and states - see bé for a discussion of emotional reactions and states

vurú [vurú, vulú] V : to be or become white, to be clean (bongó avurú : the cloth is white, or the cloth is clean) - opp. vokó V - see also be ... vurú

vurú An : white, clean - can be reduplicated for emphasis (vurú póró tí téré tí ála : the white skin of their bodies) - vurú kété means light grey or an unsaturated light tint of another color - see couleur for the color system - syn. propre in the sense of clean - opp. vokó, saleté - see vurú ndo, vurú sése, ngú vurú

vurú ndo N : the dry season - syn. burú

vurú sése N : white clay used to whitewash walls - mbamba means a lime whitewash

wá N : 1. a fire {zia ngú na (ndó tí) wá : put water on the fire i.e. to boil} {lo sára kótá wá : he made a big fire} - the usual cooking fire is a wood fire on the ground between three stones in front of the hut - a similar fire is kept burning all night inside the hut for warmth - a good housekeeper always keeps a small fire going somewhere to be ready for any need - see kéké tí wá, lé tí wá, pindiri (tí wá), tinga wá, zó, gbí, mingo

2. heat {ndo aske wá míngi : the place is very hot (i.e. in speaking of weather)} {wé ní amú wá míngi : the iron is very hot} - see gá wá, mú wá, wara wá

wa N : 1. an inhabitant, a citizen, an owner {áwa tí Bangui : the inhabitants of Bangui} {wa tí yí ní agá atene, mbi báa kamba tí mbi ká : the owner of the thing came and said, I saw my snare over there} - mbá means one's fellow-citizen or inhabitant, veni N means an owner

2. a person characterized by something which is specified by a post-posed complement - see wa búburú, wa hánda, wa ngiba, wa kpa, wa ná bé, wa nzi, wa nzinga, wa ziba - in these cases, the trait specified seems to be more permanently and essentially associated with the person than when zo tí is used with the same complements

wa V : to warn, to rebuke, to admonish, to advise, to counsel, to encourage, to comfort, to console {lo wa ála ngangó pepe : he did not admonish them severely} {bíá awa bé tí í : the song comforted us} - this verb covers all the ways in which one person can deal responsibly with another's behavior (especially as regards its ethical qualities) and emotional states and problems - wa bé tí means to encourage, to comfort

wa An : an interrogative -djunctive (Grammar p. 53) - used esp. in ndo wa, zo wa, and lá wa . in this last case, and also when it is used to put into question a whole sentence, it is often exclamatory and implies a negative answer - hence, it is used as a strong and indignant disclaimer

of a false imputation {ka ita mbi sí mbi tene só wa : is it really I who said that (of course not!)} - ye is semantically syn. but much less restricted grammatically

wáá I : an exclamation of amazement

wa bé tí V : to encourage, to comfort, to console - this is more specific than wa V

wa búburú N : a dumb person - see búburú - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wa hánda N : a tempter, one who entices or teases - see hánda - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wa kpa N : a Protestant neologism to mean messenger, preacher - see kpa N 2

wala C : a connective used to join alternative or correlative elements (Grammar p. 124-126) : or, or else {só nzoní wala nzoní pape : is that good or is it not good?} {li tí ála míngi, wala bale otá, wala bale osiό, wala bale ukú : many of them, perhaps thirty, perhaps forty, perhaps fifty} {mo goe mbéni ndo, wala mo eke da biani ? : have you gone elsewhere, or are you really there?} {mo te susu mélanger na ní wala ? : do you eat fish mixed with it, or (not)?}

wále [wále, wáli, wáre, wáril] N : 1. woman, as opposed to a man or a child {mbi eke mérengé, mbi de mbi gá wále pape : I am a child, I have not yet become a woman} {mbi éré áli, áwále ... : I call upon men, women ...} - opp. kóli 1, mérengé - see also wále tí pitáa
2. a wife {lo mú wále tí lo : he took his wife} {wále tí mbi, na mérengé tí mbi : my wife and my child} - opp. kóli 2 - see also mariage, marier

3. a female, human or animal-used to qualify some other noun {wále tí kóndo abata mérengé tí lo : the hen protects her chicks} - see mérengé (tí) wále, mbakoro wále, pendere wále - opp. kóli 3

wále tí pitáa N : an adulteress, a prostitute {tongana wále alóndó tí kamáta mbéni kóli, atene só agá wále tí pitáa : if a woman arises to take another man, they say she has become an adulteress} - see sára pitáa

wa má bé-wara ngiá

196

wa má bé N : a Protestant neologism intended to mean a believer - syn.
chrétien

wa ndé N : a stranger, a foreigner - gane is a visitor, a guest

wa ngiba N : a leper - see ngiba, buruma - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wángó N : warning, advice, counsel {í mú wángó na ázo tí tene ála manquer
pepe : we give warning to the people so they will not miss} {mbi eke
mú wángó na ála na lége tí kobéla : I give advice to you concerning
sickness} - from wa V

wa nzi N : a thief, a robber, a burglar - see nzi - zo tí can be substituted
for wa, in which case the connection between the act and the character
of the person is less essential and permanent

wa nzinga N : a poor person - see nzinga

wara [wara, wala] V : to get, to obtain, to receive, to find, to discover
{mbi wara mbéti só mo sára na mbi : I got the letter you wrote me}
{í wara penser só gí fadesó ? : did we discover this idea just now?}
{mo wara ye ? : what did you find?} {fadé ála wara fúta tí ála : they
will get their wages} {mbi wara na yá tí nze só : I got(it) this month}
{fadé mo wara mérengé tí mbi : you will find my child} {í wara ángbáa :
we found the buffalo} {tongana mbi wara service, sí mbi goe na Bangui :
if I find a job, then I'll go to Bangui} {mo wara concours tí mo :
you have obtained (i.e. succeeded in) your examination} - opp. gí V -
see wara dé, wara wá, wara yángá tí te kóbe, wara kobéla, wara ngiá

wara dé V : to become cold - syn. gá dé, mú dé, dé V - opp. wara wá

wara kobéla V : to become sick - the name of a specific sickness can be
substituted for kobéla - the phrase can be inverted {mbi wara kobéla :
I became sick} {kobéla awara mbi : I became sick} - opp. kobéla ...
kái

wara lége V : to find or take an opportunity {mbi wara lége tí báa lo :
I found an opportunity to see him} - see lége 2, gí lége

wara ngiá V : to be or become happy {ázo awara ngiá na lá ní ká : people

became happy on that day)

wara wá V : to become hot - syn. gá wá, mú wá - opp. wara dé

wara yángá tí te kóbe V : to have a good appetite - also used in the negative {mbi wara yángá tí te kóbe pepe : I did not have a good appetite} - syn. yángá ... nzere tí te kóbe

wátáká N : a lie {ála sára kótá wátáká : they told a big lie} {mbi tene wátáká pepe : I didn't tell a lie} - syn. vene - see sára wátáká, tene wátáká

wato N : an enemy {wato aake zo só asára berá na babá tí mo giriri ; an enemy is someone who used to make war on your father} - for opp. terms see ndeko

wa zíba N : a blind person - see zíba

we [we, wě] V : 1. to be finished, to be done, to be completed, to be accomplished {téné tí mbi awe : my speech is finished} {kóbe awe ; the food is done, i.e. ready to eat}

2. we is also used in paratactic construction with a preceding clause (Grammar p. 160-167), in which case it signals that the action denoted by the preceding verb is fully accomplished and was antecedent to the verbs of the surrounding context {mo má awe ? : have you heard (lit. you heard, is it finished)?} {tongana mo tourner awe, mo zía na sése when you have finished stirring it, you put it aside} {mo sambéla gí Nzapá, awe : pray just to God, that's all} {ka lo tene na mbi awe ; otherwise he would have told me} {mbi leke téné ní awe, sí mbi tene na mo : I fixed up the matter, and then (when it was finished) I told you} - in this use, a simple past perfect verb is usually all that is needed to gloss the combination of verb plus we

wě N : 1. iron - smelted and worked by traditional blacksmiths (ndao) {purú tí lo kóé así gígí, na taá wě ní aake : the slag had all run out, and the real iron remained} {ála girísa lége tí wě awe : they have lost the art of iron working} - see zembe for a list of tools and weapons made of iron

2. the bride-price - so called because an important part of the bride-price was traditionally composed of iron bars of specific size and shape - some bars were highly esthetic - syn. mosoro

woga [woga, uga] N : the duiker, and possibly certain other small antelopes of the genus Cephalophus - its size and general appearance may be judged by the fact that in a folk tale it is passed off as a dog

wógará N : a daughter-in-law, in relation to her father-in-law, i.e. this is the term used by a man in referring or speaking to his daughter-in-law - see famille for the kinship system

wótoro [wótoro, wótro, wótro] N : 1. a bee - syn. lavú
2. honey - syn. ngú lavú, mafuta tí wótoro

wóko V : 1. to soften, to be soft, (literally or figuratively) to relent, to tire, to weaken physically (kóbe ní awóko nzoni : the food is nice and soft) (mó wóko bé tí mó ma : soften your liver, i.e. relent) : {í wóko pepe : we're not tired} - in the last sense, syn. fatiguer, while nzé is less physical
2. to decrease - used esp. of a price (ngéré ní awóko kété : the price has decreased a bit) - syn. diminuer

wúrúwúrú N : a tumult, a noise of great confusion and disorder (í eke voter na wúrúwúrú pepe : we won't vote with disorderly noise) - toto is a cry, a lament, kóngó is a shout

yá N : 1. abdomen, stomach, digestive organs, both in the external and internal aspects {yá tí mbi asúku : my abdomen swelled up} {1 kángbi áyá ní í bi na ngonda : we separated its internal organs and threw them away} - bé is the liver and the seat of the personality and all its manifestations, while yá is definitely identified with digestion - see téré 7

2. with an inanimate-complement, and usually introduced by na 3 : in, inside {yá tí da : the inside of the house} {mo zia na yá tí sembé : put it into a dish} {lo pika na yá tí kpu : she pounded it in a mortar} {mbi baa na yá tí mbéti : I saw it in a letter} {kobéla só ahú na yá tí ngú só : this disease is spreading this year} {ngú zole na yá tí burú : the streams dry up in the dry season} {lo baa ndo na yá tí lé tí zo vokó : he looks into the eyes of a black man}

yabándá* N : a sauce made of greens (kugbé), with or without an oleaginous paste, as of peanuts (kpí) - kása is the more general term for any sauce made to accompany the staple dough (kóbe), including those with meat, fish, termites, etc.

yáká N : any cultivated area : a field, a garden, a plot, an orchard, a plantation {kóli agoe na yáká kózo ní : men went to the fields first} {yáká tí mbi akánga kóé : my field is all choked up (with weeds)} {yáká tí café : a coffee plantation} - distinguished from ngonda, which is uncultivated wilderness, and kótóró, which is a built-up settled area - see fáa yáká, lú - the usual tools are kpóka or ngáfó, a hoe, and dó, an ax

yama [yama, nyama, yama] N : 1. an animal of any kind, in opp. to zo a human being and yí N an inanimate thing {mbi goe na ngonda mbi kpo na kété kété yama : I go into the bush and spear little animals with it} {kobéla só agá na lége tí mbéni kété kété yama na yá tí mo : this disease comes on account of tiny animals (i.e., parasites) inside you} -

yama tí ngonda gives a list of wild animals - susu gives a list of fish - voma gives a list of insects and arachnids - ndeke is a bird - the domestic animals are : mbo the dog, ngása the goat, kóndo the chicken, yáq the cat - cochon the pig, and taba the sheep are much less common, while bágara cattle, mbarata the horse, and lélé the donkey are domesticated almost exclusively by Frlani herdsmen, who are often also butchers - gí yama describes hunting procedures

2. meat {tongana mo eke, fadé lo te mbéní yama : if you were here, he would eat meat (because you would go hunting)} {yama tí bale óko, tongana mo vo, même mérengé só, tongana lo te, alíngbi na lo pepe : fifty francs' worth of meat, when you buy it, even this child could eat it and it wouldn't be enough for him) - since hunting is increasingly unproductive and beef is expensive, meat protein is often lacking from the diet - substitutes include bobo the termite, makongó the caterpillar, and kpí oleaginous grains such as peanuts

yama tí ngonda N : wild animals - these include :

1. carnivora : bámará the lion, ze the leopard, b'ongó the hyena, sóuzó the African hunting dog, and yáq which, in addition to referring to the domestic cat, can also mean various kinds of wild cats
2. smaller herbivora, esp. antelopes : báságbó the eland, béta the waterbuck, gólo the giraffe, tágba the kob, zaranga the roan antelope, and dengbe, kpere, lekpa, and woga, all various kinds of small antelopes
3. larger herbivora : dole the elephant, gógóá or ngbáa the buffalo, mbengé and cochon tí gígí two kinds of wild boars, másarágba the rhinoceros, and konó the hippopotamus
4. primates : makáko a generic term for monkeys, bákoyá the baboon, ngui the colobus monkey, seko the chimpanzee
5. smaller mammals, as rodents, insectivora, etc. : batá the squirrel, lele the porcupine, kpíkara the pangolin, zarí the ratel
6. reptiles : bakongo the turtle, ngundé the crocodile, ngbó the snake, kúma the python

yambo* N : perfume, incense - most perfumes are of either European or Muslim origin

- yángá N : 1. the mouth {lo zía kóbe na yángá tí méréngé ; she put food into the child's mouth} {toto ade na yángá tí lo ; crying was still in his mouth, i.e. he was still crying} Sango agbó yángá tí mbi mbírimbíri pepe : Sango has not properly taken hold of my mouth, i.e. I do not speak Sango well} {mbi má gí na yángá tí mbéni zo ; I just heard it from the mouth of someone} - see also poró tí yángá the lip - gí yángá, má yángá, yángá ... nzere tí te kóbe - see téré 1
2. a language {yángá tí ámbunzú : the white man's language} {mo eke fa yángá tí í na ázo ká : you are teaching our language to people over there} {yángá tí Sango : the Sango language} - gó refers to the voice, téné to what is said, speech
3. an opening, a door {mo kánga yángá tí da ; close the door of the house} {mo kánga yángá tí ta : cover the opening of the pot}
4. the edge of - often used with na 3 {lo eke na yángá tí ngú ; he was at the edge of the river} {yángá tí yáká : the edge of the field} {yángá tí zembe : the edge of the knife blade}
- yángá ... nzere tí te kóbe V : to have a good appetite {yángá tí mbi anzere tí te kóbe pepe : I do not have a good appetite} - syn. wara yángá tí te kóbe

yangba* N : smallpox - see kobéla

yángó N : a fishhook {lo eke bi yángó na yángá tí ngú ; he is fishing by the edge of the river (lit. he is throwing the fishhook)} - see gí susu for a description of fishing techniques

yáq [yáq, nyáq] N : a cat, esp. a domestic cat, but can also refer to a wild cat - see yama, yama tí ngonda 1

yá tí mabóko N : the palm of the hand - see mabóko

yáyú N : heaven, the sky - this is the term used by Christians to refer to the heaven of God - ndúzú is the sky, ia is the air

yeke Av : slowly, gradually - can be reduplicated {í eke leke kótóró tí í yeke yeke : we are organizing our country very gradually} - syn. doucement

yẹ [yẹ, nye, nye] An : an interrogative adjunctive (Grammar p. 53-54) :
 what {lo sára kpa tí yẹ ? : what work did he do?} {zo yẹ ? : what
 person, who?} {yí tí yẹ ? : what thing?} {yẹ aso mo ? : what is
 hurting you?} {í eke báa yẹ ? : what do you see?} - syn. wa An is much
 more restricted grammatically - see also ngbangatí yẹ, tenetí yẹ,
tongana yẹ

yékpá [yékpá, nyékpá] N : lightning - békpá is thunder

yené N : the anus - can also be said dú tí yené - ngbundá means the buttocks

yengere V : to sift, as manioc flour {mo píka fúku ní kóé awe, mo yengere :
 when you have finished pounding the flour, you sift it} - passer 2
 means to strain, to drain, as well as to sift - pé 2 and diki mean to
 winnow

yengere N : a sieve - made of very fine wickerwork in the shape of a
 hemisphere about ten inches in diameter

yí [yí, yé] N : an all- purpose noun of general reference : thing, as
 opp. to zo a person and yama an animal {mbi sára yí só : I did this
 thing} {yí kóé ake nzoní míngi : everything is very nice} {lo te yí
 tí mbi na mbáná séngé : he ate my things in willful idleness} - only
 in the expression yí só, what-you-may-call-him, does yí refer to a
 person

yí [yí, yé] V : 1. to want, to desire, to like, to love {tongana lo yí,
 lo húnda lége tí Takorongo : if he desires, let him ask the way to
 Takorongo} {kóli ayí tí goe : the man wanted to go} {ála kóé ayí tí má
 lo : they all wanted to hear him} {mbi yí kótóró só míngi : I like
 this village very much} {ámbení míngi atene, mbi yí zo vókó : ...
 are saying, I like black people} {mbi yí mbéní nginza : I want some
 money} {bé tí kóli tí mbi ayí mbi pepe : my husband doesn't love me}
 {mbi yí só pepe : I don't want that} - see bé ... yí, yí téré - opp.
kẹ

2. to agree, to accept {í yí, monsieur : we agree, sir} {mbi yí pepe :
 I don't agree} - syn. ví da, yí pakó - see also yíngó tí Arabe - opp.
kẹ

3. followed by tí and a verb, or títene and a clause : to be about to {ngó ní ayí tí túku : the boat was about to capsize} {aú tí mǎ ayí tí kúfí : your uncle is about to die} {ayí títene ato mbéti : he is about to send a letter} - see yí tí báa ndo

yí da V : to agree {mbi yí da, monsieur : I agree, sir} - syn. yí 2, yí pekó

yingi* V : to shake - pé means to wave the hand, to winnow, yengere means to sift

yingó pekó tí yí N : agreement - see yí 2, yí da, yí pekó

yingó tí Arabe N : the manner in which Arabs are said to respond to a call from a long distance

yingó N : any kind of salt {même nginza tí wǎ na yingó, mbi wara pepe : even money to buy salt, I don't have} - adorónu is imported rock salt, while sá and yingó tí basánze are terms for traditional salt made from the ashes of certain plants

yingó N : the spirit of a living person, which resides in the liver (bé) and departs at death - the spirit of a dead person is tóró, while lukundú is a witchcraft spirit

yingó tí Nzapá, yingó vurú N : names used by Christians for the Holy Spirit

yí óko C : there's just one thing - used to introduce a sentence {mais yí óko, nginza aake pepe : there's just one thing, there is no money} - see óko

yí pekó V : to agree - syn. yí 2, yí da

yí só N : an expression used when groping for someone's name : what-you-may-call-it, what's-his-name - used only in the third person {yí só ..., ita tí Kamara : what's-his-name ... the brother of Kamara}

yí téré V : to love one another, to like one another, to feel and express mutual esteem {ála yí téré míngi : they love each other very much} - see yí 1, téré 3

yí tí báa ndo-yó

204

yí tí báa ndo Av : used pre-clausally : a little later, soon afterwards, not long after {mo yí tí báa ndo, mo zía kpí : a little later, you add paste} {í yí tí báa ndo, dole ní aake tambéla na lá kúí : not long after, the elephant was walking about in the evening}

yí tí mé N : ear ornaments, ear-rings - kísi, lenge, and ngbéréna are other personal ornaments

yí tí ngangó N : violence, persecution - see also sána, ponó

yí tí vundú N : personal injury, suffering resulting from the action of malevolent agencies, persecution {yí tí vundú atí na ndó tí mbi míngi : much suffering has fallen upon me} - vundú esp. emphasizes the resentment and desire for retaliation resulting from such personal injury, and can be associated with sorrow or disappointment - sána, ponó are approximate syn.

yoró [yoró, yoló, yoró, yoló] N : medicine, poison, fetish, charm, talisman - any specific material means of obtaining protective, curative, or destructive powers {áBambinga aake na yoró tí dole : the Pygmies have medicine (to catch) elephants} {ála tene ála eke mú kóli gí na kété yoró tí bata téré pepe ? : aren't they saying that they catch husbands just with the little talismans used for protecting themselves?} {í zía yama na devant tí yoró tí í : we placed meat before our fetish} {tenetí yę sí mo mú kótá yoró, sí íta tí mbi akúí ? : why did you get powerful medicine, so that my brother died?} {zo tí Nzapá akpé mbito tí yoró pepe : God's people do not fear fetishes} {ála mú yoró tí kobéla ní tongasó sí alingbi titene akái : you must take the medicine for this sickness in this way so that it can be cured} - the term includes without distinction substances whose effect is good and substances whose effect is bad, and does not distinguish between the natural effects of the application of some substances and magical effects attributed to others - it is used for both traditional and modern medicines - ngaanga is a kind of fetish

yó V : to carry a load, as on the head, the shoulder, or the back {lo yó yí na ndó gó : he carried something on his shoulder} {í dé kéké tí yó

na lo : we chopped down a tree to carry to him} {mbi yó caisse ní gbá : I tried in vain to carry the crate} - tó means to carry in a container, gbó means to carry in the hand

yó V : to be long, either horizontally or vertically - hence, to be far, to be tall {kótóró tí ála ayó : their village is far away} {mo yó na mbi : you are far from me} {kéké só ayó míngi : that tree is very tall} - the idea of tallness is more often conveyed by yóngóro preceded by the copula eke

yó [yó, nyó, nyó] V : to suck, to drink, to smoke (tobacco) {ála yó samba : they drank beer} {mérengé ayó me tí mamá tí lo : the child sucked its mother's breast} {lo yó mánga : he smoked tobacco} - té means to bite, to eat, mené means to swallow, to gulp, ne 3 means to chew

yóngóro An : of space or time : long - hence, far, tall {lo sí na yóngóro lége : he arrived at a far-away road} {téné tí lo ake yóngóro pepe : his speech was not long} {zo só ake yóngóro míngi : this man is very tall} {í tambéla na pekó tí lo yóngóro míngi : we went after him for a very long time} - yó is often equivalent to the copula eke followed by yóngóro

yóngóro ngombe N : a term applied to the African troops used to pacify the country under colonial rule {áturúgu só, aéré ála áyóngóro ngombe, ake Sénagalais : those soldiers who were called yóngóro ngombe, they were Senegalese} - see turúgu, garde

yóro V 1 : to fry } mo zía káráko na wá na yá gbara ní, mo yóro : you put the peanuts on the fire in a frying pan, and you fry them} {mo túku makongó na wá mo yóro ála nzoní, ngbangatí ála fú : you dump the caterpillars into a pot and fry them well, so they won't spoil} - tó means to cook by boiling, zó can mean to roast

yóro V 2 : 1. to insert, to thrust, to poke in {mbi eke gí kéké tí yóro da : I am looking for poles to insert into it (i.e. a roof structure)} {ála yóro mabóko na ndúzú : thrust your hands into the air} - kpo means to pierce, pé means to wave the hand
2. to stir - syn. tourner - see also mé kóbe

yó yí V : to beg for something, as a beggar - húnda is a general term meaning to ask, sambéla means to pray to a divinity, and voróo can also mean to plead

yú V : to put on (as clothing), to wear (mo yú bongó tí mo : put on your clothes) (ála yú póró tí géré tí ála : they wore their shoes) (quand même mbi yú pepe, téné aake pepe : even if I don't wear (it), there is no problem) - see bongó

yuru V : 1. to seep, to leak, to run out (as a liquid) (ngú só kóé ayuru da awe : all this water has leaked out of it) (méné ayuru na hó tí mérengé : blood ran out of the child's nose) - sóá means to flow (as a river), gara means to flow (as blood in the veins), sá means to pour, to spill

2. by extension.: to have diarrhea (lo yuru na lo dé na yá tí bí : he had diarrhea and he vomited during the night) - sára purú na méné means to have dysentery - see kobéla

- Z -

- zá V : 1. to shine, to glitter, to be bright {wá azá na yá tí da : the fire shines inside the house} - su is used of the sun
 2. to be sharp, to be keen {yángá tí zembe azá míngi : the edge of the knife-blade was very sharp} - leke 3 is used with the meaning, to sharpen
 3. to be in excellent health - used with téré as subject {téré tí mọ azá ságó : you are in excellent health (lit. your body shines))

zábolé N : the term is used by Christians to designate the devil

zaranga N : a roan antelope (Hippotragus equinus), one of the most prized game animals in the Central African Republic - see yama tí ngonda

zarí N : a ratel, a nocturnal carnivorous animal resembling a badger (genus Mellivora)

zaza N : a switch made of a twig stripped of leaves {í báa finóo míngi, ngbangat' ála eke mú zaza, aso na í, apíka í : we experienced much suffering, because they took switches, they hurt us, they beat us} - chicotte is a whip or scourge

zé V : to promise - not as solemnly binding as dé bá, to swear an oath

zéké N : to act of telling someone's fortune, as with cards - mbadi means divination

zé ndc N : a promise - not as solemnly binding as bá, an oath

ze N : a leopard, one of the most feared of the beasts of prey - see yama tí ngonda

zembe [zembe, zembe, zeme, zeme] N : a knife {babá tí lo amú na lo zembe, amú na lo kpóka, amú na lo dó, amú na lo ríga, amú na lo yí kóé : his father gave him a knife, gave him a hoe, gave him an ax, gave him a throwing knife, gave him everything} - the traditional knife has a symmetrical, two-edged, pointed iron blade six to ten inches long and

set into a hilt-type carved wooden handle - it is carried in a leather sheath (póró tí zembe), usually bound about the upper arm or fastened to the belt - this single tool and weapon served all cutting and stabbing purposes - iron is called wé - other tools and weapons having iron parts are : coupe-coupe, kpangbara, nzenze (machete), dó (ax), kpóka, ngáfí (hoe), ríga (throwing knife), likongó (spear), kokora (arrow) - the iron parts of all but the machete (which is imported) were made of native iron by a blacksmith, ndao - other weapons include ngindí a bow, mbanu a cross-bow, ngombe a gun

zí V 1 : to loosen, to untie, to release, to remove (tongana í gá ngangó awe, sí lo língbi títene lo zí mabóko na pekó tí í : when we become strong, then she (i.e. France) can remove from our back her (protective and supportive) hand) (lo zí kamba na gó tí mbo : he untied the cord from the dog's neck) - syn. lungúla - opp. du 1, kánga - see also zí na ngbanga

zí V 2 : to dig a hole, esp. in the ground, for the purpose of inserting something (mo zí sése, mo sára dá, mo lú gozo da : you dig in the ground, you make a hole, you plant manioc in it) - ása means to dig shallowly with the hands, while zí implies a tool - kóro emphasizes the opening resulting from a boring operation - kpo means to puncture - koto means to scratch with the fingernails, kpaka means to scrape

zia [zia, zyá, zaa, zá] V : 1. to put, to set (mo zia ta na wá : set the pot over the fire) (ála zia likongó na lége tí dole : they put (i.e. plant) spears in the path of the elephant) (ála zia mbi na école : they put me in school) (lo zia ála na kanga : he put them in jail) - opp. mú, kanáta, lungúla - see also zia bé, zia ... na sése, zia mbéni da, zia lóro da, zia ngiá na bé tí

2. to leave, to abandon, to cease (mbi zia yi só kóé : I left all these things) (ála zia lége tí wé awe : they have abandoned the technique of iron-working) (kótóró só, fadé mbi zia mbi goe : this town, I'll leave it and go away) (lo zia ála tí sára kusára : he left them to do the work) (zia toto : cease crying) - see zia ... na lége, zia tí, zia kóli, zia wále - syn. goe, londó - opp. dutí

3. to permit, to allow, to let {mo zia í hú téré kété ma : please let us rest awhile} - see zia lége na ... tí

zia bé V : to set one's heart on - hence :

1. to trust, to commit one's self to, to receive with confidence, to believe {lo zia bé tí lo na téné tí Nzapá : he trusted God's word} - má ... bé is the neologism substituted for this standard expression in Protestant literature

zia kóli V : to divorce one's husband - syn. kpé kóli, ké kóli - see also zia wále, mariage, marier

zia lége na ... tí V : to allow, to permit {mbi zia lége na lo tí goe na Bangui : I allowed him to go to Bangui} - syn. zia 3, mú lége na ... tí

zia lóró da V : to hurry - see also kpé, kpé lóró

zia mbéní da, zia mbéní na ndó ní V : to add to, to add some more {só ake mingi pepe, mo zia mbéní da ma : that isn't very much, please add some more} - see zia 1

zia ... na lége V : to see someone on his way {mbi zia lo na lége : I saw him on his way} - see zia 2

zia ... na sése V : to set aside {tongana mo langúla na wá, mo zia na sése ngbii : when you remove it from the fire, put it aside for a while} - see zia 1

zia ngiá na bé tí V : to make someone glad, to cause someone joy {mbi zia ngiá na bé tí ála : I caused them to rejoice} - syn. mú ngiá na bé tí

zia tí V : to leave off doing, to cease, to stop - syn. zia 2 - arrêter is used when there is no verb following to designate the action being stopped - opp. gá 5

zia wále V : to divorce one's wife - syn. tomba wále, ké wále - see also zia kóli, mariage, marier

zíba [zíba, nzíba] N : blind - wa zíba is a blind person

zí na ngbanga-zonga

210

zí na ngbanga V : to acquit (in a trial) - see zí 1, ngbanga - réclamer is to accuse formally

zíngo [zíngo, dzíngo] V : 1. to arouse to waken {lo zíngo ála na musique : he awakened them with music} {lo zíngo kpíkara gbá : he (tried) in vain to arouse the pangolin} - lángó means to sleep
2. followed by na and a complement denoting a person : to scold, to reprimand {tongana kóli tí mọ azíngo na mọ, aake ngbanga tí mọ tí lóndé : if your husband scolds you, it is your business to leave} - súku 2 is stronger

zo [zo, zu, dzo, dzu] N : 1. a person, a human being, in contrast to yama an animal and yí a thing {Boganda atene, zo kóé zo : Boganda (i.e. the first president and founding father of the Central African Republic) said, all people are human beings} {sése vení amú nginza na zo : it is the land which enriches people} {ázo tí kótóró tí mbi : the people of my village} - téré is the body of a living person, while yingó is his spirit - kóá 2 is the body of a dead person, while tóró is his spirit - kóli is a male, wále is a female, adult unless otherwise specified - mérenyé is a child, pendere is an adolescent, kpíngba kóli and kpíngba wále refer to mature adults, mbakóro and kótá zo refer to old people - see famille for the kinship system - used in zo kóé, zo wa, kótá zo, zo vókó, vókó zo.

2. followed by tí and a qualifying complement : a person characterized by ... - see zo tí buruma, zo tí kótóró, zo tí lukundú, zo tí nzí, zo tí zé, and many other less idiomatic expressions - when wa can be substituted, as in wa nzí, it suggests a more permanent and essential trait than zo tí

zo kóé N : everyone, everybody {mọ éré zo kóé : call everyone}

zonga [zonga, zonga, dzonga] V : to curse {aake ngbangatí mọ tí zonga kógará tí mọ pepe : it is not your business to curse your in-laws} - dé bá means to swear an oath

zonga N : a curse - ndá táá mọ is at once a serious curse and a gross insult - bá is an oath

zo tí buruma, zo tí ngiba-zoa

zo tí buruma; zo tí ngiba N : a leper - see buruma - lepers are not traditionally segregated in any way

zo tí kótóró N : a citizen of a community - mbá means a compatriot

zo tí lukundú N : a witch, i.e. a person possessed involuntarily and (sometimes) congenitally by a witch spirit (lukundú) which compels him to harm others without his being necessarily considered responsible - zo tí zé is a leopard man

zo tí nzí N : a thief - wa nzí is a syn. suggesting a more permanent and essential trait of character, while zo tí nzí can mean one who has once stolen

zo tí zé N : a leopard man - a person who is believed to transform himself at will into a leopard to prey on people at night {tongana zo tí zé ake na pópó tí í, ake nzóní í sí gígí fadé : if there is a leopard man among us, we must go out quickly} - see zé - zo tí lukundú is a witch

zo vókó N : a black man, a term readily applied by Africans to themselves {mbi sára yí só ngbangatí mbi eke zo vókó : I do this because I am a black man} - can be inverted - opp. mbunzú - see also mbunzú vókó

zo wa N : what person, who - used interrogatively {zo wa agá só ? : who is coming?}

zó V : to burn, to set fire to, to roast {ála goe tí zó wá na ngonda : they went to set a fire in the bush} {lo zó charbon : he burned charcoal, i.e. made it by burning wood under controlled circumstances} {mbi sùru fòndò, mbi zó, mbi tē : I cut off a plantain, I roasted it, I ate it} - this verb implies an element of purpose or volition, so that it is used only of the action of persons - gbí is used of a fire burning of its accord, or of things burning - mingo means to extinguish, tínga wá means to light a fire

zoa* N : an island {sése só ngú angóro ní kóé atíngbi aéré atene, zoa : a piece of land which is surrounded by water meeting (on the other side) is called an island}

zúku V : to bow, to kneel (mbi zúku na sése tí kamáta yí : I knelt on the ground to pick something up) (lo zúku li tí lo : he bowed his head, i.e. to worship) - kuku means to kneel, ba means to bend, dénge means to lean, sambéla means to worship

zuru N : mil, a staple grain in the northern part of the country - syn. bónóó

- č -

čá' I : an exclamation used to urge on a dog : sick 'em! - dára and bi
mbo mean to incite a dog, to urge him on

čá N : pieces of roast meat sold as a snack in markets

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK-NOT FILMED

- A -

abandon V : 1. to leave, to leave behind : zia V - see also put

2. to throw away : bi ... na ngonda V, bi ... na sése V

abdomen N : external and internal aspects : yá N - refers esp. to the digestive organs, esp. the stomach - see also liver

ability N : ndaráa N, malin** N, manière N - see skill

able, be V : língbi V {I am able to read : mbi língbi tí díko mbétí} - this also means to suffice, to be equal

abort V : have an abortion, a miscarriage : ngo ... buba V {she had a miscarriage : ngo abuba awe}

abound V : eke míngi V {people abounded : ázo aake míngi}

about Prep : na lége tí CP - see concerning

about it Prep P : only post-verbally : da Av {I asked him about it : mbi húnda lo da} - usually in a locative sense : there

above Prep, Adv : na li tí CP, na ndó (tí/ní) CP - see over

abstain V : kẹ V, yí pẹpẹ V - these mean to refuse, to reject

absent, be V : manquer** V - this also means to fail

accept V : yí V, yí da V, yí pẹkó ní V - see agree

accident N : esp. with vehicle or at work : accident** N

accompany V : 1. come with : gá nɛ V {he accompanied his father : lo gá na babá tí lo} - gá means to come - see also bring

2. go with : goe na V {he accompanied his father : lo goe na babá tí lo} - see go

3. return with : kírí na V {he accompanied me back to the village : lo kírí na mbi na kótóró} - see return

4. walk with : tambéla na V - see walk

accomplish V : 1. in an active sense : sára V - see do

2. in a passive sense, meaning to be finished : we V

accuse V : 1. in general : réclamer** V

2. on simple suspicion : pá éré V {he accused me on suspicion : lo pá é-é tí mbi} - this means also to slander - see also betray

ache V : so V - see hurt

acquainted, be V : 1. casually : hinga lé tí V {I know him casually : mbi

hinga lé tí lo} - this means also to recognize

2. mutually : hinga téré V {they know one another : ála hinga téré}

3. intimately : hinga bé tí V {I know him intimately : mbi hinga bé tí lo}

acquire V : 1. obtain : wara V

2. buy : vo V

acquit V : zí ... na ngbanga V {they acquitted him : ála zí lo na ngbanga}

act V : 1. sára V {he acted badly : lo sára sioní} - see also do, make

2. in a drama : fa pandé V - see show, model

add V : to add more to : zía mbéní da V, zía mbéní na ndó ní V {he added more to it : lo zía mbéní da}

address N : 1. location : adresse** N

2. speech : téné N - this means any kind of utterance

adequate, be V : língbi V - see suffice

adjudicate V : fa ngbanga V - see judge V

administration N : 1. gouvernement** N

2. the Central African Republic is divided into a number of units called préfecture** administered by an appointed civil service officer with broad executive powers called préfet** - each of these units is divided into two or more sub-units called sous-préfecture** administered by a sous-préfet** - each of these in turn is composed of several townships called collectivité** administered by an elected council and président** - each of these is in turn composed of a number of

villages called kótóró - a city is a specially organized municipal unit called ville** with an elected mayor, but most smaller communities still have a chief or headman called respectively makunzi and kapita
administrative center N : poste** N

administrator N : 1. see administration

2. before independence, the chief officers of the préfecture** (then called région**) and the sous-préfecture (then called district**) were officially called chef de région and chef de district respectively, but were called commandant** unofficially as a carry-over from the days of military occupation and rule

admonish V : wa V - see warn

adolescent N : pendere An - see also child

adopt V : (a child) : bata (méréngé) V, kamáta (méréngé) V

adulteress N : wále tí pitáa N - this can also mean prostitute

adultery N : lángó sioní N - this also means fornication

advance V : hý V, pousser** V, go ~~na~~ devant V - see also pass, push, go

advice N : wángó N - see warning

advise V : wa V - see warn

affair N : téné N, ngbanga N - see also matter

affect V : 1. general : sára V, with a noun denoting a state, emotion, etc., as subject, and a noun denoting a person as object {fear affects me, i.e. I am afraid : mbito asára mbi} {sickness affects me, i.e. I am sick : kobéla asára mbi} {hunger affects me, i.e. I am hungry : nzala asára mbi} - see also other verbs expressing such states and emotions, and do

2. stronger reaction : gbó V - used in the same constructions as 1 - means to seize

afraid, be V : kpé mbito V - see also fear V for more expressions

after, afterwards Prep, Adv : 1. simple sequence : na ndá (tí/ní) CP,

na pekó (tí/ní) CP {he came afterwards : lo gá na ndá ní} {he came after me : lo gá na pekó tí mbi} - also means behind

2. soon after (wards) : yí tí báa ndo, used pre-clausally {soon afterwards, I threw it away : mbi yí tí báa ndo, mbi bi na ngonda} - see also immediately

afternoon N : 1. early : deux heures** N - see also day

2. late, sunset : lá kúí N

3. in general : na pekó tí kótá lá CP - see noon

again Adv : mbéní An, encore** Av {I went again to the village : mbi goe na kótóró encore} {do it again : mọ sára mbéní} - they can also be used pre-clausally, and mbéní with a noun means other

agree V : 1. yí V, yí da V, yí pekó ní V - see want

2. hold the same opinion : sára bé óko na ndó V {we agree as to this matter : í sára bé óko na ndó téné só}

agreement N : yíngó pekó tí (yí) N - see also peace, harmony

ahead Adv : na devant** CP {I'm going ahead : mbi goe na devant}

aid V : aider** V - see help

ailment N : kobéla N, malade** N - terms for disease or sickness as well as personal harm resulting from an accident

aim V : (at the vital spot, in hunting) : báa ndo tí kúí V

air N : ía N - see also sky, heaven

airplane N : avion** N

alight V : 1. of a person, to embark or disembark : ko V

2. of a bird, to alight on a branch : gbó kéké V

alike Adj, Adv : lége óko N - see same

a little Adv : kété An {I went on a little : mbi hẹ kété} {let us rest a little : zía í hú téré kété} - see little

all Adj, Adv : dóé An, tout** An, or both {all our brothers : íta tí í kóé} {the people of the whole earth : ázo tí sése kóé} {absolutely

- all men : zo kóé tout} - also means whole, entire, entirely
- allow V : 1. zía lége na V {I allowed him to go to Bangui : mbi zía lége na lo tí goe na Bangui} - see also put
 2. mú lége na V {I allowed him to go to Bangui : mbi mú lége na lo tí goe na Bangui} - see give
- almost Adv : gá ndurú V {he almost died : lo gá ndurú tí kúí} - see also be about to
- alone Adj : óko An - see one
- already Adv : 1. formerly : ándo Av {I've already told you : mbi tene ándo na mo}
 2. it is finished : we V {I have already done it (lit. I have done, it is finished) : mbi sára awe}
- also Adj, Adv : ngá An, kóé An, aussi** An - these are all used with either nouns or verbs, and are interchangeable {he also ate : lo ngá, lo te} {I also will do it : fadé mbi kóé mbi sára} {he came also : lo gá aussi} - koe also means all, whole, entirely
- although C : quand même** C - when introducing a sentence, quand même also means even if - used to modify a verb, it means anyway, nevertheless
- altogether Adv : kóé An - see entirely
- always Adv : lá kóé N {I always eat just greens : lá kóé mbi te gí ngonzá} {he changes clothes always : lo changer bongó lá kóé} - this also means every day, daily - reduplicated, it means every single day, forever
- amiability N : ngiá N - means also fellowship, joy
- among Prep : na pópó tí CP, na milieu** tí CP {among them : na pópó tí ála} - also mean between
- amuse V : (a baby) : hánda (mérengé) V - see also tempt
- amusement N : ngiá N - see also joy, play
- ancestor N : 1. collective, usually plural, general : kótara N
 2. collective, usually plural, paternal ancestors : babá N - also

means father

3. collective, usually plural, maternal ancestors : mamá N - also

means mother

4. collective plural or individual singular, a maternal or female ancestor, a grandmother : tará N

5. individual singular, esp. grandfather : kaká N

and C : 1. in all uses : na C {father and mother : babá na mamá} {he came and he saw the village : lo gá na lo báa kótóró} - also means with, by, toward, in, from

2. only in joining sentences : mais** C - also means but

3. almost exclusively in French numerals : et** C

and then C : 1. na C, mais** C, et** C - see and

2. et puis** C - synonymous with connectives listed in 1

3. sí C {I called him, and then he came : mbi éré lo, sí lo gá} - can also mean so then, so that

anecdote N : isoró N is a general term for an utterance, including a story

anger N : ngonzo N - also means bile

angry, be V : 1. sára ngonzo V {he was angry : lo sára ngonza}

2. ngonzo ... sára V {he was angry : ngonzo asára lo} - see affect

3. ngonzo ... gbó V {he was very angry : ngonzo agbó lo} - this is stronger than 2 - see seize

animal N : yama N - also means meat

animal, wild N : yama yí ngonda N

anklet N : of coiled brass : ngbéréna N - also means bracelet, bell (for dog)

annoy V : emmerder** V, gêner** V, be V, mú yángá V - see also to discourage {he is annoying me : lo eke emmerder mbi}

another Adj : mbéni A_n - see other

answer V : 1. (a call) : yí da V - also means to agree

2. (a question) : kírí téné V {he answered me : lo kírí téné na mbi}

3. répondre** V is sometimes used

4. kírí V is used when a term denoting the response occurs elsewhere in the environment (I'll find something to answer to your question : fadé mbi wara mbéní yí tí kírí na question tí mǝ) - see return

antelope N : no generic term applies to all antelopes, and the precise zoological identifications of the Sango terms are not always clear - see duiker, eland, hartebeest, kob, roan antelope, sitatunga, waterbuck

anus N : yané N, dú tí yané N

any Adj : mbéní An - also means other, some

any more Adv : mbéní ... pepe Av (I don't want to go there any more : mbi yí tí goe ká mbéní pepe) - encore** ... pepe Av is syn.

anything P : mbéní yí N - also means something

anyway Adv : quand même Av, used post-verbally - used pre-clausally, it means if, although

apology N : pardon** N - this means any humble recognition of one's wrongdoing, or of one's obligation or dependence, as to God - it is used as an ingratiating, placating, and apologetic interjection

appear V : 1. to come into view : sí V, sí gígí V {the animal came into view : yama ní así gígí} {sweat appeared on my body : gbikí así na téré tí mbi} - sí means to arrive, sí gígí means to emerge
2. to seem : báa tongana {he appeared to be dirty : abáa tongana lo eke saleté}

appetite N : nzala N - see also desire N

application N : a formal request : demande** N

apportion N : kángbi V - see divide

apprehension N : mbito N - see fear

apprentice N : 1. in general : apprenti** N - this is also used in sense 2
2. a truck driver's flunky : bátá kóngbá N

approach V : gá ndurú V (I approached the house : mbi gá ndurú na da) - see come

arbitrate V : fáa ngbangba V - see judge

argue V : papa V - see quarrel V

argument N : papa N - see quarrel N

arid Adj : kúrú N - see dried

arise V : lóndó V - see get up

arm N : mabóko N, ti N - these also mean hand

armpit N : gbé tí mabóko N

arcuse V : zingo V - also means to waken, to scold

arrange V : 1. leke V - see also prepare

2. to set in order : leke na kamba ní V - means to arrange in a row or line

arrest V : arrêter** V - means also to stop

arrival N : síngó N {upon your arrival, I'll see you : síngó tí mo, fadé mbi báa mo} - from sí to arrive

arrive V : of motion toward a place : sí V, gá V, or both {he arrived in the village : lo sí na kótóró} {I arrived at the house : mbi gá na da} {I arrived at the house : mbi gá sí na da} - see also come

2. of the passage of time : sí V {evening arrived : lá kúí así, or, así na lá kúí}

arrow N : kókora N - see also bow

as C : tongana C - also means like

ascend V : monter** V

ask V : 1. in general : húnda V

2. (for something): húnda (yí) V - see also beg, pray

3. (a question) húnda téné V

assemble V : 1. bóngbi V

2. (for a common purpose) : bóngbi li tí V, bóngbi téré V - see also meet

assembly N : 1. in general : bǒngbi N

2. national legislature : assemblée (legislative)** N

assert V : tene V - say

assist V : aider** V - see help

asthma N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

astonished, be V : 1. to be surprised : li ... kpé V {they were astonished : li tí ála akpé}

2. with an element of fear : bé ... gbó V {they were astonished : bé tí ála agbó} - see seize

at Prep : 1. na C {he is at Bangui : lo eke na Bangui} - also means and, but, to, in, from

2. sometimes : na mbáge tí CP {it's like that in Bangui : aeke tongasó na mbáge tí Bangui} - also means toward, beside

attach V : tǐngbi V - see join, fasten

attack V : 1. tí na ndó tí V - this means to fall upon

2. goe berá na li tí V {they attacked the chief : ála goe berá na li tí makunzi} - see fight, war

3. sometimes : attaquer** V

attempt V : tara V, gí lége V - see try

attention N : (in sense of paying attention) : attention** N - see pay attention

at the edge of Prep : na yángá tí CP - see edge

aunt N : 1. mother's sister : mamá N - means also mother

2. mother's older sister : kótá mamá N

3. mother's younger sister : kété mamá N

4. father's sister : omba N

authority N : ti N - means also hand

automobile N : 1. general term : kutukutu N

2. passenger car : auto** N

3. bus : autocar** N, car** N

4. truck : camion** N

avenge V : fúta kulá V - see revenge N - this refers to the retribution
occasioned by very grave offenses - see also sorrow, resentment

avoid V : (a person) : kẹ V - this means to refuse, to reject

awaken V : zingo V - means also to scold

aware, be V : hinga V - see know

away Adv : see far

ax N : dó N - see tool

baboon N : bákoyá N - see monkey

baby N : kété mérengé N - see child

bachelor N; kombáámhá N - a single girl is masía

back N : 1. in general : pekó N - used in expressions for behind, after
2. lower : ngbundá N, ndá N - also mean hips, buttocks

back up V : kírí na ndá ní V, kírí na pekó V - see return

bad Adj : sioní An {a bad man : zo tí sioní} {it is bad : aeké sioní}
{your badness : sioní tí mo} - see crooked, good

bag N : 1. an indigenous carrying bag of leather or woven grass : bozó N
2. a sack : sac**N - also means a sum of a thousand francs

bald, be V : mbóko V {he is bald : li tí lo ambóko} - also means to be
bruised or ulcerated

ball N : 1. large inflated ball for sports : ballon** N
2. smaller, solid ball : balle** N
3. rubber ball, esp. home-made : ndembú N - this means rubber

bamboo N : bambou** N - true bamboo is rare, and the term applies usually
to the stem of the leaf of a species of fan palm

banana N : bulée N - see also plantain

bark V : as dog : dé kóngó V - also means to shout

basin N : kolóngo N - also means a broad platter

basket N : sakpá N - there are a number of kinds of baskets

bathe V : sukúla V, sukúla ngú V, sukúla téré V - see wash up

battle N : berá N - this means war

be V : 1. simple copula : eke V, ke V {he's a man : lo eke kóli} {it

be (cont.)-because, because of

226

(the weather) is cold : akeke

2. a marker of progressive action, with another verb : eke V, ke V
{he is eating : lo ke te kóbe} - but this can be completely empty of meaning

3. to exist, to be present : du V, dutí V - see sit, dwell

be about to V : 1. gá ndurú V {he was about to die : lo gá ndurú tí kúí} - means also almost - see near

2. yí tí V {he was about to die : lo yí tí kúí} - see want

bead N : 1. in general : lenge N

2. a string of beads worn about the hips : kisi N - see ornament

bear V : 1. to carry : yó V

2. (fruit or seed) : lé V {the ground doesn't bear fruit : sése alé pepe} - see seed

3. (a child) : dú V {she bore a child : lo dú mérengé} - also means to beget, to be born

beard N : kóá ngbagba N - see jaw, hair

bear down V : ne V - also means to be heavy, to crush, to chew

beat V : 1. hit : píka V

2. defeat : gagner** V

3. (drum) : píka (ngó) V

4. (as heart or pulse) : pousser** V, pomper** V - see push

beautiful Adj. : pendere An {beautiful clothes : pendere bongó} {a beautiful woman : pendere wále} - also means young

beautiful, be V : (of weather) : gá nzoní V, sára nzoní V, eke nzoní V
{it is beautiful : akeke nzoní}

beauty N : pendere An {the beauty of the village : pendere tí kótóró}

because, because of C, Prep : 1. ngbangatí C, tenetí C {it is because of money : akeke ngbangatí nginza} {thank you because you came : merci tenetí só mo gá} - also means in order to

2. sometimes : na lége tí - usually means by means of

beckon V : 1. in general, to signal with the hand : pé ti V {I beckoned with my hand to show I could not talk : mbi pé ti tí mbi tí fa na gigi mbi sára téné pepe} - can also mean to wave - see winnow
 2. to summon : éré na nabóko V

become V : gá V, followed by an appropriate noun or adjunctive {I became big : mbi gá kótá} {I became a man : mbi gá kóli} - gá nzoni V can have the special meanings to recover, to be comforted, to prosper

bed N : tangé N - gbogbó N is a mat

bee N : lavú N, wótoro N

beef N : bágara N - this also mean cattle, bull, cow, calf, ox, steer - see meat

beer N : 1. generic term for alcoholic beverages : samba N
 2. imported European beer : lílre** N
 3. made from grain : bíribiri N
 4. made from sprouted corn : lokpoto N
 5. mead made from honey : duma N

beeswax N : mafuta tí wótoro N - this can also mean honey

before Prep : na devant tí CP - also means in front of

before Adv : kózo (ní) Av - also means first

beg V : 1. to ask : hínda V
 2. as a beggar : yó yí V

beget V : dú V - also means to bear (a child), to be born

begin V : 1. in general : commencer** V {it'll begin soon : aske commencer ándo hio} {he began to work : lo commencer tí sára koo}
 2. gá V {the animal began to grow : yama ní agá akono} - see come, become
 3. (a trip) : mú lége V - see start off

behave V : sára V - see do

behind Prep. : na paksó tí CP - also means after

- believe V : 1. to agree to : yí da V - means also to accept, to answer
 2. to trust, to commit oneself : zia bé V - also means to covet, to set one's heart on
 3. Protestant neologism for 2 : má na bé V

believer N : wa má bé N - a Protestant neologism

bell N : brass bell tied to dog's neck : ngbéré ná N - also means brass coiled bracelet

belong V : eke tí V (this hat belongs to him : kpoto só ake tí lo)

below Prep, Adv : na gbé tí/ní CP - also means under

bench N : (school or other) : banc** N - also means board (for chopping food)

bend V : 1. ba V (he bent the stick : lo ba kéké ní) - also means to be bent

2. dénge V - means to lean to one side - used with object

3. to break (as a stick): kúngbi V - also means to fold

beneath Prep : na gbé tí/ní CP - also means under

bent, be V : ba V (his back is bent : pekó tí lo aba) - also means to bend

beside Prep : 1. in rather remote connection : na áké tí/ní CP - also means toward

2. in closer relationship : na téré tí/ní CP - also means on the body of

best Adj : nzoni ahó kóé An - nzoni is good

betray V : 1. sára makoró V - also means to slander

2. if money is involved : ká V - also means to sell

betrayal N : makoró N - also means slander

betroth N : make public news of betrothal : fa na gígí V - means to publish

better Adj : nzoni ahó An - nzoni means good

between Prep : na pópó tí/ní CP, na milieu** tí/ní CP - also mean among

Bible N : mbétí tí Nzapá N

bicycle N : vélo** N

big Adj : kótá An {I carried the big crate : mbi yó kótá caisse ní} - also means wide, thick, great

big, be or become V : kano V - also means to grow

bile N : ngonzo N - also means anger

bind V : (with a cord) : kánga (na kámba)V- also means to tie, to shut

bird. N : ndeke N

birth N : dúngó N - from dú V, to bear, to beget

bite V : 1. with incisors : te V - used of man, dog, snake, mosquito - also means to eat

2. with molars : ne V - also means to chew, to bear down, to crush, to be heavy

3. as fish : mene V - means to swallow, to gulp

bitter, be V : sé V {quinine is bitter : quinine asé}

black Adj : vokó An {a black cloth : vokó bongó} - also means dark, dirty - see color

black, be or become V : vokó V {it became black : ndo avokó} {my body is black : téré tí mbi avokó} - also means to be dark, to be dirty

black man N : zo vokó N, vokó zo N

blacksmith N : ndao N

blade N : 1. flat of blade : lé N {knife blade : lé tí zembe} - also means face, eye

2. edge of blade : yángá N {the edge of the knife : yángá tí zembe} - also means mouth, edge

bleed V : (méné) ... yuru V - yuru means to leak, to seep, to run out (as a liquid)

bless V : pronounce blessing : éré téné nzoni na ndó tí V

blind Adj : síba N

blind person-born

230

blind person N : wa ziba N, zo só alá nde papa N, zo só lé tí lo akúí N,
zo tí tatare nde N

blink V : ké lé V (I blinked : mbi ké lé mbi)

blood N : méné N

bloom V : sára ndókó V - ndókó is a flower

blow V : 1. as wind : ía V (the wind blew : pupu aia)

2. with mouth : hú mbó V - also means to exhale

3. (the nose) : úlu (ú) V

4. (wind instruments) : úlu V

blue Adj : bleu** N - see color

bluff V : hánda V (they bluffed him to frighten him : ála hánda lo sí lo
kpé abito) - means to taunt, to trick, to entice, to fascinate

board N : (for chopping food) : banc** N - also means bench

boast V : fa baba V, sára baba V, fa téré V - also means to brag - baba
means vanity

boat N : 1. dugout canoe : ngó N

2. a larger boat or ship of European design : bateau** N

body N : 1. living, of man or animal : téré N - also means side, flank

2. dead human : kóá N

3. dead animal : kúí N

boil V : 1. as water : kporo V - means to bubble

2. (food) : tó V - means to cook

bone N : bíó N

book N : mbéti N - also means paper, document, magazine

bore V : kóro (dú) V - see also dig

bosom friend N : camarade** N, ndeko N - see also companion

born, be V : dú V - usually with parent(s) as subject, sometimes only with
the subject marker a- (my mother bore me : mamá tí mbi adú mbi) (I was

born : adú abi} - means to bear (child), to beget

borrow V : hunda bon** V, sára bon** V - also means to buy on credit

both Adj*: óe kéé An

bother V : gêner** V, enmerder** V, be V, mú yángá V - see also to discourage, to annoy, to weary

bottle 1 : 1. European type : bouteille** N

2. a gourd cut open at the small end : ngángá N - see also dipper

bottom N : gbé N, ndá N - gbé means the lower part, ndá means lower back, hips, buttocks

bounce V : uru V - means also to jump, to fly

bow N:(a weapon) : gindí N - see also arrow

bow V : 1. (the head) : zúku (li) V - means also to kneel, to worship

2. bend the body : ba V {he bowed low : lo ba na sése} - also means to bend

box N : 1. small, wooden, metal, or cardboard : boîte** N {a post-office box : boîte postale}

2. large case or crate : caisse** N

3. wooden chest for storage : sandúku N

4. suitcase : valise** N

boy N : mérengé (tí) kóli N - also means son - mérengé is a child

bracelet N : coiled brass : ngóréfina N - also means anklet, bell (for dog)

brag V : fa baba V, sára laba V - baba means vanity

braid V : 1. (hair) : há (kóá li) V

2. (rope) : há (kámbe) V

brain N : ndóndó li N

brave Adj : ngangó An - means strong - see also hero

bread N : mápa N

break V . 1. as a rope : fáa V {he broke the rope : lo fáa kámbe} {the

rope broke : kámbe afáa} - also means cut, kill

2. as a pot : fáa V { he broke the pot : lo fáa ta} {the pot broke : ta afáa}

3. as a stick : kúngbi V {he broke the stick : lo kúngbi kéké} {the stick broke : kéké akúngbi} - also means to fold

break ground V : dé (sése) V - see also make a garden

break wind V : sósó V

breast N : 1. part of chest : li bé N

2. whole chest : kate N

3. breast proper : me N - also means nipple

breath N : mbóo N

breathe V : 1. hú V

2. hú mbóo V - this means to exhale, to blow with the mouth

brew V : (beer) : tó samba V

bribe N : matabísi N, cadeau** N - also mean a gift

brick N : sun-dried block for building : moule** N

bride-price N : 1. mosoro N - this means wealth in general

2. wé N - this means basically iron - a large part of the bride-price was traditionally paid in the form of conventionally shaped bars of iron

bridge N : pont** N

bring V : gá na V {bring the knife : gá na zamba} - gá is to come

bring back V : kí'na V - kí' means to return

bristle n : 1. as of caterpillar : kii N - also means thorn

2. hair : kóá N

broad Adj : kótá An - also means big, thick, great, important

bronchitis N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

brood V : as a chicken : bóngbi ... na kpángbi tí V - kpángbi is a wing - bóngbi means to gather

brook N : ngú N - means water, river, rain, year

broom N : balai** N

brother N : 1. íta (tí) kóli - íta is a sibling - see also sister

2. older brother : kótá zo N

3. younger sibling : ngambe N

brother-in-law N : kógará N - also means father-in-law, son-in-law

brown Adj : 1. reddish : bingbá An - means red - see color

2. dark : wókó An - means black, dark - see color

brown V : as food frying : be V - also means to be ripe

bruised, be V : mbókó V - also means to be ulcerated, to be bald

bubble V : kpóro V - used of water boiling (see boil) and of carbonated drinks, etc.

bud V : as a newly planted slip : mbuma V, tọ V

buffalo N : gógóá N, ngbáa N, bágara N - bágara is more commonly used of domestic cattle

buffalo bird N : ndeke tí ngbáa N

build V : sára (da) V

building N : da N - see also house

bull N : kóli bágara N - bágara means cattle, cow, ox, steer, calf, beef, and sometimes buffalo

bunch N : gbá N - see bundle

bundle N : 1. as of grass : gbá N {a bundle of grass : gbá tí péré} {a bundle of arrows : gbá tí kókora}

2. a head load : kóngbá N - see also burden

burden N : kóngbá N - see load, bundle

bureaucrat N : mbunzú wókó N - see clerk

burglar N : zo tí nzi N, wa nzi N - mean thief in general

burn V : 1. impersonal action of the fire itself or of the thing burned :

gbí V {fire burned five houses : wá agbí da ukú} {five houses burned : da ukú agbí}

2. to set fire deliberately : zó V {he burned the grass : lo zó péré}

burr N : kpo mo ngangó N, kii N, sisi N - see also thorn

burst V : sungba V - used of thunder and of cotton bolls, as well as of other explosive noises or motions

bury V : lú V - also means to plant

bus N : autocar**, car** - see also automobile

bush N : wilderness : ngonda N

bush pig N : mbengé N

business N : affair : téné N, ngbanga N {it is your business : aeke téné tí mo, aeke ngbanga tí mo} - téné also means word

busy, be V : occuper** V

but C : mais** C, na C, mais** na C, et** na C

butcher V : doroko V {we butchered the animal : í doroko yama ní} - see cut

buttock N : ngbundá N, ndá N - see also back, hips

buy V : 1. vɔ V - also means to sell

2. on credit : sára bon** V, húnda bon** V - also mean to borrow

by means of Prep : na lége tí/ní CP - also means through

- C -

cabinet-maker N : charpentier** N - only the more sophisticated use
menuisier** N

cackle V : as a chicken : toto V - means to cry

cadaver N : kóá N - means dead human body

calf N : mérengé tí bágara N - bágara means cattle, cow, bull, etc.

call V : 1. to get attention : to kóa V - also means to send word

2. to summon someone : éré V, éré ndo V

3. to name someone : éré V

call for V : demand : éré V, húnda V - húnda means to ask

can V : língbi V - means to suffice, to be able, to be equal

canoe N : dugout : ngó N

can you beat that? : (mo) báa yí awe, 3

cap N : kpoto N - means a hat

capable, be V : língbi V - means to be able, to suffice, to be equal

capsule N : (of medicine) : quinine** N - see also pill, tablet

capture V : kamáta V - means to take

car N : auto** N - see automobile

card N : 1. membership : carte** N

2. identification : carte d'identité** N

care for V : 1. sára na V - means to serve, to work for, to use

2. (as a sick person) : soigner** V - means also to treat medically

carpenter N : charpentier** N

carry V : 1. (in container) : tó V - means draw water, dip up liquid, carry
dirt in basket, etc.

2. (on head, back, or shoulders) : yó V
3. (in hand) : gbó V - means to grasp
4. (a baby) : kánga (mérangé) na pekó V - see to tie

carry on V : (in an agitated manner) : déma téré V

cartridge N : cartouche** N

carve : (a figure) : lèkè pandé V

case N : a crate : caisse** N, sometimes sandúku N - see box

cast V : throw : bi V

castrate V : lungúla korogbó V - korogbó is the scrotum

cat N : yáṣ N - usually domestic, but may also refer to a wildcat

catch V : 1. to seize, as with hand or trap : gbó V

2. to take : kamáta V

3. to chase and catch : tomba V

catch fire V : gbí V - see burn

catch sight of V : báa V - see see

catechist N : a religious lay leader or instructor : catéchiste** N

caterpillar N : makongó N

Catholic N : catholique** N

cattle N : bágara N - means beef, bull, cow, calf, ox, steer, and sometimes buffalo - various modifiers make the meaning more specific as to age and sex - see male, female, child

caught, be V : (in a cord snare) : gbó (kámba) V - see seize

cause V : (to do) : sára {he caused him to fall : lo sára sí lo tí} - see make, do, affect

cause to disappear V : húnzi V - see finish, hide

cease V : 1. to stop : arrêter** V

2. with a verbal complement denoting the action stopped : zía V {he ceased to chase animals : lo zía tí tomba yama} - also means to leave,

to abandon, to put

celebrate V : sára matánga V

celebration N : matánga N - see also holiday

certain, a Adj : óko An, mbení An {I saw a certain man : mbi báa mérengé
óko, mbi báa mbéri mérengé} - óko means one, mbení means other

certainly Adv : biakú Av, bianí Av - can be used either pre-clausally or
post-verbally - either can be reduplicated for emphasis - means also
truly

certificate N : certificat** N - without further specification, refers
to the certificate awarded upon successful passing of the examinations
marking the completion of the six-year elementary education program

chaff N : (of grain) : kakó N - see also husk

chance N : lége N - see opportunity - means also path, manner, way

change V : changer** V {he changed clothes : lo changer bongó} {people's
dispositions change : bé tí zo achanger}

change one's mind V : leke bé V - also means to repent

chapel N : chapelle** N, da tí Nzapá N - see church

character N : bé N - also means disposition, liver

charcoal N : charbon** N

charm N : (protective) : yoró N - see medicine, talisman, fetish

chase V : tomba V - means to pursue, to drive away

chat V : general terms : causer** V, sára isoró V, sára téné V

2. with emphasis on good fellowship : sára ngiá - see have fun, play

chauffeur N : chauffeur** N

cheek N : mbángbá N

cheetah N : ngóro N (?)

chest N : 1. part of anatomy : kate N (see also chest)

2. wooden box : sandúku N

chicken-circumcision

238

chicken N : kóndo N - complements are added to specify hen, rooster

chief N : in traditional and colonial power structures, the head of a village : makunzi N - see also headman

chigger N : ngusú N - also means maggot

child N : 1. non-adult, human or animal : mérengé N - means baby, infant, youth, adolescent - complements specify sex - boy, girl
2. in kinship sense : mérengé N - see also son, daughter

chimpanzee N : seko N

chin N : ngbagba N - also means lower jaw

choose V : choisir** V, éré ... na pópó tí/ní V, gí ... na pópó tí/ní V, kamáta ... na pótó tí/ní V, mfi ... na pópó tí/ní V - see call, seek, take

chop V : (a tree) : dé (kéké) V - see cut

Christian N : 1. general terms : chrétien** N, mérengé tí Nzapá N
2. a church member in good standing (among Protestants) : membre** N

church N : 1. a congregation of people : église** N
2. a building : da tí Nzapá N, chapelle** N, église** N (among Catholics chiefly), mission** N (among less sophisticated speakers)
3. a denomination : église tí catholique** N, église tí père** N refer to the Catholic church - église tí protestant** N, église tí anglais** N refer to the Protestant church - mission** N can substitute for église** N in these expressions

cigarette N : cigarette** N - mánga N is a more general term for tobacco - see smoke

circle V : ngóro V - see surround

circumcise V : fáa ganzá V - the same term also applies to female excision of the clitoris

circumsion N : ganzá N - this term applies to the entire set of ceremonies constituting the rites of passage for both sexes, including the physical

operation, a dance, and a certain amount of formal instruction

city N : 1. general term for a settled community : kótóró N

2. a municipal administrative unit : ville** N

civilized, be or become V : civiliser** V {a woman who is civilized ... : mbéní wále so aciviliser ...} {a civilized person : zo tí civiliser}

civil servant N : fonctionnaire** N - see also bureaucrat

claw N : (of animal) : nzené N - also means a finger nail

clay N : 1. mud : potopótó N - also means mush, gruel

2. for making pots : ndóo N

clean Adj : propre** An, vurú An, saleté** pepe An - vurú means white, saleté means dirty

clean V : sukúla V - means esp. to wash

clean, be V : vurú V - means to be white

cleave V (together) : gbó téré V - see seize

clergy N : 1. Protestant ordained pastor : pasteur** N

2. Catholic ordained priest : père** N

clerk N : an office employee, esp. in a government office : mbunzú vakó N - see bureaucrat

climb V : monter** V

close Adj : ndurú An - means also short

close V : kángá V - means also to tie, to fasten, to be closed

closed, be V : kángá V - means also to tie, to fasten, to close

cloth, clothing N : bngó N

cloud N : mbínda N - also means fog

coagulate V : gbó V, coller** V - see seize, harden, set, be firm

coal N : 1. glowing : lé tí wá N

2. embers : píndírí N

3. charcoal : charbon** N

coffee-comfort

240

coffee N : café** N

cogitate V : há V, b'anda V - see think

cold N : 1. a disease : kóró N

2. temperature : dé N

cold, be or become : 1. general : dé V {the water is cold, or the water is becoming cold : ngú adé}

2. to be cold (of weather) : ndo aake dé (míngi), dé aake (míngi), asára dé (míngi), dé alíngbi pape - the last expression and the others with míngi are very emphatic expressions : it is very cold

3. to become cold : gá dé V, mú dé V, wara dé V

collect V : bǎngbi V - see also to gather, to assemble

colobus monkey N : ngui N - see also monkey

color N : 1. couleur** N

2. the color system is as follows :

red, orange, deep yellow, reddish brown are bingbá An - the same term followed by kété is a less intense shade of red, orange, or yellow, e.g. pink - reduplicated, it is bright red - black, dark gray, dark green, dark blue, purple, dark brown are vokó An - the same term followed by kété is gray or grayish shades of other colors - reduplicated, it is pitch black - white, light gray, light yellow, and other pastel tints are vurú An - followed by kété, the same term means light gray, and other pastel tints - reduplicated, it means bright white - more sophisticated speakers use French terms also

comb V : soa V

comb N : soa li N

come V : gá V {come here : mo gá na ndo só} - see also arrive, enter, bring, accompany, follow, approach

come into view V : sí gígí V - see appear

come out V : sí gígí V - see emerge

comfort V : wa (be tí) V - see also warn, advise

comforted, be V : bé ... gá nzoní V {I comforted him, so that he was
comforted : mbi wa bé tí lo, sí bé tí lo agá nzoní}

command V : commander** V - means also to rule, to supervise

commence V : commencer** V - see begin

commercial center N : galá N - see also market

commit oneself to V : zía bé na - see trust, believe, covet, set one's heart on

community N : any organized and settled human community : kótóró N -
hence, this means homestead, village, home, town, city, tribal community, nation - see also land, wilderness, field

companion N : 1. bosom friend : camarade** N, ndeko N

2. compatriot : mbá N

3. co-worker : f6 N

4. friend : ndeko N

5. person having the same name as oneself : ndoé N

6. lover, mistress : ndeko N

compassion N : mawa N - also means pity, misery

compatriot N : mbá N - see companion

compel V : forcer** V - see also impel, propel, force, persuade

complain V : 1. to groan, to moan : bima V

2. to cry out : toto V

3. to protest, to object : dé kité V - this last implies a more rational approach

complete Adj : kóé An - see all, entire

completed, be V : we V - see finished

compose V : (differences) : leke téné V, gá sòngó V, sára sòngó V, sára bé óko V - see also reconcile, agree, have fellowship

comrade N : camarade** N, ndeko N - see companion

conceal V : hónde V - see hide

conceit-container

242

conceit N : baba N - see vanity

conceive V : become pregnant : mé ngo V - ngo is a foetus

concerning Prep : na léga tí CP - see also by means of, through

conclude V : on the basis of observation and reflexion : báa ... tene V

{I concluded that he had come : mbi báa mbi tene lo gá awe}

concord N : siriri N - see peace

condemn V : 1. kẹ V - means also refuse, reject

2. fa ngbanga V - means also judge

conference N : conférence** N

confident, be : hinga ... tene V {I was confident that he was there : mbi hinga mbi tene lo eke ká} - see be sure

connect V : tingingbi V - see join

conquer V : gagner** V - see defeat, wage war

conqueror N : lombé N - see hero

consequence N : fúta N - see recompense, retribution, wages

conserve V : bata V - means to keep, to protect

consider V : 1. penser** V, há V, b'anda V, gí bé V, báa V - see also to think, to ponder, to see

2. hinga ... tene V, báa ... tongana V - see also be confident

console V : wa bé V - see comfort, warn

constitute V : sára V - see make

consult V : 1. to ask : húndr V

2. (worshipfully) : díko V - see also read, count, pray, worship

container N : 1. small and deep : kopo N

2. broad and shallow, a basin or platter : kolóngo N

3. dish : sembé N

4. frying pan : gbara (búba) N

5. pot, pan : ta N

6. basket : sakpá N

7. see also box, crate, chest

contemplate V : báa V - see see

contend V : 1. verbally : papa V - see quarrel

2. physically : tiri V - see fight

contest N : gbíma ndoko N - esp. a foot race

continue V : 1. continuer** V {continue your work : mɔ continuer kɔa tí mɔ} {continue to work : mɔ continuer tí sára kɔa}

2. ngbá V - means also to remain

control N : 1. ngangó An - see strength, power

2. ti N - see hand, authority

control V : exercise self-control : gbó téré V - see seize, body

converse V : sára isoró V, sára téné V, causer** V - see also to talk, to chat

cook V : 1. boil : tó V

2. fry : yóro V

3. roast : zó V - see burn

copulate V : 1. of human beings : gbá V - either sex may be the subject, the other then being the object

2. of animals : uru na ndó V, monter** (na ndó) V - only the male may be the subject, while the female is the object

cord N : kámba N - also means rope, string, vine, snare

cordiality N : ngiá N, bé óko N - see also fellowship

corpse N : human dead body · kóá N

correctly Adv : mbirimbiri An - also means straight, right

corrosion N : sóko N - see rust

corrugated metal N : tôle** N - see roofing

cost N : ngéré N - means also value, price

costly-crooked

244

costly Adj : cher** An - see expensive

cotton N : coton** N, tende N

cough V : tíkò V

counsel V : wa V - means also to warn, to comfort

count V : díkò V - see also read, consult, pray, worship

country N : 1. nation : kótóró N - see community

2. land : sése N - see earth

3. not a settled community : ngonda N - see wilderness

courthouse N : da tí ngbanga N - see judgment

cover V : (as a pot) : kángà V - see shut, tie

covet V : 1. zía bé V - means also to believe, to trust, to set one's heart on

2. crave, desire : eke na nzala V

cow N : wále (tí) bágara N - bágara means cattle, beef, bull, calf, ox, steer, etc. - see female

co-wife N : sambá N - see also wife

co-worker N : fò N - see companion

crave V : eke na nzala V - see desire, covet

craving N : nzala N - see desire

crawl V : hára V

crazy Adj : búbá An - means foolish, senseless

crazy, be V : be demented : li ... tourner** V

create V : sára V - see make

creep V : hára V - also means to crawl

creeper N : a vine : kámbe N - also means a cord, a snare

crocodile N : ngundé N

crooked Adj : kíríkírí An - this suggests something twisted, with several

bends - see also be crooked

crooked, be V : ba V - also means to be bent, usually with a single major curvature

crop N : food crop : kóbe N

cross V : (as a river, etc.) : fáa {cross the river : fáa ngú} {cross the road : fáa lége} - also means to cut, to kill, to break

cross-bow N : mbanu N - see also bow

cross-roads N : croisement** N, sángbi lége N

crush V : 1. (as with roller) : ne V, néka V - ne means to bear down, to be heavy, to chew

2. to pound : pete V

crushed, be V : ri V - this is the state resulting from ne to crush

curse V : zonga V

curse N : zonga N

cunning N : ndaráa N, manière** N - see skill

cure V : kái ... kobéla V - see heal

cushion N : kóli N

custom N : lége N - see manner

cut V : 1. fáa V {cut the grass : fáa péré} {cut up the onions : fáa yá tí oignon} {cut the rope : fáa kamba} - also means to kill, to break

2. split : súru V

3. chop : dé V

4. butcher : doroko V

- D -

daily Adv : lá kóé N - means also always - reduplicated, it means forever

dam N : (built to catch fish) : ngbingbi N - see fish V

dance N : 1. general term : dódó N

2. particular African dances : lengé N, ganzá N, sumári N

3. European dances : collar** N, malínga N, nylon** N

dance V : dó (dódó) V - the name of any dance can be used as the object -
see also kick

dark Adj : vókó An - also means black, dirty

darkness N : time of darkness (not an abstract term) : bíngo N

date N : lá N, date** N - dates are expressed in French : names of days
of the week, months of the year, and numbers - see also day, sun

daughter N : mérengé (tí) wále N - also means girl - see child

daughter-in-law N : term applied by a man to his daughter-in-law : wógará N

day N : 1. in all senses : lá N - also means sun - see also today, tomorrow,
yesterday, always, date

2. in counting days : lángó N {I stayed three days : mbi dutí lángó
otá} - also means sleep

daylight N : lá N - also means sun, day

daytime N : lá N - also means sun, day

deafness N : mbongí N

deaf person N : wa mbongí N

death N : 1. in general : kóá N {death took him : kóá amú lo} {I am not
afraid of death : mbito tí kóá amú mbi peps} - also means a dead human
body

2. an instance or act of death : kúí N {he paid damages for her death :

lo payer kúí tí lo} {there were ten deaths : kúí aake bale óko} -
also means a dead animal body

debt N : 1. social obligation, esp. in traditional terms : kódá N
2. commercial debt : bon** N - see borrow, loan, buy on credit, incur
debt

decide V : penser** V, choisir** V, tene V - see think, choose, say

declare V : tene V - see say

decompose V : fcutu** V - see rot

decorate V : lake pendere V, sára nzoní V

decrease V : diminuer** V

decree N : ndiá N - see law

decree V : á ndiá V - see legislate

deep, be V : linda V - means also go down

defeat V : 1. gagner** V, hý V - see pass, win, conquer
2. overwhelm : kara V, hý ndó tí V - see overcome

defecate V : 1. literal : sára purú V
2. euphemism : goe (na) ngonda V - also means to urinate

defiled Adj : as a result of death : ngóngóá N - applies to the place where
death occurs

delay N : hold back : hinga V

delight N : ngiá N - see joy - also means cordiality, fellowship

demand V : 1. ask : hunda V
2. call for : éré V

demented, be V : li ... tourner** V {he is demented : li tí lo atourner} -
see also crazy, foolish

demolish V : 1. (a house) : lungúla ... na sése V
2. (something else, e.g. furniture) : kángbi yá ní V, kángbi pópó ní V

demonstrate V : fa V - means to show, to teach, to reveal.

demur-dignitary

248

demur V : dé kité V - means to object, to doubt

deny V : (an accusation) : bele (téné) V

depart V : 1. lóndó V - means also to rise

2. goe V - means also to go

3. zía V - means also to leave, to abandon

4. quitter** V - means also to leave

depend V : dépendre** V {that depends on you : só adépendre mo}

descend V : 1. linda V - means also to go down, to be deep

2. descendre** V

desire N : nzala N - means any kind of desire : appetite, lust, craving,
hunger, thirst, urge

desire V : yí V - see want, like, love

desist V : zía V - see cease, leave

desk N : bureau** N

destroy V : buba V, foutu** V - mean to spoil, to ruin

develop V : 1. to grow : kono V, mǎi V - see be big

2. (photographs) : sukúla (photo**) V - means also to wash

devil N : zábolo N

devious Adj : kiríkiri An - means crooked, evil

die V : kúí V

die N : (for gambling) : pátará N - see gamble

different Adj : ndé An - reduplicated, it means various - see also other

difficulty N : ngangó An - see hard, strong

dig V : 1. shallowly, with hands : ása V

2. more deeply, with tool : zí V - the end purpose is usually to insert
something into the hole

3. to pierce, to bore : kóro V

dignitary N : kótá zo N - means also elder, important person

diminish V : diminuer** V - see also decrease

dip V : (liquid) : tó V - see also carry in container

dipper N : made of a half-gourd, and used for dipping and drinking water :
kangú N

dirt N : saleté** An

dirty Adj : saleté** An, vokó An

disappointment N : vundú N - invariably colored by resentment and a desire
for retaliation, since it is felt to be caused by personal ill-will
or a personal insult or injury - when the injury is very great, as in
death, sorrow is mixed with the resentment

discard V : bi ... na ngonda V - means to throw away

discern V : (another's thoughts and motives) : hinga bé tí V - see to know,
to be acquainted intimately

discharge V : (from a job) : tomba (na kusára) {he discharged two men
from work : lo tomba ázo óse na kusára} - see chase

discourage V : be V - see also annoy, bother

discover V : wara V - means to find, to get, to obtain

disembark V : ko V - means also to embark, to alight

disfigured, be V : mbóko V - means also to be bruised, to be ulcerated,
to be bald

dish N : sembé N

disorder N : kíkíkiri An - means also crooked, evil

disorderly Adv : kíkíkiri An, modifying a verb - also means perversely

dispatch V : to V, toka V - see to send

disposition N : temperament : bé N - means liver, personality, character

dispute V : papa V - see quarrel V

dispute N : papa N, téné N - see also palaver, matter, affair

ditch N : caniveau** N

divide V : kángbi V - see also cut

divination N : mbadi N - to practise divination is báa mbadi V, sára
mbadi V - see also fortune telling

divorce V : 1. on husband's initiative : kẹ wále V, zía wále V, tomba wále V
- see also reject, leave, chase

2. on wife's initiative : kẹ kóli V, zía kóli V, kpé kóli V - see also
run

do V : sára - means to act, to behave, to make

do again V : kírí V, followed by another verb {I said it again : mbi kírí.
mbi tene} - see also again

doctor N : (medical) : docteur** N

document N : mbéti N, papier** N - see also paper

dog N : mbo N

done, be : we V - see finished

donkey N : lélé N

door N : yángá (tí da) N - means also mouth, opening, language

doubt N : kité N - means also objection, expostulation - used esp. in dé
kité to doubt, to object

doubt V : dé kité V - means also to object

doubtless Adv : manquer** pape V - means : it cannot fail

dough N : made of manioc or mil flour, the staple food : kóbe N

down Adv : na gbé ní CP - also means under

drag V : gbóto V, kóso V - see also pull

drain V : (to separate solid from liquid) : passer** V - also means to
strain, to sift, to pass

draw V : (liquid) : tó V - see carry in container

dream N : sù má N, mosù má N - dreams are one of the principal means by which shades of the ancestors communicate with the living

dream V : báa li V, báa sù má V

dried Adj : kùrú N {dried fish : kùrú tí susu} {dried meat : kùrú tí yama} {dry land : kùrú sése} - see dry

drink V : yó V - means also to suck, to smoke (tobacco)

drive V : (an automobile, an airplane, etc.) : conduire** V

driver N : (of a truck, etc.) : chauffeur** N

drop V : zía ... tí V - this means to permit to fall

drum N : ngo N

dry V : ole V - see also dried

dry season N : burú N. vurú ndo N

duiker N : (and possibly certain other small antelopes of the genus Cephalophus) : woga N

dumbness N : búburú N

dumb person N : wa búburú N

dump V : túku V - see tip, spill, pour

during Prep : tongana C - means when

duty N : téné N, ngbanga N - see also matter, affair, business

dust N : pupu sése N

dwelt V : lángó V - also means to sleep, to remain - see also to establish residence

dysentery, have V : sára purú na méné V

- E -

- each, each and every one Adj : óko óko An - see one
- each other P : téré N, used after a verb {they like each other : ála yí téré} - also means one another, selves
- ear N : mé N
- earhole N : dú tí mé N
- earn V : 1. wara V - means also to get, to receive
2. te (nginza) V - means to eat
- earth N : sése N - also means soil, land, globe
- easy Adj : ngangó pepe An - means not hard, weak
- eat V : te V - means also to bite with the incisors - te kóbe V means to eat a full meal - see dough, food
- edge N : yángá N - used esp. with na C - means also mouth, door, language
- egg N : párá N - a chicken egg is párá kóndo N
- eight Adj : miombe An
- eland N : specifically, Derby's : báságbó N
- elbow N : coude** N - see arm
- elder N : kótá zo N - means an older person, a dignitary
- elephant N : dole N
- embark V : ko V - also means to alight, to disembark
- embers N : pindíri N
- embroil V : ngbúru V, followed by an object denoting a person
- emerge V : sí gígí V - also means to appear, to come out
- emotions N : see disposition, personality
- employment N : kpa N, kusára N - also means work

enclosure N : 1. an area, usually inside a village : bála N

2. the fence or hedge surrounding the enclosure : gbágbá N

encounter V : 1. meet : té V

2. socially : báa V, báa lé tí V, báa téré V - mean to see

encourage V : wa (bé tí) V - means also to comfort, to warn, to counsel

end N : ndá N - means also hips, lower back, buttocks, meaning

enemy N : wato N

enormous Adj : kótá kótá - see big

enough, be V : língbi V - see to suffice, to equal, to be able

enter V : li V, linda V - linda means also to go down

entice V : hánda V - means also to tempt, to bluff

entire Adj : kóé - means all, whole

entirely Adv : kóé An - means wholly, altogether

enumerate V : díko V - see count, read, consult, pray

envy V : zía bé V - see also to covet, set one's heart on, believe

equal, be V : língbi V - means also to suffice, to be able

erase V : mbo V - means to wipe

erect V : to build : sára (da) V - see make, do

err V : dó géré V - means to stub one's toe, to stumble

escape V : kpe V - means to run

especially Adv : ahó kóé - means it passes all

establish V : sára V - see build, make, do

European person N : mbunzú N

even, even if C : même** C, quand même** C - quand même** means
also although, nevertheless

evening N : 1. sunset : lá kúí N

2. after sunset : bí N - means night

ever-expensive

254

ever Adv : lá óko N, mbéni lá N - see one day

every Adj : kóé An - means also all, whole

everybody, everyone P : zo kóé N

every day Adv : lá kóé N - means also always - reduplicated, it means every single day, forever

everything P : kóé An, Kóé N

every which way Adv : kiríkiri An - means crooked, disorderly, evil

evil Adj : 1. sioní An - means bad

2. crooked, perverse, devious : kiríkiri An

examine V : (visually) : báa V - means to see

exceed V : 1. hó ndó V - means to surpass, to overcome

2. língbi pepe V - means either to exceed or to be insufficient, since língbi means to be equal, to suffice exactly

excell V : hó V - means to pass, to surpass, to win

exchange V : changer** V - means also to change

excrement N : purú N - see also defecate

excuse V : pardonner** V - also means to forgive

excuse N : pardon** N - also means an apology, an ingratiating plea

exhale V : 1. hú mbóo V - this means to breathe, to blow with mouth

2. audibly : gio bé V - means to sigh, to gasp, esp. in dying

exhaust V : (a supply of something) : húnzi V - means to finish, to cause to disappear

exhausted, be V : húnzi, V, we V - see finished

exist V : du V - see to be

expect V : kú V - means to wait, to hope

expensive Adj : cher** An - means also costly

expensive, be : ngéré ... eke ngangó V - this means the price is hard, i.e. high

experience V : báa V, dutí na V - see to see, to sit

expire V : gíó bé V - means to exhale audibly, to sigh, to gasp, as in dying

explain V : 1. fa V - means to show, to teach, to demonstrate
2. more fully : fa ndá tí V - means to explain the meaning

expostulate V : dé kité V - means to object, to doubt

expostulation N : kité N - means also doubt, objection

extinguish V : míngó V

eye N : lé N - also means face, surface, presence

eye brow N : ngeki lé N

eye lash N : kóá lé N

- F -

fabric N : bɔngó N - also means clothing

fabricate V : sára V - also means do, act, behave, make, affect

face N : lé N - also mean eye

face to face Adv : lé na lé N

fail V : manquer** V - with the negative marker pépe, it means doubtless

fall V : tí V

fame N : húngó N - from hú V to spread

familiar, be V : hinga kóé V - also means to understand

family N : famille** N - see also sibling, brother, sister, father, mother, aunt, uncle, grandfather, grandmother, child, son, daughter, ancestor, husband, wife, father-in-law, brother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law, grandchild - the plural is used in a collective sense to mean the members of the family

famous, be or become V : 1. vú V {their names were not famous : éré tí ála avú pépe} - possibly related to vurú be white

2. hú V - means also to spread

fan palm N : 1. koróngo N

2. a false bamboo : bambou** N

far Adj, Adv : yongóro An - also means long, tall

far, be V : yó V - also means to be long

fascinate V : hánda V - means to entice, to lure, to tempt, to tease

fast Adv : fadé Av, hío Av - see also soon

fasten V : 1. tǐngbi V - means to join, to unite

2. kǎnga V - means to tie, to close

fat N : mafuta N - means oil, grease

fat Adj : mafuta N

father N : biological, social, or honorific : babá N - also means father's brothers, and members of father's clan - see family, uncle

father-in-law N : kógará N - this refers to all male in-laws, and is used reciprocally

fear N : mbito N - this means apprehension, fright, dread, terror- used with verbs meaning to affect and to seize, depending on the strength of the feeling

fear V : kpé mbito V - see also to run

feather N : kóá tí ndéke N - kóá is hair

featherbedding N : mbáná N - means laziness, malingering, willful idleness

feeder stream N : mérengé tí ngú N - lit. child of river

feel, feel that V : báa V - means to see

feel about V : (as blind person) : tatara ndo V - means to grope

fellowship N : 1. cordiality : ngiá N - means also amiability, fun, joy, amusement

2. bé óko N - means unity of feeling - see also peace

fellowship, have V : sára bé óko V - see also reconcile

female N : wále N - means also woman, wife

fence N : gbágbá N - means also hedge, enclosure

ferment V : kpí V - also means to sour, to be sour

ferry N : bac** N

festival N : matánga N - see also holiday, celebration

fetish N : 1. general term : yoró N - means also medicine, talisman, charm, poison

2. a particular fetish : ngaánga N

fever N : kobéla tí wá N - see sickness, heat

fever, get or have V : téré ... mú wá V {he has a fever : téré tí lo amú wá}

fib N : vanc N, wátáká N - see lie

field N : yáká N - also means garden, plantation, plot, any cultivated area
2. prescribed size for cotton field, in the days of compulsory cultivation : piquet** N

fight V : 1. physically : tiri V - also means to wrestle, to strive, to contend, to struggle

2. verbal : papa V - means to quarrel, to dispute

3. war, battle : píka berá V

4. attack : goe berá na li tí V, tí na ndó V, attaquer** V

fight N : tiri N - more properly fighting, a noun of action

fill V : sí V - also means to be full

find V : wara V - means also to get, to obtain, to receive

finger N : kété mabóko N - see hand

ingernail N : nzené N, nzené tí mabóko N - also means claw

finish V : 1. bring to completion : sára sí awe V

2. exhaust a supply : húnzi V - means also to cause to disappear

finished, be V : 1. to be completed : we V {my speech is finished : téné tí mbi awe}
action antecedent to the context and denoted by a preceding verb

2. to be exhausted : húnzi V - means also to cause to disappear

fire N : wá N - also means heat, hot

fire V : discharge : tomba na kusára V

fire engine N : ville de Bangui** N

fireman N : da gbí N - see house, burn

firewood N : kéké tí wá N

firm, be or become V : gbó V, coller** V - also mean to harden, to set, to jell, to coagulate

first Adj, Adv : kózo (ní) An

fish N : 1. all kinds : susu N

2. Nile perch : capitaine** N

3. small fish used in making sauces : gugúró N

4. fresh fish : finí susu N

5. dried fish : kúrú tí susu N

fish V : gí susu V - see hunt

fishhook N : yángó N

fist N : ngobo N, coup-de-poing** N

fit V : língbi na V - also means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

five Adj : ukú An

five francs N : páta N

fix V : lèke V - a very general verb meaning to prepare, to repair, arrange, to organize, to establish

flank N : téré N - also means body

flat Adj : applied to dishes and land : kpángbálá An

flee V : 1. run : kpé V

2. flee for fear : kpé mbito V

flesh N : in opp. to bone or blood : mi N, mi téré N

fling V : throw : bi V

flood N : moa N

flour N : fúku N - applies specifically to edible flour or meal of manioc or mil, but also means powder in general

flow V : as a river : soa V

2. as blood in the veins : gara V

3. leak : yuru V

flower N : ndókó N - see also bloom

flunky N : 1. domestic : kété bóí N, marmiton** N

flunky (cont.)-foot race

260

2. truck driver's apprentice : apprenti** N, bata kóngbá N

fly N : vome N

fly V : uru V - also means to jump, to hop

foam N : fúlu N - also means froth

foetus N : ngo N - see also conceive, abort

fog N : mbínda N - also means cloud

fold V : 1. as clothes : njombi V

2. bend, break, as a stick : kúngbi (yá ní) V

follow V : 1. emphasizing the person being followed as goal : gá na pekó

V {he followed me : lo gá na pekó tí mbi} - see come

2. emphasizing a close personal relationship between follower and followed - mú pekó V {he followed Jesus, he became a disciple of Jesus : lo mú pekó tí Jesus} - see take

3. emphasizing the point of departure, or the relative detachment of the speaker : goe na pekó V - see go

food N : 1. general : kóbe N

2. the staple dough or mush of mil or manioc flour : kóbe N

3. prepared dishes : kóbe N

4. the sauce which accompanies the dough : kása N

5. various kinds of snacks sold ready to eat : makala N, mangbéré N, ŋacá N, etc.

foolish Adj : búbá An - also means crazy

foolishness N : mbáná N - also means laziness, featherbedding, idleness, malingering

foot N : 1. general : géré N - also means leg, paw, wheel, tire

2. sole of foot : séndá tí géré N - also means footprint

3. of tree or plant : gondá N

footprint N : sédá tí géré N - also means sole of foot

foot race N : gbíma ndoko N

- for Prep : 1. general : na C - means and, but, with, by, in, at, to, from
 2. followed by an expression of goal or purpose : ngbangatí C, tenetí C
- force N : strength : ngangó An - also means hard, violent, strong
- force V : forcer** V - see also compel, persuade, impel
- forehead N : ndó lé N
- foreskin N : pitó N - see also penis
- forest N : 1. tree(s) : kéké N - also means wood, stick, pole
 2. gallery forest : gbakó N
- forever Adv : always, daily : lá kóé N - usually reduplicated to mean forever
- forget V : girísa V - means to lose, also to be lost, to be forgotten
- forgive V : pardonner** V - also means to excuse, to pardon
- forgotten, be V : girísa V - also means to be lost, to lose, to forget
- formerly Adv : 1. recent past : ándo Av, used post-verbally
 2. remote past : giriri Av, used post-verbally or pre-clausally
 3. first : kózo (ní) An
- fornicate V : sára pitáa V - also means to commit adultery
- fornication N : pitáa N - also means adultery
- for quite a while Adv : 1. past time orientation : depuis** Av {I have been doing it for quite a while : mbi sára depuis}
 2. neutral or future time orientation : ngbii Av, jusqu'à** Av {cook it for quite a while : mo tó ngbii}
- fortune telling N : zéké N {he stole money by fortune telling : lo nzi nginza na zéké} - see also divination
- foundation N : (of a house) 1. general : géré tí da N - see foot
 2. koto N - a traditional form made of beaten earth and about a foot high, formerly prevalent among some peoples, e.g. the Kape
- four Adj : osió An
- frame N : (of roof) : gángará N - see roof

franc N : franc** N - in counting francs, French numerals are usually used -
see also five francs

free Adj : séngé An - see without

friend N : ndeko N - see companion

fright N : mbito N - see fear

fritter N : made of European flour, fried in deep fat, and sold with a
filling of either hot pepper or sugar : makala N - see snack

frock N : boubou** N - means a long, full-bodied shirt such as is worn by
many Muslims

frog N : kóngba N, bíanga N

from Prep : na C - also means and, but, to, for, at, in, with, by

from it Adv : used only post-verbally : da Av - also means to it, in it, there

front N : devant** N - usually used in na devant (tí/ní) CP in front

froth N : fúlu N - esp. froth coming from the mouth - also means foam

fruit N : (of plants) : lé N, lé tí kéké N, léngó N - léngó means harvest,
yield - lé means seed

fry V : yóro V - see also cook

frying pan N : gbara N, gbara búba N

full, be V : sí V - also means to fill

fun N : ngiá N - also means play, fellowship, cordiality, joy

fur N : kóá N - means hair

futilely Adv : gbá Av - means in vain

fuzz N : (as on caterpillar) : 1. kíi N - means also thorn, bristle
2. kóá N - means also hair

- G -

gad about V : fono V

gain V : 1. win : gagner** V

2. earn : wara V, te (nginza) V - see also receive, eat

gallery forest N : gbakó N - these forest strips along rivers provide the only large trees in the savanna region

gamble V : (with dice) : pika pátará V

gap N : dú N - means a hole

garden N : yáká N - means a field, a plantation, a plot, an orchard

garlic N : ail** N

garment N : bongó N - also means cloth

gasp V : gío bé V - also means to exhale audibly, to sigh, as in expiring

gather V : 1. general : bongbi V - means to assemble, to meet

2. gather together for common purpose : bongbi li tí V, bongbi téré V

3. pick up scattered items : lo V

gathering N : bongbi N - means an assembly, meeting

gentleman N : monsieur** N - also means Mr., sir

gently Adv : 1. softly, quietly : doucement** Av - can be reduplicated

2. slowly, gradually : yeke yeke Av

genuine Adj : taá An - means true

germinate V : kó V

get V : 1. to take : mú V, kamáta V

2. to find, to obtain, to receive : wara V

get up V : arise : lóndó V

gift N : cadeau** N, matabísi N - also means a tip, a bribe

giraffe-good-by, good luck

264

giraffe N : kólo N

girl N : 1. mérengé (tí) wále N - see also woman, child, daughter

2. unmarried : see unmarried girl

give V : 1. general : mú V - means also to receive, to take

2. (food) : fú (kóbe) V - means to break a mouthful from the mass of dough and shape it with the fingers before putting it into the mouth - parents do this for their small children, hence the meaning of to give

give birth V : bear, beget : dú V - means also to be born

give heed V : 1. má V - means to hear

2. pay attention, listen : gengi mé V

gladness N : ngiá - means also joy, fun, fellowship, cordiality

glass N : (a pane or sheet) : tatara N - means also mirror

gnash teeth V : te pémbé V - see to bite, tooth

go V : 1. to walk : tambéla V - used also of machinery operating

2. goe V - means also to leave

go across V : (a river, etc.) : fáa V - means to cut, to kill, to break, to cross

go around V : ngóro V - means to surround, to circle

goat N : ngása N

go back V : kírí V - means to return

God N : Nzapá N - originally probably a traditional sky-god

go down V : linda V - means also to be deep

good Adj : 1. nzoní An - a very general term meaning also nice

2. better : nzoní ahó

3. best : nzoní ahó kóé

good-by, good luck I : 1. from person remaining to person going : goe nzoní

2. from person going to person remaining : dutí nzoní

3. see greeting

goods N : possessions, merchandise : kóngbá N - also means load, burden, bundle

go on V : hò V - also means to pass

gospel N : téné nzoní N - a Protestant neologism

go up V : monter** - see climb

gourd N : 1. made into bottle : ngángá N

2. made into dipper : kangú N

govern N : commander** V - also means to command, to order, to rule, to supervise

government N : gouvernement** N - see also administration

grab V : gbó V - see also seize

gradually Adv : slowly, gently : yeke yeke Av

granary N : gogoro N

grandchild N : áta N - also means grandmother

grandfather N : kaká N - also means male ancestor

grandmother N : áta N, tará N - the terms are also used to mark respect in addressing an older woman - áta also means grandchild

grant V : agree : yí V, yí da V, yí pekó V - also mean want, accept
2. give : mú V - also means take

grasp V : 1. seize : gbó V
2. understand : hinga ndá V

grass N : 1. generic term : péré N

2. roofing grass : bebé N

3. reed : sosongo N

4. coarse, tough grass used to make baskets : nzanza N

gratuity N : cadeau** N, matabísi N - mean gift, tip, bribe

gray Adj : 1. dark : vokó kété An - see black, color

2. light : vurú kété An - see white, color

grease-gulp

266

grease N : mafuta N - also means oil, fat

great Adj : big, important : kótá An

green Adj : vókó kété An, vert** An - see color

greens N : various wild or cultivated edible leaves ; gbutu N, gúsá N, dawai N, koko N, ngunzá N, ngágo N

greet V : bara V

greeting N : 1. upon first meeting : bara o, (mbi) bara mo (nzoní)

2. after first greeting ; mo eke (séngé) ?

3. upon parting, the person remaining to the person going : (mo) goe nzoní (o)

4. upon parting, the person going to the person remaining : (mo) dutí nzoní (o)

grieve V : so bé V (this thing grieves me : yí só aso bé tí mbi) - see hurt, sorrow

grip V : seize : gbó V

groan V : complain, moan : bima V

grobe V : (as a blind person) : tatara ndo V

ground N : sése N - also means earth, soil, land

grow V : 1. develop : máí V - refers to maturation ; to mature

2. to grow up, be big ; kono V - refers esp. to physical growth in size

growth N : kónóngó N - see also size

gruel N : thin mush : potapóto N - also means mud

guard V : bata V - means to keep, to protect

guile N : malin** N, manière** N - also mean skill, ability

guinea fowl N : kombá N

guitar N : traditional ; kunde N

gulp V : mene V - means to swallow whole

gun N : ngombe N

gunpowder N : mbúlú N - see also powder

- H -

hair N : 1. general term ; kóá N - also means fur, fuzz, bristle, feather

2. of head ; kóá (tí) lí N

3. eye lash ; kóá lé N

4. beard ; kóá ngbagba N

5. moustache ; kóá yángá N

6. body hair ; kóá tí téré

half, halfway point N : moitié** N

half-heartedly, act V ; sára na mabóko óse V

hand N : 1. mabóko N, tí N - also means arm, handle, wrist - tí is used to refer to the grasping or holding action of the hand, hence to authority or power

2. right ; gati N, mabóko tí kólí N

3. left ; koti N, mabóko tí wále N

handsome Adj ; pendere An - means also beautiful, young

hang V : (to execute) ; tó gó lo na kámba V

happen V : 1. arrive ; sí V

2. pass ; passer** V

happiness N : ngiá N - also means joy, fun, fellowship, cordiality

happy, be or become V ; wara ngiá V

hard Adj : 1. ngangó An - also means strong

2. kpingbángó N - see harden

harden V : 1. kpingba V - can also mean to mature

2. set, jell, thicken ; gbó V, collar** V

hardness N : ngangó An - also means strength

hare N : ndarangba N - also means rabbit

harm V : so V - see hurt

harmonize V : sára sǒngó V, sára bé óko V - see also reconcile, compose

harmony N : (interpersonal) : siriri N - see peace

hartebeest N : kángá N - also applies to the sassaby and related antelopes of the genera Alcephalus and Damaliscus

harvest N : léngó (tí yáká) N - see also fruit, yield

hat N : kpoto N, chapeau** N

hatchet N : ís N - means an ax - see also tool

have V : possess : eke ná V (one has a hat : lo eke ná kpoto)

have a good appetite V : wara yángá tí te kóbe V, yángá ... nzere tí te kóbe V - both can be used in the negative

have fellowship V : sára ngiá V - means to chat, to play, to have fun

he P : lo P - also means she, him, her, his, hers - see I for the pronominal system

head N : lí N - also means top

headkerchief N : síliki N

hear V : má V - means also to listen, to pay attention, to understand

heart N : 1. anatomical : coeur** N

2. seat of personality : bé N - means the liver

heat N : wá N - also means fire

heat V : chauffer** V

heaven N : yáyú N - see also sky, air

heaviness N : néngó N - also means weight, thickness

heavy, be V : ne V - means also to bear down, to crush, to chew

hedge N : gbágbá N - means also a fence, an enclosure

help V : aider** V - also means to aid, to assist

hemp-holiday

270

hemp N : marijuana ; mban N

hen N : (wále) kóndo N - see chicken

her, hers P ; see he

here Adv : ge Av, na ndo só CP

hero N : lombé N - means a valiant man, a conqueror

hide V : hónde V

high Adj : long : yongóro An

highway N : lége N - means a path, a road, a way

hill N : hótó N - means also mountain

him P ; see he

hinder V : 1. kánga V - also means to obstruct, to tie, to fasten

2. prevent ; gbánzi V

hippopotamus N : konó N

hip N : ngbundá N, ndá N - means also lower back, buttocks

his P : see he

hit V : pika V - means to strike, to pound, to beat

hoe N : traditional agricultural tool ; kpóko N, ngáfó N - made by the blacksmith of iron - see tool

hoe-handle N : kóngó N - also means mallet for pounding manioc

hog N : cochon** N - see pig

hold V : grin, seize ; gbó V

hold back V : refrain, stop short, delay ; nínga V

hole N : dú N

holiday N : 1. legal or religious ; fête** N

2. celebration, festival : matánga N

3. vacation ; vacances** N, congé** N

home N : 1. house : da N

2. homestead, settlement : kótóró N - see community

homestead N : kótóró N - see community

honey N : ngú lavú N, mafuta tí wótoro N - the latter can also be beeswax - see bee

honor V : 1. gonda V - means to praise a person

2. sepála V - means to praise God

hope V : kú V - means also to wait

horn N : (of animal) : dede N, nzá N - also used of musical horn

horse N : mbarata N

hospital N : hôpital** N

hot, be or become V : 1. general : gá wá V, mú wá V, wara wá V

2. of weather : sára wá V, ndo aêke wá V

hour N : heure** N - see time

house N : da N - means any kind of building

how Adv : tongana yê CP

how many, how much Adj : ôke An

huge Adj : kótá míngi An - see big, important

human being N : zo N - see person

hundred N : ngbangbu N

hunger N : nzala N - means any kind of desire, appetite, urge, thirst

hungry, be : 1. nzala ... sára V

2. stronger : kúí nzala V - means to starve, to die of hunger

hunt V : 1. general : gí V - means to seek, to search, to hunt for, to investigate

2. (game) : gí yama V

3. fish : gí susu V

hurl-hyena

272

hurl V : bi V - means to throw

hurry V : zia lóró da V - see speed

hurt V : so V {my head hurts : li tí mbi aso} {this sore hurts to : ká só aso mbi} - also means to ache, to pain, to harm

husband N : kóli N - usually with a specifying complement - also means man, male

hush V : 1. kái V

2. to be quiet : dutí kpó V

hush I : su I - means stop what you are about to do - addressed to a child

husk N : (of grain) : kakó N - also means pod, or any part of grain that is discarded, chaff

hyena N : b'óngó N

I P : mbi P - mbi P - means also me, my, mine - the pronominal system is as follows :

	Singular	Plural
1.	mbi	í (Protestant missions áni)
2.	mɔ	ála (Catholic missions *é)
3.	lo	ála (missions í)

idle, be V : dutí V, dutí séngé V - see sit, without

idleness N : 1. laziness : goigói N

2. willful idleness, malingering : mbánà N

if C : 1. tongana C - also means when, like

2. ádu ní, ádu títene - used pre-clausally in conditions contrary to fact

ignite V : 1. (fire, things) : gbí V - see burn

2. set fire : zó V - also means to burn, to roast

illness N : kobéla N, malade** N - see also ailment

illustration N : photo** N - means primarily a photograph, a picture

immediately Adv : 1. fafadesó Av - used pre-clausally or post-verbally -
this is fadesó now reduplicated

2. fafadé Av - used pre-clausally only, as an emphatic future marker -
this is fadé the future marker reduplicated

3. see also soon

impel V : pousser** V - means also to push, to propel, to compel, to incite

important Adj : kótá An - means also big, superior

imprison V : kánga V - also means to tie, to shut, to fasten

impure Adj : see defiled

in Prep 1. general : na C - means also and, but, to, for, at, from, with, by

2. inside : na yá CP

in addition to Prep : na ndó tí/ní CP, na li tí/ní CP - also mean over,
above

inadequate, be V : língbi pepe V - língbi means to suffice, to be equal,
to be able

in back of Prep : na pekó (tí/ní) CP - also behind, after

incense N : yambo N - also means perfume

incisor N : kété pémbe N - see also tooth

incite V : 1. general : pousser** V - means to push, to impel, to propel
2. (an animal, e.g. a dog) : dará V

increase N : (in agriculture) : léngó N - see harvest, yield, fruit

incur debt V : sára bon** V - also means buy on credit, borrow

indiscriminately Adv : kíkíkí An - see crooked, disorderly

indeed Adv : biakú Av, bíaní Av - see truly, certainly

infant N : kété mérengé N - see child

in front of Prep : 1. in general : na devant** (tí/ní) CP - see before

2. (of persons) : na gbé lé CP, na lé tí/ní CP

3. (as of a parade) : na li tí/ní CP - means also on top of

ingenuity N : ndaráa N - means also skill, wisdom

inhabitant N : zo tí (kótóró) N, -wa tí (kótóró) N - with an object rather
than the name of a community, wa means owner - with the name of a
trait or quality, wa means a person characterized by that trait

injection N : (hypodermic) : piqûre** N

ink N : encre** N, ngú tí mbéti N - the latter is not common

in order to Prep : tí C, ngbangatí C, tenetí C, followed by a verb

inquire V : ask : hunda V

insert V : yóro V - also means to thrust

inside Prep, Adv : na yá tí/ní CP

instead of Prep : na place** tí CP - means in the place of

institute V : sára V - see make

instructor N : 1. general : moniteur** N - see teacher

2. religious, catechist : catechiste** N

insufficient, be V : língbi pepe V - língbi means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

intelligence N : ndaráa N - also means skill, wisdom - see personality

interfere vocally V : bi yángá V

intestines N : yá N - see abdomen, stomach

in that place Adv : da Av - also means to that place, from that place, there - used post-verbally only

in the center of Prep : na ndó bé CP - this suggests the middle of a flat surface, as a table

in the manner of Prep : na lége tí CP - also means by means of, concerning

in the midst of Prep : na pópó CP, na milieu** CP

into it Adv : da Av - means also in that place, to that place, from that place, there - used only post-verbally

invite V : 1. call : éré V - means also to summon

2. ask : húnda V

iror V : passer** V

iron N : wé N

island N:zoa N

issue N : téné N, ngbanga N - see also affair, matter, problem

itch N : scabies : sára N

- J -

jail N : kánga N, da tí kánga N - see shut, imprison

jaw N : (lower) : ngbagba N - means the whole mandible, the chin

jell V : set, harden : gbó V, collar** V

job N : kusára N, kóa N - see work

join V : (things together) : tìngbí V - means also to fasten, to unite

journey V : tambéla V - see walk, travel

joy N : ngiá N - arises out of good interpersonal relationships : fellowship, cordiality, fun

judge V : fáa ngbanga V - means to arbitrate, to make a judicial decision

jug N : a demi-john : dame-jeanne** N.- holds five to twenty quarts

jump V : uru V - also means to fly

just Adj : mbírímbírí An - also means straight, right

just Adv : only : gí Au - precedes the word which it modifies

just a little more : (temporal expression) : ngbá kété V - used pre-clausally

just a moment later : (temporal expression) : yí tí báa ndo V - use pre-clausally

just any Adj : (in the sense of : without proper credentials, not properly selected, indiscriminate) : kíríkiri An (not just anyone should take this medicine : zo kíríkiri alíngbí tí mú yoró só pepe)

justly Adv : mbírímbírí An - also means straight, right

just now Adv : fafadesó Av - this is fadesó reduplicated - it is used pre-clausally - also means immediately

- K -

keen, be V : zá V - also means to be sharp, to shine

keep V : bata V - means to preserve, to conserve, to protect, to watch

kettle N : ta N - see also pot

key N : clé** N, mérengé tí clé** N

kick V : dó V - also means to stamp, to stub one's toe, to stumble, to dance, to shake, to tremble

kid V : hánda V - also means to entice, to tempt, to bluff

kill V : 1. general : fáa V - also means to cut, to break

2. (animals, in hunting) : pika V - also means to hit, to beat, to strike

kind N : sort : qualité** N, mará N - the latter is a general classificatory term meaning also type, tribe

kindle V : tínga wá V - see also burn

king N : gbiá N - see also chief

kitchen flunky N : kété bóí N, marmiton** N

knee N : genou** N, kuni N - the latter is less common

kneel V : kuku V, zúku V - the latter means also to bow

knife N : 1. general : zembe N - see tool

2. throwing knife : ríga N

3. machete : coupe-coupe** N, kpangbala N, nzenze N

knock down V : kindá V - means also to trip

know V : 1. general : hinga V

2. thoroughly : hinga kóé V

3. know how : hinga lége V

kob N : a medium-sized antelope of the genus Adenota : tágba N

labor N : kusára N, kɔa N - see work

labor V : 1. general : sára kusára V, sára kɔa V - see work

2. have labor pains : góá ... te V (she is having labor pains : góá
ate lo)

laborer N : 1. general : zo tí kusára N

2. unskilled : manoeuvre** N

lacking, be V : manquer** V - also means to be absent, to fail

lady N : 1. married : madame** N - also means madam, Mrs.

2. single : mademoiselle** N - also means Miss

lake N : ngú N - means also water, river, rain, year

lament V : 1. to complain : bima V - means to moan, to groan

2. to cry, to mourn : toto V

lamp N : lampe** N, wá N - the latter refers to fire or any kind of light
or heat

land N : sése N - also means earth, soil

language N : yángá N - also means mouth, opening, door, edge

lantern N : lamp : lampe** N

large Adj : kótá An - see big, important, great, wide, thick

large amount N : (of money) : kótá An, míngi An - see big, much

last Adj : tí ndá ní CP

late Adv : retard** Av

later Adv : 1. ánde Av, fadé Av, híɔ Av - all used post-verbally - the

latter two also mean quickly, soon

2. na pekó (tí/ní) CP, na ndá (tí/ní) CP - used pre-clausally - also

mean next - without na, mean subsequently, following

laterite, lateritic plateau N : lakéré N - by extension, means any large flat rock on which women pound manioc to make flour

laugh V : 1. general : hé ngiá V

2. laugh at, mock : hé V, followed by an object

law N : ndiá N - also means ordinance, degree, rule

lay V : zia V - also means put, leave, permit

lay leader N : (in a Christian context) : catéchiste** N - see instructor

lay waste V : buba V, foutu** V - also means to spoil, to rot, to ruin

laziness N : 1. simple inertia or idleness : goigói N

2. malicious, willful, dishonest laziness : mbáná N

lead V : fa lége V - see also show, teach, demonstrate

leaf : (of plant, or of paper) : kugbé N

leak V : yuru V - also means to seep

lean V : 1. stoop : ba V - see bend

2. to one side : dénge V

leap V : uru V - also means to jump, to fly

learn V : manda V

leave V : 1. to go : goe V

2. depart : quitter** V, lóndó V - this last means to arise

3. abandon : zia V - also means to put, to relinquish

4. mú lége V - means to start off

5. often a combination of lóndó and goe, or mú lége and goe

left hand N : gati N, mabóko tí wále N

leftover N : tanga N, ndámbu N - see remainder

left over, be V : ngbá V - see also remain, continue

left side N : mbáge tí wále N

leg-liquid

280

leg N : géré N - also means foot

legislate V : lú ndiá V - also means to decree, to ordain

legislator N : député** N

lend V : gengi V (?) - see listen

leopard N : ze N

leopard man N : zo tí ze N

leper N : zo tí buruma N, zo tí ngiba N, wa ngiba N

leprosy N : buruma N, ngiba N

let V : permit : zía V, zía lége na V - see also put

letter N : lettre** N, mbéti N - the latter also means paper, book

lid N : (of kettle) : yí tí kánga yángá tí ta wé N

lie V : 1. recline : sé téré V

2. sleep, rest : lángó V

3. tell untruth : sára vene V, tene vene V, sára wátáká V, tene wátákí V

lie N : vene N, wátáká N

life N : finí N

lift V : mú na ndúzú V, gbó na ndúzú V, yó V - see also carry

light N : wá N, lumière** N - the first means also fire, heat

light V : Kindle : tinga wá V, sára wá V

like V : yí V - see also want, love

like Prep : tongana C - also means when, if

like this Adv : tongasó Av - also means thus, so

lime N : made by roasting oyster shells : mbamba N

lion N : bámará N

lip N : póró tí yángá N - see mouth

liquid N : ngú N - primarily means water - see also honey, tear, rain,

latex, ink, milk, pus, semen

listen V : pay attention : má V, gangi mé V - the first means to hear

little Adj : kété An - also means small, narrow, thin

little by little Adv : yeke yeke Av - means gradually, slowly

little later, a Adv : yí tí báa ndo V - used pre-clausally

live V : 1. exist : du V

2. reside : dutí V, lángó V - see sit, sleep, dwel

3. establish permanent residence : sára kótóró V

liver N: both anatomically and as seat of the personality : bé N

lizard N : 1. gray : katá N

2. monitor lizard : mbáráwára N

load N : a one-man load : kóngbá N - also means bundle, burden, package, goods, possessions, merchandise

loaded, be V : yó kóngbá V - see carry

loan, take out V : sára bon** V, húnda bon** V - see also borrow, buy on credit

lobe N : (of ear) : mé N - also means ear

lock N : clé** N, mamá tí clé** N

long Adj : 1. spatially : yongóro An - also means tall, far

2. temporally : yongóro An, used after a verb

long, ve V : yó V - either horizontally or vertically : be far, be tall

long time Adv : jusqu'à** Av, ngbii Av - used post-verbally - ngbii can be reduplicated, or both can be used together for emphasis

long time ago Adv : giriri Av - see also formerly

look V : 1. see : báa V

2. hunt for : gí V

3. look for a way : gí lége V

4. look here! : (mó) báa V

look like-lust

282

look like V : resemble : kpa V

loosen V : zĩ V - means also to untie, to release, to remove

lose V : 1. general : girisa V - means also to be lost, to forget, to be forgotten

2. (a relative by death) : perdre** V

lost, be V : girisa V - also means to lose, to forget, to be forgotten

love V : 1. like : yĩ V - also means to want

2. stronger : bẽ ... yĩ V

3. mutually : yĩ tẽrẽ V

lover N : esp. illegitimate : ndeko N - means also friend, mistress

lower V : zĩa na gbẽ ní V, descendre** na sесе V, ba na sесе V - the first means to put, the last means to bend

lower part N : gbẽ N - used in expressions like under, below

lung N : fũfũ N

lure V : hãnda V - also means to tempt, to entice, to bluff, to kid

lust N : nzala N - means any kind or degree of desire

- M -

machete N : coupe-coupe** N, kpangbala N, nzenze N - see tool

madam N : madame** N - also means Mrs., lady

magazine N : (a journal) : mbétí N - also means paper, book, letter

maggot N : ngusú N - also means chigger

maize N : nzo N, gbánza N

make V : 1. sára - this is a very general verb meaning to do, to act, to behave, to manufacture, to fabricate, to create, to build, to establish, etc. - many more specific meanings are determined by the object or complement

2. manufacture, fabricate : leké V - also means to prepare, to repair, to arrange, to organize

make a fool of V : buba V - also means to spoil, to ruin

make a garden V : fáa yáká V - see cut, field

make a mistake V : dó géré V - see to err

make fun of V : mock : hé V

make garden V : fáa yáká V - see field, garden, cut

make signs V : (with the hand) : pé (tí) V - also means to beckon, to signal, to winnow, to wave

make war V : tiri V, pika berá V - see fight, wage war

make worthless V : buba V - means also to ruin, to make a fool of

male Adj : kóli N - used as a specifying complement of some more general noun denoting a person or an animal - also means man, husband

malinering N : mbáná N - see laziness, foolishness

mallet N : (for pounding manioc) : kóngó N - also means hoe handle

man N : 1. generic term, human being : zo N

2. male : kóli N - also means husband

manage V : to make out, to get along : démerder** V, débrouiller** V

mango N : mángo N

manioc N : gozo N - this is the staple food of most of the population

manner N : 1. way, custom : lége V - also means path, means

2. skill, ingenuity : malin** N, manière N, ndaráa N - also mean intelligence, ability

manufacture V : sára V, léke V - see make, fabricate, prepare

many Adj : mingi An - also means much, very

mar V : foutu** V - also means to spoil, to ruin

marijuana N : mbange N

market, market-place N : galá N, marché** N

market town N : galá .. - also means a commercial center

marriage N : mariage** N - also means spouse

marry V : 1. general : marier** V, sára mariage** V

2. of man : mú wále V, kamáta wále V - see take

3. of woman : mú kóli V, kamáta kóli V, goe na da tí kóli V - see take, go

mash V : pound, crush : pete V *

master N : vení N - also means owner

masturbate V : ndú téré, tí ... vení na mbáná V - see touch, body

mat N : esp. a sleeping mat : gbogbó N - also means a bed

match N : (to light a fire) : allumette** N, tínga wa N

mate N : 1. either sex : mariage** N - also means spouse

2. husband : kóli - also means man, male

3. wife : wále - also means woman, female

matter N : 1. thing : yí N

2. an affair, an issue, a problem : téné N, ngbanga N - the first also means word, saying, utterance, speech - the latter also means dispute

mature V : 1. kpingba V - this means to harden, to be hard

2. grow : mǎi V - means also to develop

3. of a person : lé kpingba V

mature man N : kpingba kóli N

mature person N : kpingba zo N

mature woman N : kpingba wále N

mayor N : (of a city, with municipal organization) : maire** N

mead N : fermented drink made from honey : duma N - see beer

meal N : flour made of mil or manioc : fúku N - see also powder

mean Adj : sioní An - also means bad, evil

mean V : yí tí tene V, eke titene V

meaning N : ndá N - also means end, back, bottom

means N : lége N, moyen** N - see also manner, path, way

meantime, in the Prep : depuis** C - also means for a long while

measure V : háa V

meat N : yama N - also means animal

medicine N : yoró N - this term does not differentiate natural and supernatural effects, nor good or bad aims or results - also means fetish, charm, talisman, poison

medicine man N : zo tí yoró N, monganga N

meditate V : há V, b'anda V - see also think, ponder

meet V : 1. general : té V - see also gather

2. personally, socially : baa V, baa lé tí V, baa téré V - see encounter

meeting N : bóngbì N - also means gathering, assembly

melody-mislay

286

melody N : gó N - also means neck, throat, voice, tune

member N : (of a Protestant church) : membre** N - see also Christian

menstrual period N : bángó nze N

menstrual period, have V : báa nze - see see, month

merchandise N : kóngbá N - also means goods, possessions, load

mercy N : mawa N - also means pity, misery

message N : kóa N

messenger N : wa kóa N - a Protestant neologism for preacher

metal, sheet N : tšle** N - see roofing

mid-day N : kótá lá N, midi** N - see noon

middle N : milieu** N, pópó N, bé N - all used mostly with na in CP meaning in the center of, in the midst, among, between

midnight N : bé bí N, midi** tí bí N

midst, in the Prep : na milieu** (tí/ní) CP, na pópó (tí/ní) CP - see also among, between

militia, militiaman N : garde** N

milk N : 1. mother's : ngú tí me N

2. animal, used for human nutrition, canned, powdered, etc : lait** N

mine P : see I

minister N : 1. Protestant pastor : pasteur** N

2. Catholic priest : père** N

mirror N : tatara N - also means pane, sheet of glass

miscarriage, have V : ngo ... buba V - see abort

misery N : mawa N - also means pity, mercy, suffering

misery, cause V : sára mawa V - also means to have pity

mislay V : lose : girísa

Miss : mademoiselle** N - also means lady, unmarried

miss V : manquer** V - also means to be absent, to fail

mission N : mission** N

mistress N : 1. feminine of master : veni N, wa N - see owner

2. feminine of lover : ndeko N - also means friend, companion

mix V : 1. general : mélanger** V

2. stir with implement : tourner** V - also means to turn

3. stir flour into water to make dough : mé kóbe V

4. with hands so as to produce a homogeneous mass or liquid : furu V

5. with the feet, as mud for making bricks : dǎ V - also means to kick, to stamp

moan V : to complain : bima V

mock V : hé V - also means laugh at, ridicule

model N : pandé N - also means pattern

molar N : kótá pémbe N - see tooth

moment N : heure** N - see time

money N : nginza N - see also franc, five francs

monitor lizard N : mbáráwára N

monkey N : 1. general term : makáko N

2. baboon : bákoyá N

3. colobus : ngui N

4. red monkey : bíngba makáko N

5. chimpanzee : seko N

month N : mois** N, nze N - the latter means moon

moon N : nze N - also means month

more Adj : mbéni An - means also other, some

mores N : lége N - see custom, manner, path, way

morning N : 1. before sunrise : ndá ade V

morning (cont.)-my

288

2. after sunrise : ndá péréré N

mortar N : (in which food is pounded) : kpu N

mosquito N : ngungu N

most of all Adv : ahó kóé V

moth N : kola N

mother N : biological, social, or honorific : mamá N - also means mother's sisters, and members of mother's clan - see family, aunt

mount V : monter** V - also means to climb

mountain N : hótó N - also means hill

mouse N : deko N - also means rat

moustache N : kóá yángá N - see hair

mouth N : yángá N - also means opening, door, edge, language

move over V : pousser** V - also means to push, to propel, to impel

Mr. N : monsieur** N - also means sir, gentleman

Mrs. N : madame** N - also means madam, lady

much An : míngi An - also means many, very

mucilaginous Adj : dngó An, dngó yongóro An - applied to certain vegetables, e.g. okra

mud N : potopótó N - means any soft mushy substance, e.g. mush, gruel

mush N : 1. soft : potopótó N - also means mud, gruel

2. stiff dough, made of manioc or mil flour : kóbe N - also means food

mushroom N : gugú N

must V : il faut que** V, used as a sort of "impersonal"

my P : see I

- N -

nail N : 1. carpenter's : pcinte** N

2. finger nail : nzené N, nzené tí mabóko N - also means claw

nail V : (roofing to a house) : pika V - also means to hit, to pound, to beat

naked Adj : séngé An - see without

name N : éré N

name V : éré V, dé éré V - also mean to call, to summon, to invite

nap N : lángó N - also means sleep

nape of neck N : ndó gó N

narrow Adj : kété An - also means small, thin, little

nation N : kótóró N - means any kind of organized community

navel N : turúngu N - also means umbilical cord

near, nearby Adj, Adv : ndurú An - also means short

neck N : gó N - also means throat, voice, tune

need V : yí V - means also want, like, love

needle N : sóá N

Negro N : zo vókó N, vókó zo N - also mean black man

net N : large net used for hunting or fishing : gbánda N

never Adv : lá óko pepe N

nevertheless C : quand même** C - also means even if, though, anyway

new Adj : finí An

news N : 1. general : téní N - also means word, saying, affair

2. specific : nouvelle** N

next-nurse

290

next C : 1. general : et pu's** C, na C, mais** C - also mean and, but
2. with strong sequential component : en re** C, na pekó ní CP, na ndá ní CP - mean again, after, behind

nice Adj : nzoní An - means good

nicely Adv : nzoní Av - used after a verb - also means well

night N : bí N

night-time N : bínɡo N

Nile perch N : capitaine** N - see fish

nine Adj : ngombáya An

no I : non** I - see also not

noise N : 1. tumult : wúrúwúrú N

2. voices : téné míngi N - see saying, word, utterance

3. cry : toto N

4. shout : kóngó N

none P : óko pepe An

noon N : kótá lá N, midi** N - see sun, day

no one P : zo óko pepe N

noose N : kámba N - also means cord, snare

nose N : hý N

not Adv : pepe SP - used at the end of the sentence

not any, not a single one, not at all P : óko pepe An - also means none

nothing P : yí óko pepe N

notice V : báa V - means to see

now Adv : fadesó Av - used either pre-clausally or post-verbally - reduplicated it means immediately

number N : numéro** N

nurse N : infirmier** N

nurse V : bata V, soigner** V, sára na V - see also care for, keep, serve

oar N : kái N - also means paddle

oath N : 1. as in court : bá N - see also swear

2. a curse : zonga N - see also curse V

obdurate, be V : li ... (eke) ngangó V - also means to be stupid

obey V : má yángá V - see also hear, listen, mouth

object V : ké kité V - also to doubt, to expostulate

objection N : kité N - also means a doubt

obligated, be V : lingbi V - this meaning is not frequent - see to suffice,
to be able, be equal

obligation N : a social debt : kó dá N

oblige V : compel : forcer** V - also means to persuade

observe V : báa V - means to see

obstruct V : kánga lége V - see shut, path

obstructed, be or become V : kánga V - also means to be shut, to tie, to
fasten, to obstruct

obtain V : wara V - also means to get, to find

o'clock N : heure** N - see time

odor N : fě N

of Prep : 1. in all kinds of "genitive" relationships : tí C

2. after húnda to ask : na C

offer V : mú V - means to give, to take

office N : bureau** N

often Adv : míngi An - also means much, many, very

oil-orchard

292

oil N : mafuta N - also means fat and grease

okre N : veké N

old Adj : 1. of objects : ngbéré An

2. of persons : vieux** An, mbakóro N

3. old man : kótá kóli N, kángba N

4. old woman : kótá wále N, mbakóro wále N

on account of Prep : tenetí C, ngbangatí C - also mean in order to, for, because of

once Adv : 1. (frequency) : lége óko N - see time, times

2. (time) : mbéni lá N

one Adj : óko An

one another P : téré N, used after a verb - also means body, each other, selves

one day Adv : mbéni lá N, lá óko N - means once upon a time

onion N : oignon** N

on it Adv : da Av - used post-verbally only - means also to that place, in that place, etc.

only Adj : 1. one : óko An

2. just : gí Au

on top of Prep : na ndó tí CP, na lí tí CP - also mean above, over

open V : lungúla V - also means to untie

opening N : yángá N - also means mouth, door, edge, language

opportunity N : lége N - also means path, way, manner, means

opportunity, find V : wara lége V

or C : wala C - rarely na C

orange N : orange** N

orange Adj : bingbá An - also means red - see color

orchard N : yáká N - means field, garden, or any cultivated area

order V : commander** V - means to command, to rule

ordinance N : ndiá N - also means law, rule

ordinary Adj : séngé An - see without

organize V : lèkè V - also means to prepare, to arrange

ornament N : 1. bead, string of beads : lèngè N, kisi N

2. bracelet, anklet of brass : ngbéréná N

3. (in ear) : yí tí mé N

other Adj : mbéni An - also means another, certain, some, any see also different

outside Prep, Adv : na gígí (tí/ní) CP

outside N : gígí N

over Prep : na ndó tí/ní CP - also means on top of, above, in addition to

overcome V : hǒ V, gagnar** V - see also pass, win

overlook V : fail to notice : manquor** V - see also be absent

over there Adv : ká Av - see also there

overwhelm V : 1. defeat : gagnar** V, hǒ V - see pass, win

2. be too much for : kara V, be V - see also annoy, bother, weary

own Adj : tí C followed by a noun or pronoun

own V : have, possess : èkè na V

owner N : 1. master, mistress : vení N

2. inhabitant : wa N

ox N : bágara N - also means cattle, bull, cow, etc.

oyster N : mbamba N - also means lime made from oyster shells

- P -

- package N : kóngbá N - see load, bundle
- paddle N : (for a canoe) : kái N - also means an oar
- paddle V : (a canoe) : sára kái V
- pain N : (usually physical) : finóo N {we experienced much pain : í baa finóo míngi} - see suffering
- pain V : so V - see hurt
- paint V : 1. to whitewash a building : zía vurú sése na da V, zía mbamba na da V - see whitewash, lime
2. (a box black) : zía vókó yoró (na sandúku) V
- palaver N : téné N, ngranga N - mean also any contentious problem, a dispute, an affair
- palm N : 1. oil palm : mbúrú N
2. fan palm : koróngo N
3. false bamboo : bambou** N
- palm of hand N : yá tí mabóko N - see hand
- palm oil N : bingbá mafuta N, mafuta tí mbúrú N - see palm
- palm wine N : kanguya N - see wine
- pan N : ta N - see pot, kettle
- pane N (of glass) : tatara N - also means mirror
- pangolin N : scaly ant-eater (genus Manis) : kpíkara N
- paper N : mbéti N, papier** N - mean also document - mbéti also means book, letter
- pardon V : forgive : pardonner** V
- pass V : 1. proceed : passer** V, hó V - see also go, excell
2. an examination : passer** V

paste N : (made from oleaginous seeds) : kpí N - the word also designates collectively the seeds : peanut, sesame, etc.

pastor N : ordained Protestant minister : pasteur** N

patas monkey N : bingbá makáko N - also called red monkey - see monkey

path N : lége N - also means road, way, manner, custom, opportunity - also enters into CP meaning by means of, on account of

patient, be V : persevere : kánga bé V - see shut, liver

pattern N : pandé N - see model

paw N : (of animal) : géré N - see foot, leg

pay V : fúta V, payer** V

pay attention V : má V, gangi mé V - see hear, listen

peace N : siriri N, sǒngó N - see also harmony, concord - sǒngó suggests a prior state of conflict

peanut N : káráko N

pebble N : témé N - also means any kind of stone

penis N : kéngé N - see also scrotum, foreskin

people N : zo N - see person

pepper N : (red) : ndóngé N

perceive V : acoustically : má V - also means to hear, to understand

1. visually or otherwise : báa V - means to see, to understand

perfect Adj : nzoní kóé An - see good

perform V : sára V - see do, act, make

perfume N : yambo N - also means incense

perhaps C : peut-être** C, hinga pepe V {perhaps he doesn't love you : hinga pepe, bé tí lo ayí mo pepe} {perhaps you didn't do your work right : peut-être mo sára koa tí mo mbirimbiri pepe}

permit V : zia V, zia lége na V, mú lége na V - see leave, let, give

- persecute V : sára sáná na V - means to cause suffering
- persecuted, be V : hú pónó V - means to experience suffering
- persecution N : sáná N, pónó N - see suffering
- persevere V : kánga bé V - means to be patient, to resist discouragement
- persist V : continuer** V - see also continue, persevere
- person N : zo V - a general term for human being
- personality N : (the seat of) : bé N - means the liver - the spirit resides here, and all cognitive, affective, and volitional functions reside here - means also temperament, disposition, character
- perspiration N : sweat : gbikí N
- persuade V : forcer** V - also means to force, to pressure
- perverse Adj : kiríkiri An - means crooked, evil
- perversely Adv : kiríkiri An - see disorderly
- pester V : emmerder** V - see also to discourage, to annoy, to weary
- phallus N : kéngé N - see penis
- phone V : pika senga V
- photograph V : tirer** photo** V
- photograph N : photo** N - also means picture, illustration
- pick V : (fruit, etc.) : kó V - means to pluck
- pick out V : choisir** V - see also choose
- pick quarrel V : gí téné V
- pick up V : gather what has been scattered : lo V
- picture N : photo** N - means esp. photograph
- piece N : 1. remainder : tanga N, ndámbu N
2. a small piece (as of bread) : ndurú An - means short
- pig N : 1. domestic : cochon** N

2. bush pig : mbengé N

3. wart hog : cochon** tí gígí N, cochon** tí ngonda N

pill N : medicine : quinine** N - also means capsules, tablets

pillow N : kóli N - also means cushion

pink Adj : 1. intense : bingbá kété An - see red, color

2. light, pastel : vurú kété An - see white

pipe N : (for smoking) : kpókpó N

pitch black, be V : vokó kpítíkpítí V - see black

pity N : mawa N - also means misery

pity V : sára mawa V, mawa ... gbó V - also mean to cause misery

place N : ndo N, place** N

plain N : (grassy, usually low and somewhat swampy) : lando N

plait V : (cord, hair) : há V - see also twist

plant V : lú V - also means to bury

plantain N : fòndo N - see also banana

plantation N : yáká N - also means field, or any cultivated area

platter N : (large, flat, traditionally carved of wood) : kolóngo N - means also basin - see container

play V : 1. sára ngiá V - also means to have fellowship, to chat, to have fun

2. (music) : píka ... bíá V - used of all but wind instruments

plead V : 1. pray : sambéla V, díko V - mean also to consult

2. ask : húnda V

3. as by kneeling : voró V, voró t'ré V - means to respect

please V : nzere V - means also to be sweet, to taste good

pleurisy N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

plot N : 1. general : a field : yáká N

2. of right size for planting cotton : piquet** N- also means stake

plow-pound

298

plow V : fãa sése V, dé yáká V - see cut, chop

pluck V : (as leaves or fruit) : kó V - means to pick

pneumonia N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

pocket N : poche** N - see also bag

pocketbook N : poche** N - also means pocket

pod N : kakó N - means husk, chaff, anything which is discarded when grain or seeds are processed

pointed Adj : kété kété An, kono pepe V - see small, grow

pointless Adj : without reason : séngé An

poison N : 1. general : yoró N - see also medicine, fetish, charm, talisman
2. used in trial by poison : góna N

pole N : kéké N - also means tree, wood, stick

policeman N : 1. general : police** N
2. military or state : gendarme** N

pond N : ngú N - also means water, river, rain

ponder V : think : há V, b'anda V, gí bé V

poor Adj : nzinga N - means poverty

poor person N : wa nzinga N

porcupine N : (bush-tailed) : lele N

possessions N : goods : kóngbá N - means also load, bundle

possibly C : peut-être** C, hinga pepe V - see perhaps

post-office N : poste** N

pot N : 1. general : ta N - means also pan, kettle
2. traditional clay pot : ta tí basánze N
3. metal kettle : ta wé N
4. reserved for guests : ta tí voró N - see respect

pound V : 1. general : píka V - see hit

2. (hard food, to reduce to powder) : soso V

3. (soft food, to mash) : pete V - also means to crush

pour V : sá V - means also to spill - see also tip

poverty N : nzinga N - see poor

powder N : 1. general, fine powder : fúku N - means also flour

2. gunpowder, ash used medicinally : mbúlú N

3. a red powder made from bark and used to adorn the body in connection with a certain dance : mbíó N

4. dust : pupu sése N

5. sand : mbutu N

power N : 1. general : ngangó An - means strong, hard, strength

2. metaphorically : mabóko N, ti N - mean hand, arm

praise V : 1. a human being : gonda V - see also honor, respect

2. deity : sepála V - this may be a Protestant term only - see also to pray, to worship, to plead

pray V : sambéla V, díko V - see also worship, praise, consult, count, read

preach V : fa téné V - see teach, show, demonstrate, word

preacher N : wa kpa N - a Protestant neologism for messenger

prefer V : mú na pópó V - see also choose

pregnant, become V : mé ngo V - see conceive - see also bear

pregnant woman N : mamá tí ngo N - see also foetus, mother

prepare V : sára V, leke V - see also make, do, arrange, repair

presence N : lé N, gbé lé N, devant** N - see also eye, bottom, front

present, be V : du V - means also to exist, to live - see also remain

preserve V : bata V - also means to keep, to conserve, to protect

press V : (clothes) : passer** bongó V - see also pass, clothing

pressure V : to force : forcer** V - also means to persuade, to compel, usually by moral pressure

pretty Adj : pendere An - see also beautiful, young

prevent V : gbánzi V, kánga lége V - see also obstruct, shut, hinder,
withhold

price N : ngéré N - means cost, value

pricker N : kii N - see thorn, burr

pride N : baba N - see also vanity

priest N : (Catholic) : père** N - see also clergy

print V : pika mbéti V - also means to type

prison N : kánga N, da tí kánga N - see also jail

problem N : téné N - means also utterance, saying, speech, matter, affair,
issue

proceed V : goe V, passer** V, hó V - mean also to go, to pass, to surpass

proclaim V : 1. preach : fa téné V

2. publish : fa na gígí V

promise V : zé V - see also swear

promise N : zé ndo N - see also oath

propel V : pousser** V - means also to push, to impel - see force

properly Adv : mbirimbiri An - means straight, right

prosper V : 1. hú V - means to spread

2. gá nzoni V, duti nzoni V - see also improve, greeting

prostitute N : wále tí pitáá N - means also adulteress

protect V : bata V - means to keep, to preserve, to conserve

proud, be V : li ... kpingba V

provocation N : gí ngola N

provoke V : gí téné V - means also to pick quarrel, to taunt

publish V : fa na gígí V

pull V : 1. drag : gbóto V, kóso V - also means to pull along, etc.

2. a knife : há zembe V

punch N : (with the fist) : coup-de-poing** N

pupil N : 1. of eye : vókó lé N

2. student : élève** N

purpose N : ndá N - means lower back, end, meaning

purposeless Adj : sngé An - see without

pursue V : tomba V - means to chase - see also follow

pus N : sánzó N, ngú vurú N - the latter term refers to any thick whitish discharge from the body, including semen

push V : pousser** V - means to incite, to urge, to impel, to propel, - see also to force

put V : 1. general : zía V - also means to set, to leave, to cease, to abandon, to permit

2. put on clothes : yú V - also means to wear

put together V : assemble : bngbi V, tngbi V - see also join

python N : kuma N

- Q -

quail N : dodoṛo N

quarrel V : papa V - means also to argue, to dispute

quarrel N : papa N - an argument, a dispute

quickly Adv : hio Av, fadé Av - used only post-verbally - fadé adds the
idea of a brief time lapse : soon

quiet, be V : duti kpó V - see to sit

quiet, become V : kái V - means to hush

quietly Adv : doucement** Av - can be reduplicated for emphasis - also
means gently

- R -

- rabbit N : ndarangba N - also means hare
- race N : 1. foot : gbíma ndoko N - means a contest
2. canoe : mbandako N
- race V : kpé lóró V - see run
- rag N : bongo N - means cloth, clothing
- rain N : ngú N, ngú Nzapá N - the first means any kind of water
- rain V : ngú ... pika V - see beat
- rainbow N : kóngó N
- rainfall N : ngú N - means water, rain
- rainy season N : ngú N - also means water, rain, year
- raise V : mú na ndúzú V, gbó na ndúzú V - mean also to lift
- rapidly Adv : hio Av, fadé Av - see fast
- rat N : deko N - also means mouse
- ratel N : zarí N
- rat trap N : ngindí N - see snare
- reach V : arrive : sí V
- read V : díko V, díko mbéti V - the first means to count, to consult, to pray, to worship
- read, be able to V : hinga mbéti V - see know, book
- real Adj : taá Au - means true, genuine
- realize V : báa V, hinga V - see see, know
- really Adv : biakú Av, bíani Av - see certainly, truly
- reason N : ndá N - means lower back, end, meaning, purpose

rebound V : uru V - means to jump, to fly

rebuke V : wa V - means to warn, to advise, to counsel, to comfort

receive V : 1. take : mú V, kamáta V

2. get, obtain : wara V - also means to find

3. (a payment due, as bride-price or wages) : te nginza V - see eat, money

recently Adv : ándo Av - also means formerly

reckon V : díka V - also means to count, to consult, to read

recline V : sé téré V * see lie, sleep

recognize V : (from the appearance) : hinga lé tí V - also means to be acquainted

recompense N : consequences of one's actions : fúta N - also means salary, wages

recompense V : fúta V, payer** V - also mean to pay

reconcile V : harmonize : laka téné V, sára sngó V, gá sngó V - the latter two also mean to be reconciled

recover V : (from illness) : ça va** V, kái ... kobéla V, gá nzoni V

red Adj : bingbá An - means also orange, reddish brown - see color

reddish brown Adj : bingbá An - see red, color

red monkey N : patas monkey : bingbá makáko N, makáko tí bingbá N - see monkey

reed N : sosongo N - see grass

refrain V : 1. hold back : nínga V - also means to delay

2. refuse, reject : kẹ V, yí pepe V

refuse V : kẹ V, yí pepe V - see also reject, object

reject V : kẹ V, yí pepe V - see also refuse, object

rejoice V : sára ngiá V - means also to have fellowship or fun, to chat, to play

rejoice, cause to V : mú ngiá na bé tí V, zía ngiá na bé tí V

release V : zí V - also means to loosen, to untie

relinquish V : zía V - means to put, to leave, to abandon, to permit

remain V : 1. to sit, to dwell : dutí V - see also exist

2. to sleep, to dwell : lángó V

3. to reside, to establish permanent residence : sárá kótóró V

4. to be left over from the past : ngbá V

5. to remain for the future, to be not yet begun : de V

remainder N : ndámbu N, tanga N - see also rest, leftover - ndámbu refers primarily to a solid unit or piece rather than to a mass

remember V : da bé V with the speaker also as object

remind V : da bé V with another object than the speaker

remove V : 1. zí V - also means to loosen, to untie

2. to take away : lungúla V - also means to open

repair V : lèke V - also means to arrange, to prepare, to organize, to make

repent V : lèke bé V - also means to change mind

reply V : kírí téné V - see answer

reprimand V : wa V, zingo na V, sùku na V, in increasing order of severity - see also warn, advise, comfort, arouse, swell

reprove V : wa V - see warn, comfort, advise

republic N : république** V - see also administration

repudiate V : kẹ V - see also to refuse, to reject, to divorce

request N : formal application : demande** N

request V : 1. call for : éré V - see demand

2. ask : húnda

rescue V : save : so V

resemble V : kpa (téré) V

resentment N : vundú N - since misfortune is considered to result only from personal ill-will, the reaction to misfortune almost invariably

includes, along with sorrow or disappointment, a strong component of
resentment and a desire for retaliation

reside V : 1. general : dutí V, lǎngó V - see sit, sleep, dwell
2. establish permanent residence : sára kótóró V

respect V : 1. honor : varóo V, varóo téré V - see also to kneel
2. fear, reverence : kpé mbito V

respond V : kírí téné V - see answer

rest N : remainder : tanga N, ndámbu N

rest V : 1. from effort : hú téré V
2. sleep : lǎngó V - also means to lie, to remain
3. recline : sé téré V

retain V : bata V - means to keep, to preserve, to conserve, to protect

retaliate V : fúta kulá V - also means to avenge - see also resentment

retaliation N : kulá N - see revenge

retribution N : fúta N - see consequences, salary, reward - see also revenge,
recompense

retrogress V : kírí na psó V - see also return

return V : kírí V

return N : kíringó N - from kírí to return

reveal V : 1. explain : fa ndá tí V

2. publish : fa na gígí V

revenge V : fúta kulá V - see avenge, retaliate

revenge N : kulá N - any personal injury occasions resentment which cannot
be appeased other than by revenge or retaliation

reverence V : kpé mbito V - means to fear - see also respect, honor, praise,
worship

reward N : fúta N - means wages, salary, recompense, retribution

rhinoceros N : másarágba N

rice N : lóso N

rich Adj : mosoro N, eke na mosoro V

riches N : mosoro N - means wealth, bride-price

ridicule V : hé V - means to mock, to laugh at

right Adv : mbírímbírí An - means straight, just, justly, correct, correctly

right away Adv : fafadesó Av - means also immediately, now

righteous Adj : mbírímbírí An - means straight, right, just, correct

right hand N : koti N, mabóko tí kóli N

right now Adv : fafadesó Av - see immediately, now

right side N : mbáge tí kóli N - see right hand

ripe, be or become V : be V - means also to brown

ripen V : be V - means also to brown

rise V : lóndó V - used of animate beings and of the sun, moon, etc. -
see also get up

river N : 1. water : ngú N - means also stream, brook, lake, pond, sea,
rain, etc.

2. bank : yángá tí ngú N - see mouth, edge

3. source, spring : li ngú N - see head

road N : lége N - see path, way

roan antelope N : zaranga N - see antelope

roast V : (in coals) : zó V - means also to set fire, to burn

robber N : zo tí nzí N, wa nzí N - see also thief

rock N : témé N - see stone

roof N : li tí da N - see head, house

roofing N : 1. grass : péré N, bebé N

2. sheet metal : tôle** N - means also corrugated metal

room N : yá tí da N - see stomach, house

rooster N : kóli kóndo N - see chicken

rope N : kamba N - see cord

rot V : fú V - means also to smell - see also spoil

rubber N : 1. raw latex, rubber tree : bángá N
2. cured rubber, rubber objects : ndembú N

ruin V : foutu** V, buba V - see spoil

rule N : law : ndiá N

rule V : command : commander** V

run V : 1. on foot or wheel : kpé V - means also to run away, to flee
2. (as a machine) : tambéla V - means to walk
3. (as a liquid) : yuru V - means to leak, to seep - see also flow

run out V : to exhaust a supply : húnzi V - see also finish

rust N : soko N - means corrosion in general - used with the verb to eat

- S -

salary N : fúta N, nginza N - the first means recompense, wages, reward, retribution - the second means money

salt N : 1. generic term : yingó N

2. traditional salt made from the ashes of certain plants : sá N, yingó tí basánze N, yingó tí sauvage** N

3. imported rock salt : adorónu N

salutation N : bara N - see greeting

salute V : bera V - see greet

same Adj : lége óko N - also means together, once, same time, same way

same time Adv : lége óko N - also means same, once, together, same way

same way Adv : lége óko N - also means same, same time, together, once

sample N : lógo N - also means taste

sand N : mbutu N - see powder

sandal N : pápa N - see thong, shoe

sauce N : 1. generic term : kása N - accompanies the staple dough - see also food

2. made of greens with or without oleaginous paste : yabándá N

save V : rescue : so V

say V : tene V - means also utter, tell

say a name V : dé éré V - see name

saying : téné N - see word, utterance

scabbard N : (for knife) : póró tí zembe N - see skin, knife

scabies N : itch : sárá N

scar N : 1. general, from wound : ká N

2. (ornamental, on cheek) : pópó N

school N : école** N

school, go to V : sára école** V

scold V : wa V, zingo na V, sùku na V, in ascending order of severity -
see also warn, arouse, swell, reprimand

scourge N : chicotte** N - see whip

scrape V : kpaka V - see also scratch, dig

scratch V : 1. with fingernails : koto V

2. to scrape with instrument : kpaka V

3. (oneself, or to dig in ground with hands) : ása V

scrotum N : korogbó N - see also penis

sea N : kótá ngú N - see water, river

search V : gí V - see hunt

search one's heart V : gí bẹ V - also means to ponder, to think, to wonder

season N : 1. general : ngói N - a time for doing something

2. rainy : ngú N - also means water, rain, year

3. dry : vurú ndo N, burú N

see V : báa V, báa ndo V - also mean to perceive, to understand

seed N : 1. of plant : lé N, lé tí kéké N, léngó N - see also fruit,
harvest, yield

2. food : lé tí kóbe N

3. edible oily seeds : kpí N - also means the paste made of them

4. of animals : ngongoa N

see first-hand V : báa V, báa na lé V - see, eye

seek V : gí V - see hunt

seem V : to appear : báa tongana V

see ... on way V : zía ... na lége V (I saw him on his way : mbi zía lo
na lége) - see leave

seep V : yuru V - means to leak, to run out

seize V : gbó V, kamáta V - see also affect, take - means also to grasp,
to grab, to grip

select V : to choose : choisir** V, mú na pópó V

self, selves N : 1. after verb : téré N - means body, each other, another
2. after noun or pronoun : vení An

sell V : ká V, vo V - see also to buy

semen N : ngú vurú N, ngú tí kóli N - the first also means pus

send V : to V, toka V

send dog V : (after something) : bi mbo V - see also incite

send word V : to kó V - see send, message

senseless Adj : búbá An - see foolish, crazy

sentence V : fáa ngbanga V - see judge

separate V : kángbi V

servant N : 1. personal or domestic : bóí N

2. slave : ngbáá N

3. flunky : apprenti** N is a truck driver's flunky, marmiton** N is
a kitchen flunky

serve V : sára na V, followed by a person - also means to work for

serve as V : sára V, followed by a noun denoting an office or function -
see make, act, behave

sesame N : sindi N

set V : 1. put : zía V - means to leave, to abandon, to permit

2. harden : gbó V, collar** V - see seize, grasp

3. (sun) : lá ... kúí V - see die

4. aside : zía na sése V - see put, ground

5. fire : zó V - see burn

6. heart on : zía bé V - means also to tempt, to covet

7. in order : leke na kámba V - see arrange

settle V : establish residence : sára kótóró V - see make, community

- see also dwell, reside

seven Adj : mbásámbará An

severit'y N : ngangó An - also means strong, strength, hard

sew V : fú V

shade N : 1. shadow : gbé dé N, dé tí N

2. of ancestor, spirit : tóró N

shadow N : dé tí N (the shadow of the tree : dé tí kéké) - see cold

shake V : 1. general : yingi V

2. (a sieve) : gbugburu V, yengere V - see also sift

3. winnow : pé V, diki V - see also wave

4. tremble : téré ... dó V - see also kick

shame N : kamelá N

sharp, be V : zá V - also means to shine

sharpen V : leke yángá tí V - see repair, edge

shave V : kio V

she P : lo - see he

shea N : 1. tree, nut : báláwá N

2. butter : mafuta tí báláwá N

sheath N : póró tí zembe N - see scabbard

sheep N : 1. taba N

2. Protestant usage : ngása Ngbaka - see goat

sheet N : 1. be : drap** N

paper : kugbé tí mbétí N

shelter N : temporary shed : kpangba N

shield N : válá N

shine V : 1. (sun) : su V

2. (something else) : zá V - also means to be keen or sharp

shirt N : 1. European type : chemise** N

2. flowing Muslim type : boubou** N

shoe N : 1. general term : póró N, póró tí gíré N - means skin, leather

2. European type : paire** N, soulier** N

3. sandal, thong : pápa N

short Adj : ndurú An - also means near

short time N : kété An, ndurú An - see small, short

shoulder N : ndo (tí) mabóko N - see arm

shout N : kóngó N

shout V : dé kóngó V

shove V : 1. bi V - means to throw, to cast

2. push : pousser** V

show V : teach, demonstrate : fa V, fa lége V - see way

show off V : fa téré V, fa baba V - see vanity

shut V : active or passive sense : kángá V - see tie, fasten

sibling N : 1. general : ita N - also means cousin, relative

2. brother : ita (tí) kóli N - see male

3. sister : ita (tí) wále N - see female

4. older sibling : kótá ita N

5. older brother : kótá zo N

6. younger sibling : ngambe N

sick, become V : wara kobéla V - see sickness

sick 'em! I : ʔaʔ I

sickness N : kobéla N, malade** N - means also ailment, illness

sick on V : dará V - means to incite, to urge

side N : 1. of animate being : téré N - means body, flank

2. general : mbáge N

3. chest : kate N

sieve-slap

314

sieve N : yengere N

sift V : 1. strain, drain : passer** V - see pass

2. (as flour) : yengere V - see sieve, shake

sigh V : gio bé V - means to exhale, to gasp, as in dying

signal V : (with hand) : pé V - see beckon

significant Adj : kótá An - see important, big

since Prep : depuis** C - see also for quite a while

sing V : hé (bíá) V, sára bíá V - see song

single girl V : of marriageable age : masía N - see unmarried girl

sir N : monsieur** N - also means Mr., gentleman

sisal N : ndunda N

sister N : ita (tí) wále N - see sibling, female

sit V : dutí V - means also to remain, to stay, to dwell

sitatunga N : a small antelope : lekpa N

six Adj : omaná An

size N : kónóngó N - from kono V to grow - also means growth

skill N : ndaráa N, malin** N, manière** N - mean also ingenuity, ability,
understanding, wisdom, cunning

skin N : póró N - means also hide, leather, sheath, shoe

skull N : bíó lí N - see head

sky N : ndúzú N, lé ndúzú N - see also air, heaven

slag N : (waste from iron smelting) : purú N - means also excrement

slander V : 1. accuse : pá éré V, réclamer** V

2. betray : sára makoró V

slander N : makoró N - means esp. betrayal

slap V : pika V - also means hit, beat

- slave N : ngbáá N - see servant
- sleep V : lánzó V - also means to lie down, to dwell - see recline
- sleep N : lánzó N - also means nap, day
- sleeping sickness N : ngé lánzó N
- sleepy V : lánzó . ára lé tí V - see sleep, affect, eye
- slimy Adj : dónzó An, dónzó yongóro An
- slowly Adv : 1. yeke Av - often reduplicated - means also gradually
2. gently : doucement** Av
- small Adj : kété An - means also little, small amount, thin, narrow
- small amount N : kété An - means small, narrow, thin, little
- smallpox N : yangba N
- smart, be V : (be able to learn) : lí ... wóko V - see head, soften
- smell V : fú V - both "transitive" and "intransitive" sense
- smoke N : gúrú N - also means steam
- smoke V : (tobacco) : yó (mánga) V - see drink, suck, tobacco
- snack N : besides fruit, people buy at least three kinds of snacks in the markets :
1. fritter : makala N
 2. portion of manioc crushed in water, wrapped in leaves, and roasted : mangbéré N
 3. strips of roasted meat : Yá N
- snail N : kalá N
- snail shell N : póró tí kalá N
- snake N : ngbó N
- snare N : 1. general : kamba N - means a cord
2. specific : ngindí N, sọ N - see fish trap
- softly Adv : doucement** Av - also means gently, slowly, quietly

- so Adv : tongasó Av - see also thus
- soap N : savon** N
- sociability N : ngiá N - also means fellowship, joy, fun
- soil N : sése N - see earth
- solder N : mboso N, tungu N - also means lead
- soldier N : turúgu N, yongóro ngombe N - the latter term refers to the troops used to pacify the country in colonial days
- sole N : (of foot) : séndá tí géré N - see foot, footprint
- solidify V : set, harden : gbó V, collar** V
- some Adj : mbéni An - also means other, another, any
- something N : mbéni yí N - see also anything
- sometime Adv : mbéni lá N - see also one day
- son N : mérengé (tí) kóli N - see child, male
- song N : biá N
- son-in-law N : kógará N - also means father-in-law, brother-in-law
- soon Adv : 1. ánde Av - both pre-clausally and post-verbally - has idea of time lapse, no idea of speed
2. fadé Av, híó Av, both post-verbal only - have idea of speed as well as time lapse : fast, quickly
- sore N : ká N - also means wound
- sorrow N : vundú N - cannot be disassociated from resentment and desire to retaliate which always accompany sorrow, since the causes of sorrow are all conceived to be attributable to some personal malice or ill-will
- sort N : mará N, qualité** N - also mean kind, type
- so then C : sí C - also means and then, next
- soul N : see spirit, personality

sour, be or become V : kpí V - means also to ferment

speak V : sára téné V - means also to talk - see also say, tell, chat,
converse

spear N : likongó N

speech N : 1. general : téné N - also means word, utterance, affair, matter

2. any kind of oral activity : isoró N - see chat

3. story : histoire** N

4. fable : tere N

speed N : lóró N - used in expressions meaning to hurry, to race

spend V : 1. (money) : dépenser** V, vo na yí V - see buy

2. (time) : sára V - see do, act, behave, make, affect

spider N : tere N - a frequent character in fables, also called téré

spill V : 1. pour : sá V

2. tip, dump : túku V

spirit N : 1. of living person : yingó N

2. of dead person : tóró N

3. of witchcraft : lukundú N - see witch

spit V : dé V - also means to vomit, to utter

split V : súrá V - see also cut

spoil V : 1. general : foutu** V, buba V - mean to ruin, to waste, to mar

2. rot : fí V - means to smell

spoon, spoonful N : papa N

spouse N : mariage** N - see husband, wife, marriage

spread V : extend domain : hú V - also means to prosper

spring N : (of water) : lí ngú N - see head, river

sprout V : germinate : kó V

square V : carrer** V

stake N : post : piquet** N - also means a plot of the right size for

stamp stone

318

planting cotton

stamp V : dǎ V - means also to kick, to stub, to stumble, to dance, to shake

stand V : lǔtí V

star N : tǒngǎo N

stare V : bǎa V - means to see

start V : begin : commencer** V

start off V : (on trip) : mú lége V

starve V : kúí nǎla V - see hungry, die

state N : kǒtǎrǎ N - see community

state V : tǎne V - means to say, to tell, to utter

stay V : remain : dǔtí V - also means to sit, to dwell

steal V : nǎí V

steam N : gúrú tí ngú N - see also smoke

steer N : bǎgara N - means any kind of cattle

stem N : stick, wood : kéké N - also means tree, pole

stick N : 1. general : kéké N - also means tree, pole, wood

2. forked, for building : sara N

stick together V : gbó (téré) V - also means cleave (together)

still Adv : encore** Av - also means again

still, be V : dǔtí kpó V, kái V, bata yǎnga V - also mean be quiet

still more Adj, Adv : mbéní encore** An - see some, more

stir V : mélanger** V, tourner** V, yóro V - see mix

stomach N : yá N - see also abdomen

stone N : any size : témé N - pebble, rock

stone V : 1. (throw single stone with accurate aim) : bólo V

2. (throw shower of stones) : gana V

stop! I : su I - addressed to a child to refrain from what he is about to do

stop V : 1. cease : arrêter** V - used without specifying action to be stopped

2. zía V - used when action is specified by another verb - means also to leave, to put, to abandon

stop short V : hold back, refrain : nínga V - also means to delay

store, storehouse N : magasin** N

store-keeper N : (employed) : gérant** N

story N : 1. general, any kind of speech : isoró N

2. history or fiction : histoire** N

3. fable : tere N

straight Adj : physically or morally : mbírimbírí An - also means right, just

strain V : (through strainer) : passer** V - means also to pass, to drain, to sift

strange Adj : different : ndé An

stranger N : wa ndé N - see also visitor

straw N : péré N - see grass

stream N : ngú N - means water, river

street N : lége N - means path, road

strength N : ngangó An - also means strong, hard, power, force

strike V : pika V - also means to hit, to beat, to pound

string I 1. general : kamba N - means any kind of cord

2. of beads : kamba N, lenge N, kisi N

strive V : 1. verbally : papa V - means to quarrel

2. physically : tiri V - means to fight

stroll V : fono V - means to walk about, to travel

stop! I : su I - addressed to a child to refrain from what he is about to do

stop V : 1. cease : arrêter** V - used without specifying action to be stopped

2. zía V - used when action is specified by another verb - means also to leave, to put, to abandon

stop short V : hold back, refrain : nínga V - also means to delay

store, storehouse N : magasin** N

store-keeper N : (employed) : gérant** N

story N : 1. general, any kind of speech : isoró N

2. history or fiction : histoire** N

3. fable : tere N

straight Adj : physically or morally : mbírimbíri An - also means right, just

strain V : (through strainer) : passer** V - means also to pass, to drain, to sift

strange Adj : different : ndé An

stranger N : wa ndé N - see also visitor

straw N : péré N - see grass

stream N : ngú N - means water, river

street N : lége N - means path, road

strength N : ngangó An - also means strong, hard, power, force

strike V : pika V - also means to hit, to beat, to pound

string I 1. general : kamba N - means any kind of cord

2. of beads : kamba N, lenge N, kisi N

strive V : 1. verbally : papa V - means to quarrel

2. physically : tiri V - means to fight

stroll V : fono V - means to walk about, to travel

strong-suit case

320

strong Adj : ngangó An - also means hard, violent

struggle V : tiri V - means to fight

stub V : (toe) : dǎ (géré) V - means also to kick, to stamp, to stumble

student N : élève** N - means pupil at any academic level

stumble V : dǎ (géré) V - means also to kick, to stub, to stamp

stupid, be V : If ... (eke) ngangó V - also means to be obdurate

submission N : pardon** N - also means apology, excuse

submit V : (as by kneeling) : voróo téré V - see respect, honor

subsequent, subsequently Adj, Adv : (na) ndá ní CP, (na) pekó ní CP - also mean after, later

succeed V : wara V - means also to get, to find, to receive

suit, be suitable V : língbi V - means to suffice

suck V : yó V - means also to drink, to smoke (tobacco)

suddenly Adv : yí tí báa ndo V - used pre-clausally

suffer V : 1. pain : so V, báa finóo V

2. misery : báa mawa V

3. persecution, ill-will of others : hú ponó V

4. burden, of toil : báa pási V

suffering N : 1. physical pain : finóo N

2. pain of burdensome toil : pási N

3. inflicted by others, as persecution : ponó N, sáná N

4. misery : mawa N - also means pity

5. sorrow : vundú N - also means resentment

suffice V : língbi V - means to attain the exact measure, to be sufficient or adequate - also to be able, to be equal - with the negative, can mean either to be insufficient or excessive

sugar cane N : ngbókó N

suit case N : valise** N - see also box

summon V : 1. call, invite : éré V - also means to name

2. call after someone : éré ndo V

sun N : lá N - also means day, daylight, daytime

sunset N : lá kúí N - also means afternoon

superior Adj : kótá ahó An - see big, important

supervise V : commander** V, commander** li tí V - see command, rule

suppose V : báa ... tene V - also means consider

sure, be : hínga ... tene V - see also to know

surface N : lé N - also means face, eye

surpass V : hó V - also means to pass, to excell - used in expressions of comparison (he is stronger than I : lo eke ngangó ahó mbi)

surround V : ngóro V - means also to go around, to circle

survive V : ngbá V - means to remain (from the past), to stay

sustain V : bata V - means also to keep, to protect

swallow V : mehe V - means also to gulp

swear V : (an oath) : dé bá V

sweat N : gbíkí N

sweep V : balayer** V

sweet potato N : bábolo N

swell V : súku V - also means to scold severely

swim V : sa (ngú) V

switch N : whip : zaza N

syphilis N : ndaveke N

.. T -

- table N : table** N
- tablet N : (medicine) : quinine** N - means also capsule, pill
- tail N : (of animal) : dambá N
- tailor N : tailleur** N
- take V : 1. general : kamáta V - also means to seize, to capture, to catch
 2. mú V - also means to give
- take along V : goe na V - see also go, accompany
- take apart V : lungúla V - means also to demolish
- take away V : remove : lungúla V, zí V - see loosen, untie
- take hold V : kamáta V, gbó V - see seize
- take possession V : kamáta V - see take, seize
- take to the road V : mú lége V - see start off
- tale N : story : histoire** N
- talisman N : yoró N - also means medicine, poison, charm, fetish
- talk V : sára téné V, sára isoró V - also mean to speak, to chat, to converse
- talk N : téné N - also means saying, utterance, speech, matter
- tall Adj : yongóro An - means long, far
- tall, be V : yó V - also means to be long, to be far
- task N : kusára N, kóa N - see work
- taste V : tara V - means to try
- taunt V : gí yángá V - means to provoke, to tease
- tax N : (direct income and head tax) : impôt** N

teach V : 1. general : fa V - means also to show, to demonstrate
 2. reading and writing : fa mbéti V
 3. how to do something : fa lége V
 4. explain : fa ndá tí V

teacher N : (lower grades), instructor : moniteur** N

tear V : súru V - means also to split - see to cut

tear N : (weeping) : ngú lé N - see water, eye

tease V : 1. entice, tempt, lure : hánda V
 2. taunt : gí yángá V

telegraph V : píka senga V - means also to phone

telephone V : píka senga V - means also to telegraph

tell V : tene V - means also to say, to utter

temperament N : bé N - means liver, personality

tempt V : hánda V - means also to entice, to lure, to bluff, to kid, to fascinate, to amuse (a baby)

temptation N : hánda N

tempter N : wa hánda N - used esp. by Protestants in speaking of the devil

ten Adj : (unit of) : bale N

tend V : occuper** V, soigner** V - see care for

termite N : bobo N

terror N : mbito N - see fear

textile N : bongó N - means any kind of cloth or clothing

thank V : mú merci** V

thanks N : merci** N

thank you I : merci** N

that Adj : só An - means also this

the A : ní An is used as a restrictive and/or anaphoric determinant

thee-thong

324

thee P : mo P - see I for pronominal system

their P : see they

theirs P : tí ála CP - see they

them P : see they

then C : en bien** C - see also so then, next

there Adv : 1. general : ká Av in contrast with here

2. anaphoric, post-verbal : da Av - means to that place, in that place, from that place

therefore C : tongasó Av - used pre-clausally - means also thus

there's just one thing : yí ókò N - used pre-clausally

these Adj : só - see this

they P : ála P - see I for the pronominal system

thick Adj : kótá An - means big, wide, important

thicken V : set : gbó V, coller** V - mean also to harden, to grab

thickness N : néngó N, kónóngó N - mean also size

thief N : zo tí nzi N, wa nzi N - mean also robber, burglar

thigh N : kótá géré N - see also leg, foot

thin Adj : kété An - means also small, little, narrow

thin, be or become V : (used only of living beings) : nge V

thine P : tí mo CP - see thee

thing N : yí N

think V : 1. general : penser** v

2. consider, ponder, meditate : b'anda V, há V, gí bé V - see wonder

3. understand : báa V, má V - see also to see, to hear

this Adj : só An - means also these, that, those

thong N : sandal : pápa N - see also shoe

thorn N : 1. general : kii N - means also pricker

2. burr : sisi N, kpo mo ngangó N

thou P : see thee

though C : see although

thousand N : 1. general : kutu N

2. -franc amount : sac** N

throat N : gó N - means also neck, voice

through Prep : na lége tí CP - means also by means of, on account of

throw V : bi V - means to cast, to fling, to hurl, to shove

throw a spear at V : bi na likongó V

throw away V : bi na ngonda V

thrust V : insert : yóro V

thumb N : kótá mabóko N - see hand, finger

thunder N : békpá N

thus Adv : tongasó Av - either pre-clausally or post-verbally - means also so, like this, therefore

thy P : tí mo CP - see thee

tie V : 1. kánga V - means also to fasten, to imprison, to close

2. as a cord : du V

time N : heure** N - in all senses : o'clock, moment, duration, an unit of time

times N : lége N followed by a numeral (three times : lége otá)

tip V : (over) : túku V - means also to dump, to pour, to spill

tip N : a gratuity : cadeau** N, matabísi N - also mean gift, bribe

tire N : géré N - also means wheel, foot, leg

tired, be V : fatiguer** V - see also weary

title N : éré N - means name

to-township

326

to Prep : 1. locative : na C - also means and, but, with, by, at, in, from
2. in order to : ngbangati C, teneti C, ti C

tobacco N : mǎnga N

today Adv : lá só N - see day

toe N : kété géré N - see also foot

together Adv : lége óko N, óko An - the first also means same, like, same time, same way - the second means one

toil N : 1. work : kusára N, kɔa N

2. suffering : pási N

tomato N : tomate** N

tomorrow Adv : kékéreke Av

tongue N : 1. anatomical : méngá N, langue** N

2. language : yángá N - means also mouth

too Adj, Adv : ngá An - see also

tool N : 1. general : yi tí kusára N

2. specific : see knife, ax, hoe, machete

tooth N : pémbé N

top N : 1. head, cover : li N

2. top surface : ndó N

tortoise N : bakongo N

toss V : bi V - see throw

to that place Adv : da Av - also means in that place, from that place, etc.

touch V : ~~ndú~~ V, toucher** V

tow V : gbóto V - see pull

toward Prep : na C, na mbáge tí CP - the latter also means beside

town N : kótóró N - see community

township N : collectivité** N - see also administration

- trap N : (for fish) : ngólo N - also means weir - see also snare
- travel V : tambéla V, fono V - mean also to walk
- treat V : 1. general : sára na V (he treated me badly : lo sára sioní na mbi)
2. (medically) : soigner** V - see care for
- tree N : kéké N - means also wood, stick, pole
- tremble V : téré ... dó V - see also shake, kick
- tribe N : mará N - means also sort, kind, type : kind, kind : kind
- trip V ikinda V - means also to knock down (to knock down) : V
- trouble N : 1. problem : téné N, ngbanga N - also mean matter, affair
2. suffering : mawa N, ponó N
- truck N : camion** N - see automobile
- true Adj : taá Au - also means real, genuine
- truly Adv : biakú Av, bíani Av - either can be reduplicated - mean also certainly
- trunk N : 1. of tree : kéké N - means also tree, wood, pole, stem
2. of elephant : hó tí dole N - see nose, elephant
3. for storage : sandúku N - see box
- trust V : zía bé V - means also to set one's heart on, to covet, to believe
- truth N : taá téné N - see true, word
- try V : 1. taste : tara V
2. attempt : gi lége V - means to seek a way
- tuberculosis N : kobéla tí kate N - also means pneumonia, pleurisy, asthma, bronchitis, or any other severe chest inflammation accompanied by coughing
- tug V : gbóto V - see pull
- tune N : gó N - means neck, throat, voice, melody
- turn V : tourner** V - also means to mix, to stir

turtle-type

328

turtle N : bakongo N

twin N : mérengé tí mia N, mérengé tí ngbó N

twist V : (make rope by twisting fiber) : pé kámba V

twisted Adj : kiríkiri An - see crooked

two Adj : óse An

type N : kind, sort : mará N, qualité** N

type V : (on typewriter) : píka mbétí V - also means to print

- U -

ugly Adj : nzoní pape An, pendere pape An - see beautiful, good

ulcer N : ká N - see wound

umbilical cord N : turúngu N - also means navel

uncle N : 1. father's brother : babá N also means father

2. father's older brother : kótá babá N

3. father's younger brother : kété babá N

4. mother's brother : aú N. kóya N - also used in respect in addressing a mature man

under, underneath Adj, Adv : na gbé tí/ní CP - also mean below

understand V : 1. perceive : báa V, má V - mean to see, to hear

2. know : hinga V

3. thoroughly : hinga li tí V, hinga ndá ní V, má ndá tí/ní V, hinga kóé V

4. discern another's thoughts : hinga bé tí V

understanding N : ndaráa N - also means skill, ability, cunning, wisdom

unfasten V : lungúla V, zí V - mean also open, untie

unite V : bóngbi V, tǐngbi V - see also join, assemble

unmarried girl N : masía N - a girl who has never married, but of marriageable age

untie V : zí V - see also loosen, unfasten

until C : jusqu'à** C - also used as Av meaning for a while

untruth N : vene N, wátáká N - see lie

up Adv : na ndúzú CP - see sky

upright Adj : mbírimbírí An - means straight, right, just

urge V : pousser** V, dará V - see push, incite

urinate-utterance

330

urinate V : 1. sára ino V

2. euphemism : goe (na) ngonda V - also means to defecate

urine N : ino N

us P : see we

use V : sára na V - see make, do, act, prepare

useless, make V : foutu** V, buba V - see spoil

utter V : 1. tene V - see say

2. dé V - also means to spit, to vomit

utterance N : téné N - means speech, word, saying, affair, matter

- V -

vacation N : 1. from work : congé** N - see also holiday, celebration
2. from school : vacances** N

vaccinate V : sùru (ndó tí) mabóko V - see split, arm, shoulder

vagina N : dondo N

valiant man N : lombé N - see hero

valley N : pópó hótó N - see middle, hill

value N : ngéré N - also means cost, price

vanity N : baba N, fandara N - see also pride, conceit, show off

vanquish V : gagner** V - see defeat

various Adj : ndé An - also means different - often reduplicated

vegetable N : (edible leaves) : kugbé kása N - see leaf, sauce

very Adv : mǐngi An - also means much, many

village N : kótóró N - see community

vine N : kamba N - also means cord, snare

violence N : ngangó An, yí tí ngangó N - see also strong, strength, hard

violent, be V : sára ngangó na V - see do, behave, violence

violet Adj : vəkó An - means also black - see color

visit V : (in a foreign place) : goe gene V - see go, visitor

visitor N : (esp. one from a foreign place) : gene N

voice N : gó N - also means neck, throat, tune

vomit V : dé V, dé na sése V - also means to spit, to utter

- W -

- wages N : fúta N, par jour** N - the latter means esp. a daily rate, as for laborers - see also pay
- wage war V : píka berá V - see also fight, war, strike
- wait V : kú V - means also to hope, to expect
- waken V : zingo V - means also to arouse, to scold
- walk V : 1. general : tambéla V - also means to travel, to run (as machinery)
2. to walk about, to stroll, to wander, to gad about : fonc V
- wall N : tére tí da N - see side, house
- wallet N : poche** N - also means pocket, pocketbook
- wander V : fonc V - means also walk about
- want V : 1. general : yí V - means also desire, like, love, agree
2. casually, without strong feelings : lé ... yí V - see eye, desire
3. with strong feeling : bé ... yí V - see liver, love
- war N : berá V - also means battle
- warehouse N : magasin** N, da tí magasin** N - also means store
- warn V : wa V - means also to rebuke, to admonish, to reprove, to scold, to advise, to counsel, to comfort, to console, to encourage
- warning N : wángó N - from wa V to warn - also mean: advice, counsel
- wart hog N : cochon** tí gígí N, cochon** tí ngonda N
- wash V : 1. sukúla V - also means to clean in general
2. wash up, bathe : sukúla ngú V
- washcloth N : (indigenous, made of the rind of a wild plant) : ndakóro N
- wasp N : gándá N
- waste V : buba V, foutu** V - also mean to spoil, to ruin

watch V : 1. general : bata V - means to keep, to protect

2. watch out : sára attention** V

3. imperative I : attention** I

watchman N : sentinelle** N

water N : 1. general : ngú N - also means river, rain, year, or any liquid

2. cold : ngú tí dé N

3. hot : ngú tí wá N

4. boiled or boiling : kpóróngó ngú N

waterbuck N : a fairly large antelope : béta N

wave V : (the hand) : pé V - see beckon, signal

way N : 1. path, road, manner : légo N

2. skill : manière** N - also means cunning, ability, wisdom

we P : 1. general : í P - also means us, our, ours - see I for the pronominal system

2. in Protestant literature : áni P - not standard

3. in Catholic material : *é P - the distinction between *é and í is not standard

weak Adj : ngangó pepe An - also means easy - see strong, not

wealth N : mósoro N - also means bride-price

wear V : yú V - also means to put on clothes

weary V : 1. in transitive sense : be V - see also to annoy, to overcome

2. in intransitive sense : fatiguer** V

weave V : há V - also means to plait, to braid

week N : semaine** N, dimanche** N - the latter is more common, and also means Sunday

weight N : nángó N - from ne V to bear down, to be heavy - also means heaviness, thickness

weir N : fish trap : ngólo N

well Adj : séngé An - see without

well-whose

334

well Adv : nzoni An, bien** Av - see also good

well N : dú ngú N - see also hole, water

well, well then I : bon** I

wet, be or become V : gá ngú V, sáe ngú V, mouiller** V - see also be,
become, water

what Adj, P : yę An, wa An - used in other interrogative expressions also :
how, hen, where, why, who

what-you-may-call-him N : (used when groping for a name) : yí só N

wheel N : géré N - also means foot, leg, tire

when C : tongana C - also means if, like

when Adv : lá wa N, lá yę N - used interrogatively - see what

where Adv : (na) ndo wa CP, N - see place, what

while C : tongana C - see also when C

while, (for) a Adv : ngbii Av, jusqu'à** Av - see also for a long time

whip N : chicotte** N - see also switch

whiskers N : 1. moustache : kóá yángá N

2. beard : kóá ngbagba N

white Adj : vurú An - also means clean - see color

white, be or become V : vurú V - also means be clean

white man : mbunzú N

whitewash N : 1. white clay : vurú sése N

2. lime : mbamba N - also means oyster

who, whom P : 1. interrogative : zo wa N - see what

2. "relative" : só An - see this, that

whole Adj : kóé An - also means all

wholly Adv : kóé An - also means entirely, altogether

whose P : 1. interrogative : tí zo wa CP - see who

2. "relative" : só An - see who, this

why Adv : tenetí yę CP, ngbangatí yę CP - see what, for, in order to

wide Adj : kótá An - also means big, important, thick

wife N : 1. wále N - also means woman, female

2. co-wife : sambá N

wildcat N : yáç N - also means domestic cat

wild dog N : African hunting dog : sónzó N

wilderness N : ngonda N - also means bush, uncultivated area

wiles N : malin** N, manière** N - also mean skill, cunning, ability

will N : see personality

win V : gagner** V - also means to defeat, to overcome

wind N : pupu N - the verb is fa V to blow

wine N : 1. European grape wine : vin** N

2. palm wine : kanguya N

wing N : (of bird) : kpangbi N

wipe V : mbo V - means also to erase

wire N : (esp. telephone and telegraph) : senga N

wisdom N : ndaráa N - also means skill, ability, cunning

wish V : yí V - also means want, like, love

witch N : zo tí lukundú N - see spirit of witchcraft

with Prep : na C - also means and, but, to, for, at, in, from, by

withhold V : gbánzi V - also means to hinder, to prevent

with respect to Prep : see concerning

without Prep : séngé An means without something suggested by the context :

e.g. naked (without clothes), well (without illness, without trouble),
worthless (without value), ordinary (without distinction), free
(without cost), pointless (without reason or purpose)

woman N : wále N - also means wife, female

wonder V : gí bē V - see also think, ponder

wood N : kéké N - also means tree, stick, pole

word N : téné N - also means saying, utterance, speech, matter, affair, problem

work N : kpa N, kusára N - also mean job, task

work V : 1. perform a task : sára kpa V, sára kusára V

2. as a machine : tambéla V - see also to walk, to run

workman N : laborer : zo tí kusára N, manoeuvre** N

worth N : ngéré N - also means value, cost, price

world N : sése N - also means earth, land, soil

worship V : díko V, sambéla V - mean also to pray - see praise, honor, reverence, plead

worthless Adj : 1. séngé An - see without

2. búbá An - also means foolish, crazy

wound N : a sore : ká N

wound V : 1. general : sára ká V

2. with a weapon as subject : te V - means also to bite, to eat

3. stab : kpa V - means to pierce, to puncture

4. cut, kill : fáa V

5. hit, beat, slap : pika V

wounded, be V : ká ... wara V, wara ká V - see get, wound

wow I : 1. usually in an absolute usage : babá N - means father

2. either in absolute usage or introducing exclamatory sentence :
mon vieux** I

wreck N : (of a bicycle, automobile, etc.) : kúí N - means dead body,
corpse

wrestle V : tiri V - means to fight

wrist N : mabóko N - means also hand, arm

write V : sára mbéti V - see make, paper

wrong Adj : sioní An, kiríkiri-An - the first means bad, the latter means crooked, perverse

Wrist : mabóko N

Wrist : mabóko N

Wrist : mabóko N - also means hand, arm

Wrist : mabóko N - also means hand, arm

- X H iia : need guinea

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ingónbát N - also means

- Y -

yam N : 1. domestic : gúi N

2. wild : ngasá N

year N : ngú N - also means water, river, rain, rainy season

yeast N : 1. for bread : mamá tí mápa N - see mother, bread

2. for brewing beer : sái N

yell V : dé kóngó V - also means to shout

yellow Adj : 1. deep, intense : bingbá An - also means red - see color

2. light : bingbá kété An - also means light pink

3. very light : vurú kété An - also means light gray

yes I : oui** I

yesterday Adv : bírí N

yet Adv : encore** Av - also means still

yield N : léngó N - means also fruit, harvest

you P : 1. singular, thee : mo P - see I for the pronominal system

2. plural : ála P - also means your, yours

young Adj : pendere An - also means beautiful, handsome

young, youth N : 1. of animals : mérangé N - see child

2. adolescent : pendere An - means young, beautiful

3. man : pendere kóli N

4. woman : pendere wále N

your, yours P : see you

youth N : young man : pendere kóli N - see also child